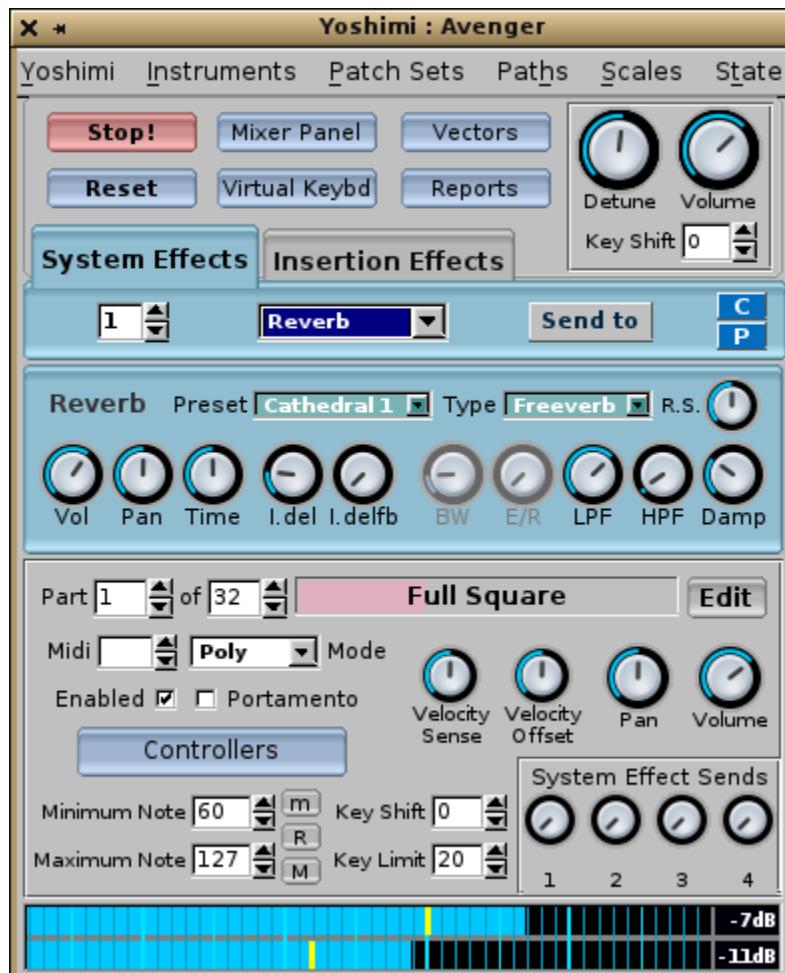


A Yoshimi User Manual

Chris Ahlstrom (ahlstromcj@gmail.com) with Will J. Godfrey

December 22, 2016



Contents

| | | |
|----------|--|-----------|
| 1 | Introduction | 11 |
| 1.1 | Yoshimi And ZynAddSubFX | 11 |
| 1.2 | New Features | 12 |
| 1.2.1 | LV2 Plugin | 12 |
| 1.2.2 | Control Automation | 12 |
| 1.2.3 | MIDI CC | 13 |
| 1.2.4 | Vectors | 13 |
| 1.2.5 | Bank Support | 13 |
| 1.2.6 | Accessibility | 14 |
| 1.2.7 | Command Line | 14 |
| 1.2.8 | Audio Support | 15 |
| 1.2.9 | Miscellany | 15 |
| 1.3 | Document Structure | 16 |
| 1.4 | Yoshimi Mailing List | 16 |
| 1.5 | Yoshimi Licensing | 17 |
| 1.6 | Let's Get Started with Yoshimi! | 17 |
| 2 | Concepts | 20 |
| 2.1 | Concepts / Terms | 20 |
| 2.1.1 | Concepts / Terms / Cent | 20 |
| 2.1.2 | Concepts / Terms / Frame | 20 |
| 2.1.3 | Concepts / Terms / Instrument | 20 |
| 2.1.4 | Concepts / Terms / Part | 21 |
| 2.1.5 | Concepts / Terms / Patch | 21 |
| 2.1.6 | Concepts / Terms / Patch Set | 21 |
| 2.1.7 | Concepts / Terms / Presets | 21 |
| 2.1.8 | Concepts / Terms / Program | 21 |
| 2.1.9 | Concepts / Terms / Voice | 22 |
| 2.2 | Concepts / ALSA Versus JACK | 22 |
| 2.3 | Concepts / Banks and Roots | 22 |
| 2.4 | Concepts / Basic Synthesis | 23 |
| 2.4.1 | Concepts / Basic Synthesis / Panning | 24 |
| 2.4.2 | Concepts / Basic Synthesis / Wetness | 24 |
| 2.4.3 | Concepts / Basic Synthesis / Single Note | 24 |
| 2.4.4 | Concepts / Basic Synthesis / Harmonics | 25 |
| 2.4.4.1 | Harmonic Bandwidth | 25 |
| 2.4.4.2 | Harmonic Amplitude | 25 |
| 2.4.5 | Concepts / Basic Synthesis / Randomness | 26 |
| 2.4.6 | Concepts / Basic Synthesis / Components | 26 |
| 2.4.7 | Concepts / Basic Synthesis / Filters | 27 |
| 2.4.8 | Concepts / Basic Synthesis / Envelopes | 27 |
| 2.5 | Concepts / MIDI | 28 |
| 2.5.1 | Concepts / MIDI / Learn | 28 |
| 2.5.2 | Concepts / MIDI / Messages | 28 |
| 2.5.3 | Concepts / MIDI / NRPN | 29 |
| 2.5.3.1 | Concepts / MIDI / NRPN / Vector Control | 29 |

| | |
|---|-----------|
| 2.5.3.2 Concepts / MIDI / NRPN / Effects Control | 29 |
| 2.6 Concepts / Command Line | 30 |
| 2.6.1 Concepts / Command Line / level | 30 |
| 2.7 Concepts / LV2 Plugin | 30 |
| 3 Configuration Files | 30 |
| 3.1 Configuration Files / Patch Set | 31 |
| 3.2 Configuration Files / Config | 31 |
| 3.3 Configuration Files / State | 32 |
| 3.4 Configuration Files / Instrument | 32 |
| 3.5 Configuration Files / Scale | 32 |
| 3.6 Configuration Files / Presets | 33 |
| 3.7 Configuration Files / Instance | 33 |
| 3.8 Configuration Files / History | 33 |
| 3.9 Configuration Files / Banks | 34 |
| 3.10 Configuration Files / Windows | 34 |
| 3.11 Configuration Files / Format | 34 |
| 4 Banks and Roots | 35 |
| 4.1 Roots | 36 |
| 4.2 Banks | 36 |
| 4.2.1 Bank Directories | 36 |
| 5 Menu | 37 |
| 5.1 Menu / Yoshimi | 37 |
| 5.1.1 Menu / Yoshimi / About... | 37 |
| 5.1.2 Menu / Yoshimi / New instance | 38 |
| 5.1.3 Menu / Yoshimi / New instance with id... | 38 |
| 5.1.4 Menu / Yoshimi / Vectors | 39 |
| 5.1.5 Menu / Yoshimi / Settings... | 43 |
| 5.1.5.1 Menu / Yoshimi / Settings / Main Settings | 44 |
| 5.1.5.2 Menu / Yoshimi / Settings / Switches | 47 |
| 5.1.5.3 Menu / Yoshimi / Settings / Jack | 48 |
| 5.1.5.4 Menu / Yoshimi / Settings / Alsa | 50 |
| 5.1.5.5 Menu / Yoshimi / Settings / MIDI | 52 |
| 5.1.6 Menu / Yoshimi / MIDI Learn... | 54 |
| 5.1.7 Menu / Yoshimi / Exit | 54 |
| 5.2 Menu / Instruments | 54 |
| 5.2.1 Menu / Instrument / Show Stored... | 55 |
| 5.2.2 Menu / Instrument / Load External... | 60 |
| 5.2.3 Menu / Instrument / Save External... | 62 |
| 5.2.4 Menu / Instrument / Clear | 63 |
| 5.3 Menu / Patch Sets | 63 |
| 5.3.1 Menu / Patch Sets / Show Patch Banks... | 64 |
| 5.3.2 Menu / Patch Sets / Load External... | 65 |
| 5.3.3 Menu / Patch Sets / Save External... | 66 |
| 5.3.4 Menu / Patch Sets / Recent Sets | 66 |
| 5.3.5 Menu / Patch Sets / Patch Bank Roots | 67 |

| | | |
|----------|--|-----------|
| 5.4 | Menu / Paths | 68 |
| 5.4.0.1 | Bank Root Dirs... | 68 |
| 5.4.0.2 | Preset Dirs... | 68 |
| 5.5 | Menu / Scales | 70 |
| 5.5.1 | Menu / Scales / Show Settings | 71 |
| 5.5.1.1 | Scales Basic Settings | 71 |
| 5.5.1.2 | Keyboard Mapping | 73 |
| 5.5.2 | Menu / Scales / Load | 74 |
| 5.5.3 | Menu / Scales / Save | 74 |
| 5.5.4 | Menu / Scales / Recent Scales... | 75 |
| 5.5.5 | Menu / Scales / Clear | 75 |
| 5.6 | Menu / State | 75 |
| 6 | Stock Settings Elements | 77 |
| 6.1 | Settings Features | 77 |
| 6.1.1 | Mouse Features | 77 |
| 6.1.2 | Title Bars | 77 |
| 6.1.3 | Color Coding | 77 |
| 6.1.4 | Rotary Knobs | 77 |
| 6.1.5 | Sliders | 78 |
| 6.1.6 | Presets | 78 |
| 6.1.7 | Automation | 78 |
| 6.2 | Filter Settings | 79 |
| 6.2.1 | Filter Type | 80 |
| 6.2.2 | Filter Cutoff | 80 |
| 6.2.3 | Filter Resonance | 80 |
| 6.2.4 | Filter Stages | 81 |
| 6.2.5 | Filter Parameters User Interface | 82 |
| 6.3 | Stock Resonance Settings | 84 |
| 6.4 | LFO Settings | 87 |
| 6.4.1 | LFO Basic Parameters | 87 |
| 6.4.2 | LFO Function | 87 |
| 6.4.3 | LFO Randomness | 88 |
| 6.4.4 | LFO, More Settings | 88 |
| 6.4.5 | LFO User Interface Panels | 89 |
| 6.4.6 | Filter LFO Sub-panel | 90 |
| 6.4.7 | Frequency LFO Sub-panel | 91 |
| 6.5 | Envelope Settings | 92 |
| 6.5.1 | Amplitude Envelope Sub-Panel | 93 |
| 6.5.2 | Envelope Settings | 94 |
| 6.5.3 | Freemode Envelope Settings | 94 |
| 6.5.4 | Envelope Settings, Frequency | 96 |
| 6.5.5 | Envelope Settings for Filter | 97 |
| 6.5.6 | Formant Filter Settings | 99 |
| 6.5.6.1 | Formant Parameters | 99 |
| 6.5.6.2 | Formant Vowel Parameters | 100 |
| 6.5.6.3 | Formant Sequence Parameters | 100 |
| 6.6 | Clipboard Presets | 101 |

| | | |
|----------|---|------------|
| 6.6.1 | Clipboard/Preset Copy | 101 |
| 6.6.2 | Clipboard/Preset Paste | 102 |
| 7 | Top Panel | 103 |
| 7.1 | Mixer Panel Window | 104 |
| 7.2 | Virtual Keyboard | 106 |
| 7.2.1 | Virtual Keyboard, Basics | 107 |
| 7.2.2 | Virtual Keyboard, ASCII Mapping | 108 |
| 7.2.3 | Virtual Keyboard, Controllers | 108 |
| 8 | Effects | 109 |
| 8.1 | Effects / Panel Types | 110 |
| 8.1.1 | Effects / Panel Types / System | 113 |
| 8.1.2 | Effects / Panel Types / Insertion | 114 |
| 8.1.3 | Effects / Panel Types / Instrument | 115 |
| 8.2 | Effects / None | 115 |
| 8.3 | Effects / DynFilter | 116 |
| 8.3.1 | Effects / DynFilter / Circuit | 116 |
| 8.3.2 | Effects / DynFilter / User Interface | 117 |
| 8.3.3 | Effects / DynFilter / NRPN Values | 119 |
| 8.4 | Effects / AlienWah | 119 |
| 8.4.1 | Effects / AlienWah / Circuit | 119 |
| 8.4.2 | Effects / AlienWah / User Interface | 119 |
| 8.4.3 | Effects / AlienWah / NRPN Values | 121 |
| 8.5 | Effects / Chorus | 121 |
| 8.5.1 | Effects / Chorus / Circuit | 122 |
| 8.5.2 | Effects / Chorus / User Interface | 122 |
| 8.5.3 | Effects / Chorus / NRPN Values | 123 |
| 8.6 | Effects / Distortion | 123 |
| 8.6.1 | Effects / Distortion / Circuit | 124 |
| 8.6.2 | Effects / Distortion / User Interface | 125 |
| 8.6.3 | Effects / Distortion / NRPN Values | 125 |
| 8.7 | Effects / Echo | 125 |
| 8.7.1 | Effects / Echo / Circuit | 126 |
| 8.7.2 | Effects / Echo / User Interface | 126 |
| 8.7.3 | Effects / Echo / NRPN Values | 127 |
| 8.8 | Effects / EQ | 127 |
| 8.8.1 | Effects / EQ / Circuit | 127 |
| 8.8.2 | Effects / EQ / User Interface | 127 |
| 8.8.3 | Effects / EQ / NRPN Values | 128 |
| 8.9 | Effects / Phaser | 128 |
| 8.9.1 | Effects / Phaser / Circuit | 128 |
| 8.9.2 | Effects / Phaser / User Interface | 130 |
| 8.9.3 | Effects / Phaser / NRPN Values | 131 |
| 8.10 | Effects / Reverb | 131 |
| 8.10.1 | Effects / Reverb / Circuit | 132 |
| 8.10.2 | Effects / Reverb / User Interface | 132 |
| 8.10.3 | Effects / Reverb / NRPN Values | 134 |

| | |
|---|------------|
| 9 Bottom Panel | 134 |
| 9.1 Bottom Panel Controls | 134 |
| 9.1.0.1 Tip: Using the VU Meter | 138 |
| 9.2 Bottom Panel / Controllers | 138 |
| 9.2.1 Bottom Panel / Controllers / Resonance | 140 |
| 9.2.2 Bottom Panel / Controllers / Portamento | 140 |
| 9.3 Bottom Panel Instrument Edit | 141 |
| 10 ADDsynth | 143 |
| 10.1 ADDsynth / AMPLITUDE | 144 |
| 10.2 ADDsynth / FILTER | 146 |
| 10.3 ADDsynth / FREQUENCY | 147 |
| 10.4 ADDsynth / Voice Parameters | 148 |
| 10.4.1 ADDsynth / Voice Parameters / AMPLITUDE | 149 |
| 10.4.2 ADDsynth / Voice Parameters / FILTER | 150 |
| 10.4.3 ADDsynth / Voice Parameters / MODULATOR | 151 |
| 10.4.3.1 Tip: Using the Ring Modulator | 152 |
| 10.4.4 ADDsynth / Voice Parameters / FREQUENCY | 153 |
| 10.4.5 ADDsynth / Voice Parameters / Voice Oscillator | 154 |
| 10.5 ADDsynth / Voice List | 156 |
| 10.6 ADDsynth / Oscillator | 158 |
| 10.7 ADDsynth / Resonance | 159 |
| 11 PADsynth | 159 |
| 11.1 PADsynth / Algorithm | 159 |
| 11.1.1 PADsynth / Algorithm / General | 160 |
| 11.1.2 PADsynth / Algorithm / Harmonic Bandwidth | 160 |
| 11.1.2.1 Tip: Using the PADsynth | 161 |
| 11.2 PADsynth / Harmonic Structure | 162 |
| 11.2.1 PADsynth / Harmonic Structure / Basics | 163 |
| 11.2.2 PADsynth / Harmonic Structure / Harmonic | 164 |
| 11.2.3 PADsynth / Harmonic Structure / Bandwidth and Position | 166 |
| 11.2.4 PADsynth / Harmonic Structure / Export | 168 |
| 11.2.5 PADsynth / Harmonic Structure / Resonance | 168 |
| 11.2.6 PADsynth / Harmonic Structure / Change | 168 |
| 11.2.6.1 PADsynth / Harmonic Structure / Change / Oscillator | 169 |
| 11.2.6.2 PADsynth / Harmonic Structure / Change / Base Function | 170 |
| 11.2.6.3 PADsynth / Harmonic Structure / Change / Middle | 171 |
| 11.2.6.4 PADsynth / Harmonic Structure / Change / Harmonic | 174 |
| 11.3 PADsynth / Envelopes and LFOs | 175 |
| 12 SUBsynth | 177 |
| 12.1 SUBsynth / AMPLITUDE | 178 |
| 12.2 SUBsynth / BANDWIDTH | 178 |
| 12.3 SUBsynth / FREQUENCY | 179 |
| 12.4 SUBsynth / OVERTONES | 180 |
| 12.5 SUBsynth / FILTER | 180 |
| 12.6 SUBsynth / Harmonics | 181 |

| | |
|---|------------|
| 13 Kit Edit | 182 |
| 14 Banks Collection | 185 |
| 14.1 Yoshimi Banks | 185 |
| 14.2 Additional ZynAddSubFX Banks | 185 |
| 14.3 Additional Banks | 186 |
| 15 Non-Registered Parameter Numbers | 186 |
| 15.1 NRPN / Basics | 187 |
| 15.2 NRPN / Effects Control | 189 |
| 15.2.0.1 Reverb | 189 |
| 15.2.0.2 Echo | 189 |
| 15.2.0.3 Chorus | 189 |
| 15.2.0.4 Phaser | 189 |
| 15.2.0.5 AlienWah | 190 |
| 15.2.0.6 Distortion | 190 |
| 15.2.0.7 EQ | 190 |
| 15.2.0.8 DynFilter | 191 |
| 15.2.0.9 Yoshimi Extensions | 191 |
| 15.3 NRPN / Dynamic System Settings | 192 |
| 16 Vector Control | 193 |
| 16.1 Vector / Basics | 193 |
| 16.2 Vector / Vector Control | 194 |
| 16.3 Vector / Command Line | 196 |
| 17 MIDI Learn | 198 |
| 17.1 MIDI Learn / Basics | 199 |
| 17.2 MIDI Learn / User Interface | 199 |
| 17.3 MIDI Learn / Tutorial | 201 |
| 18 The Yoshimi Command Line Interface | 202 |
| 18.1 Command Level | 204 |
| 18.2 Command Table | 205 |
| 18.3 Command Descriptions | 208 |
| 19 LV2 Plug-in Support | 211 |
| 20 Yoshimi Man Page | 211 |
| 21 Building Yoshimi | 213 |
| 21.1 Yoshimi Source Code | 213 |
| 21.2 Yoshimi Dependencies | 214 |
| 21.3 Build It | 215 |
| 21.4 Yoshimi Code Policies | 217 |
| 22 Summary | 217 |
| 23 References | 217 |

List of Figures

| | | |
|----|--|----|
| 1 | Yoshimi Splash Screen! | 18 |
| 2 | Yoshimi Main Screen, 1.4.1 | 19 |
| 3 | ZynAddSubFX/Yoshimi Main Structure | 23 |
| 4 | ZynAddSubFX/Yoshimi Note Generation | 24 |
| 5 | Yoshimi Menu Items | 37 |
| 6 | Yoshimi Menu, About Dialog | 38 |
| 7 | Yoshimi Menu, Instance Dialog | 39 |
| 8 | Yoshimi Vectors Dialog | 39 |
| 9 | Yoshimi Vectors Options | 40 |
| 10 | Yoshimi Vectors, Feature 1 | 41 |
| 11 | Yoshimi Vectors, Feature 2 | 41 |
| 12 | Yoshimi Vectors, Feature 3 | 42 |
| 13 | Yoshimi Vectors, Feature 4 | 42 |
| 14 | Yoshimi Vectors Saved as "My First Vector" | 43 |
| 15 | Yoshimi Main Settings Tab | 44 |
| 16 | OscilSize Values | 45 |
| 17 | Internal Size Values | 45 |
| 18 | PADSynth Interpolation | 45 |
| 19 | QWERTY Virtual Keyboard Layout | 46 |
| 20 | Virtual Keyboard Layout | 46 |
| 21 | Send Reports | 46 |
| 22 | Yoshimi Console Window | 47 |
| 23 | Yoshimi Switches Tab | 48 |
| 24 | JACK Settings | 49 |
| 25 | ALSA Settings | 51 |
| 26 | MIDI Preferences | 52 |
| 27 | MIDI Settings Pending | 52 |
| 28 | Yoshimi Menu, Exit | 54 |
| 29 | Yoshimi Menu, Instrument | 55 |
| 30 | Show Stored Instruments | 56 |
| 31 | A Sample Bank List | 57 |
| 32 | Instruments, Load External | 60 |
| 33 | Manage Favorites Drop-Down List | 61 |
| 34 | Manage Favorites Dialog | 62 |
| 35 | Instruments, Save External | 63 |
| 36 | Clear Instrument Dialog | 63 |
| 37 | Show Patch Banks | 64 |
| 38 | Load Patch Set | 65 |
| 39 | Save Patch Set | 66 |
| 40 | Patch Set, Nothing to Save | 66 |
| 41 | Bank Root Paths | 67 |
| 42 | New Root Directory? | 67 |
| 43 | Preset Dirs Tab | 69 |
| 44 | Add Preset Directory | 69 |
| 45 | Yoshimi Menu, Scales | 70 |
| 46 | Yoshimi Menu, Scales Settings | 71 |

| | | |
|----|---|-----|
| 47 | Yoshimi Menu, Scales, Import File | 72 |
| 48 | Yoshimi Menu, Scales, Import Keyboard Map | 73 |
| 49 | Yoshimi Menu, Open Scales | 74 |
| 50 | Yoshimi Menu, Failed to Load Scales | 74 |
| 51 | Yoshimi Menu, Recent Scales | 75 |
| 52 | Yoshimi Menu, State Load | 76 |
| 53 | Yoshimi Menu, State Save | 76 |
| 54 | Basic Filter Types | 80 |
| 55 | Low Q vs. High Q | 81 |
| 56 | 2 Pole vs. 8 Pole Filter | 81 |
| 57 | Filter Parameters Sub-panel | 82 |
| 58 | Filter Categories Dropdown | 82 |
| 59 | Filter Type Dropdown | 83 |
| 60 | Filter Stage Dropdown | 83 |
| 61 | ADDsynth/PADsynth Resonance | 84 |
| 62 | ADDsynth/PADsynth Resonance Interpolated | 85 |
| 63 | ADDsynth/PADsynth Resonance Smoothed | 86 |
| 64 | Basic LFO Parameters | 87 |
| 65 | LFO Functions | 88 |
| 66 | LFO Randomization | 88 |
| 67 | Amplitude LFO Sub-Panel | 89 |
| 68 | LFO Type Drop-down | 90 |
| 69 | Filter LFO Sub-Panel | 90 |
| 70 | LFO Function Types | 91 |
| 71 | Frequency LFO Sub-Panel | 91 |
| 72 | ADSR Envelope (Amplitude) | 92 |
| 73 | ASR Envelope, Frequency | 92 |
| 74 | Amplitude Envelope Sub-Panel | 93 |
| 75 | Amplitude/Filter/Frequency Envelope Editor | 94 |
| 76 | Amplitude/Filter/Frequency Envelope Freemode Editor | 95 |
| 77 | Frequency Envelope Sub-Panel | 97 |
| 78 | Filter Envelope Sub-Panel | 98 |
| 79 | Formant Filter Editor | 99 |
| 80 | Copy to Clipboard | 101 |
| 81 | Paste from Clipboard | 102 |
| 82 | Yoshimi Part Panel | 105 |
| 83 | Yoshimi Virtual Keyboard | 107 |
| 84 | Virtual Keyboard Controllers | 109 |
| 85 | System Effects Dialog | 110 |
| 86 | Effects Names | 111 |
| 87 | Effects, Send To | 111 |
| 88 | Effects / Copy To Clipboard | 112 |
| 89 | Effects / Paste From Clipboard | 112 |
| 90 | Effects / Reports | 113 |
| 91 | Sample System Effects Dialog | 113 |
| 92 | Sample Insertions Effects Dialog | 114 |
| 93 | Part Selection Dropdown | 114 |
| 94 | Sample Instrument Effects Dialog | 115 |

| | | |
|-----|--|-----|
| 95 | Effects Edit, No Effect | 115 |
| 96 | Dynamic Filter Circuit Diagram | 116 |
| 97 | Effects Edit, DynFilter | 117 |
| 98 | DynFilter Presets | 118 |
| 99 | Effects Edit, AlienWah | 119 |
| 100 | Chorus Circuit Diagram | 122 |
| 101 | Effects Edit, Chorus | 122 |
| 102 | Distortion Circuit Diagram | 124 |
| 103 | Effects Edit, Distortion | 125 |
| 104 | Effects Edit, Echo | 126 |
| 105 | Effects Edit, EQ | 127 |
| 106 | Phaser Circuit Spectrogram | 129 |
| 107 | Effects Edit, Phaser | 130 |
| 108 | Reverb Circuit Diagram | 132 |
| 109 | Effects Edit, Reverb | 132 |
| 110 | Reverb Preset Dropdown | 133 |
| 111 | Reverb Type Dropdown | 133 |
| 112 | Controllers Dialog | 138 |
| 113 | Part Edit (Instrument) Dialog | 141 |
| 114 | Instrument Type Drop-down List | 142 |
| 115 | ADDsynth Edit/Global Dialog | 144 |
| 116 | Velocity Sensing Function | 145 |
| 117 | ADDsynth Frequency Detune Type | 147 |
| 118 | ADDsynth Voice Parameters Dialog | 148 |
| 119 | Voice Modulator Type | 151 |
| 120 | Frequency Detune Type | 154 |
| 121 | Voice Oscillator Choices | 155 |
| 122 | White Noise in ADDSynth Voice | 155 |
| 123 | Pink Noise in ADDSynth Voice | 155 |
| 124 | Unison Phase Invert Dropdown | 156 |
| 125 | ADDsynth Voices List | 157 |
| 126 | ADDsynth Oscillator Editor | 158 |
| 127 | ADDsynth Oscillator Harmonic Randomness Selections | 159 |
| 128 | PADsynth Edit Dialog | 162 |
| 129 | Base Type of Harmonic | 163 |
| 130 | PADsynth Full/Upper/Lower Harmonics | 164 |
| 131 | PADsynth Amplitude Multiplier | 164 |
| 132 | PADsynth Amplitude Mode | 164 |
| 133 | Harmonic Base Dropdown | 165 |
| 134 | Harmonic Samples Per Octave | 165 |
| 135 | Harmonic Number of Octaves | 165 |
| 136 | Harmonic Sample Size Dropdown | 166 |
| 137 | Harmonics Bandwidth Scale. | 166 |
| 138 | PADsynth Harmonics Spectrum Mode | 166 |
| 139 | PADsynth Overtones Position | 167 |
| 140 | Harmonics Structure Export Dialog | 168 |
| 141 | Harmonic Content Editor | 169 |
| 142 | PADsynth Harmonic Content Mag Type | 170 |

| | | |
|-----|--|-----|
| 143 | PADsynth Harmonic Content Base Function | 170 |
| 144 | PADsynth Harmonic Content Editor Wave-Shaping Function | 172 |
| 145 | PADsynth Harmonic Content Filter | 173 |
| 146 | PADsynth Harmonic Content Editor Modulation | 173 |
| 147 | PADsynth Harmonic Content Editor Spectrum Adjust | 174 |
| 148 | PADsynth Adaptive Harmonic Type | 175 |
| 149 | PADSynth Parameters, Envelopes and LFOs | 176 |
| 150 | SUBsynth Edit Dialog | 177 |
| 151 | Harmonic Type Dropdown | 180 |
| 152 | SUBSynth Magnitude Type Dropdown | 181 |
| 153 | SUBsynth Start Type | 181 |
| 154 | Kit Edit Dialog | 182 |
| 155 | MIDI Learn Prompt Example 1 | 199 |
| 156 | MIDI Learn Prompt Example 2 | 199 |
| 157 | MIDI Learn Prompt Unsupported Example | 199 |
| 158 | MIDI Learn Dialog | 200 |

List of Tables

| | | |
|---|---|-----|
| 1 | ZynAddSubFX/Yoshimi MIDI Messages | 28 |
| 2 | Dynamic System Commands | 193 |
| 3 | Yoshimi Text Commands, Part 1 | 207 |
| 4 | Yoshimi Text Commands, Part 2 | 208 |

1 Introduction

This document was inspired by finding a wiki version of a *ZynAddSubFX* manual (see reference [29]). That wiki, and the Open Document Format version of it, showed a lot of screen shots and a detailed survey of the settings and parameters of *ZynAddSubFX*. It inspired us to be even more thorough in describing *Yoshimi*, and then Will got involved to provide even more details. Please note that this document also owes a lot to the descriptions and diagrams provided by the original *ZynAddSubFX* author, Paul Nasca, as well as some others whose names we don't know.

1.1 Yoshimi And ZynAddSubFX

This document describes how to use *Yoshimi* [17], the software synthesizer derived from the great *ZynAddSubFx* [21] software synthesizer. Because of their common origin, much of this document also applies to *ZynAddSubFx* (versions less than 3) and depends upon some *ZynAddSubFX* documentation and diagrams.

Yoshimi is an algorithmic MIDI software synthesizer for Linux. It synthesizes in real time, can run polyphonic or monophonic, with multiple simultaneous patches on one or more MIDI channels, and has broad microtonal capability. It includes extensive additive, subtractive, and pad synth capabilities which can be run simultaneously within the same patch. It also has eight audio effects modules.

Originally based on the 2.4.0 version of *ZynAddSubFX* (Copyright 2002-2009 Nasca Octavian Paul), development of *Yoshimi* has continued for quite a while now in its own direction. These include major

optimizations for audio and MIDI performance, and more recently progressive development of user-level and command-line access to all controls. At the same time, refinement continues, both visually and within the code.

What are the advantages of *Yoshimi* versus *ZynAddSubFX*? At one time *Yoshimi* had better JACK support than *ZynAddSubFX*, but that is no longer true. Both projects are now in active development, and both are progressing along their respective roadmaps. *Yoshimi* currently has a considerably revised graphical user interface, while *ZynAddSubFX* has a major user-interface upgrade planned. Each project has some features and capabilities that the other lacks. There may be internal differences of importance to a developer, as well as features that aren't so easy to discover. So, really, it is not clear that there is really a big advantage to one over the other... use them both and make your own decision! Or just continue using both of them!

That being said, please note that the references to *ZynAddSubFx* in this manual apply primarily to versions of *ZynAddSubFx* prior to version 3.0 – the *ZynAddSubFx* project is planning a major user-interface change for version 3.0, and many of the file formats will change as well. Of course, one can still continue to use the old "Zyn" as well.

1.2 New Features

This section provides an *ad hoc*, catch-as-catch-can survey of the new features of *Yoshimi*, in no particular order.

1.2.1 LV2 Plugin

Yoshimi can now run as an LV2 plugin. Supported features:

1. Sample-accurate MIDI timing.
2. State save/restore support via *LV2.State.Interface*.
3. Working UI support via *LV2.External_UI.Widget*.
4. Programs interface support via *LV2.Programs.Interface*.
5. Multi-channel audio output. 'outl' and 'outr' have lv2 index 2 and 3. All individual ports numbers start at 4.

1.2.2 Control Automation

Already well underway, controls automation support is a part of a common controls interface. There are significant extensions to the NRPNs that *Yoshimi* handles.

Sensitivity to MIDI volume change (CC #7) is now variable in 'Controllers' in the same way as pan width, etc. The numeric range is 64 to 127; the default at 96 gives the same sensitivity as before at -12dB relative to the GUI controls. 127 gives 0dB and 64 gives -26dB.

In parallel with this there are more NRPNs supported so that one can perform some of these controls via automation. The arrangement looks positively steam-punk, but is actually very easy to use, requiring only a utility that can send MIDI CCs. NRPNs aren't special. They are simply a specific pattern of CCs. *Yoshimi*'s implementation is very forgiving, doesn't mind if one stops halfway through (will just get on with other things while it waits) and will report exactly what it is doing. See the new NRPN sections.

1.2.3 MIDI CC

To help when things don't seem to go right, one can now show 'raw' incoming CCs. This is enabled from the **Settings / MIDI** tab. These are the values before *Yoshimi* does any processing.

MIDI program changes have always been pretty clean from the time Cal first introduced them, but now GUI changes are just as clean. While it is generally best to change a program when the part is silent, even if a part is sounding there is barely a click. There is no interference at all with any other sounding parts.

Sometimes MIDI CCs don't seem to give the results one expects. There is now a setting that reports all incoming CCs so that one can discover what *Yoshimi* actually sees (which may not be what was expected).

At the request of one user, *Yoshimi* now has an implementation of CC2, Breath Control. This feature combines volume with filter cutoff.

1.2.4 Vectors

It's probably best to more clearly separate the concept of *parts* versus *channels* these days. *Yoshimi* now can provide up to 64 parts, in blocks of 16. One can now decide how many one wants to have available using the spin-box alongside the channel number. One can have 16, 32 or 64 parts. By default, all the upper parts are mapped to the same MIDI channel numbers as the lowest ones, but have independent voice and patch set values. They can not normally receive independent note or control messages. However, vector control will intelligently work with however many are set, as will all the NRPN direct part controls.

1.2.5 Bank Support

Bank root directories are better identified, with IDs that can be changed by the user in the GUI. This is also made available for selecting over MIDI. MIDI only sees banks in the *current root* directory, but all banks are accessible to the GUI.

It is now possible to set up a new bank root path when starting from the command line. This takes the form:

```
$ yoshimi -D /home/(username)/(directory)/(subdirectory)/bank
```

Yoshimi will then immediately scan this path for new banks, but won't make the root (or any of its banks) current. The final directory doesn't in fact have to be 'banks', but, traditionally, we have always done this. Also, when running from the command line there is now access to many of the system and root, bank, and other settings.

Yoshimi now splits out roots and banks from the main configuration file, and also creates a new history file. The separation means that the different functions can be implemented, saved, and loaded at the most appropriate time. These files have "yoshimi" as the doctype, as they are in no way relevant to ZynAddSubFX. See the new Banks sections.

1.2.6 Accessibility

One of the main features of recent releases of *Yoshimi* is improved accessibility. The effectiveness (and indeed usefulness) of this will help shape future complimentary interfaces. Also, a number of first-time defaults have been changed to make this easier.

It has always been possible to run *Yoshimi* headless, but now real control is available. In the first place, when starting from the command line, an argument can be included for a new root path to be defined to point to a set of banks fetched from elsewhere. This will be given the next free ID.

Once running, almost all dynamic setup (i.e. doesn't require a restart) can now be done within the terminal window. There is also extensive control of roots, banks, parts and instruments including the ability to list and set all of these. One can now do things like:

```
path add /home/music/yoshimi/banks
set part 4 program 130
```

Additional controls that are frequently taken for granted in the GUI but otherwise get forgotten are master key shift and master volume. We have the most important parts of vector control exposed to the command line. For all of this there is extensive error checking and feedback, which can be rendered aurally using text-to-speech software.

There is one partially-sighted person we very occasionally hear from. There is also a totally blind person (working with a Braille reader/writer) who has offered a lot of suggestions, and very much likes vector control. So accessibility is an important feature of *Yoshimi*.

1.2.7 Command Line

There is greater control of one's working environment. One can have just the GUI, just a CLI or both, and these settings can be saved. If one tries to disable both, one will get a polite warning and will be left with just the CLI.

The CLI can now access almost all top level controls as well as the 'main page' part ones and can select any effect and effect preset, but can't yet deal with the individual effects controls. It can be used to set up Vector Control much more quickly and easily than using NRPNs. The CLI is also context sensitive, which, along with careful choice of command names and abbreviations, allows very fast access with minimal typing.

Yoshimi's parser is case-insensitive for commands (but not for filenames), and accepts the shortest unambiguous abbreviation. However it is quite pedantic, and expects spelling to be correct regardless of length. Apart from the 'back' commands, it is word-based so spaces are significant.

Some examples:

"**s p 4 pr 6**" (set part 4 program 6): This command sets part 4 to the instrument with ID 6 from the current bank. It also then leaves one at the part context level and pointed to part 4. Additionally, it will activate that part if it was off (and the configuration setting is checked). In most cases the words 'program' and 'instrument' are interchangeable.

"**s ef 1 ty rev**": This command moves one up to part effects context level and sets that part's effect number 1 to effect type 'reverb'.

`”s pre 2”`: This command sets preset number 2 (we use numbers here as most preset names repeat the effect type).

`”..s 6 v 80”`: This command drops one back up to part level, switches one to part 6, and sets its volume to 80 (but doesn’t actually enable it).

`”/s ve cc 93”`: This command drops back up to the top level, and sets vector control for channel 0, X axis to respond to CC 93 leaving one in the vector context.

Whenever intermediate values are omitted, the default or last-used value will be assumed, and all counting starts from zero. The CLI prompt always shows what level one is on, and the help lists are also partly context-sensitive, so one doesn’t see a lot of irrelevant clutter. There is more, and a lot more to come! While doing all this work, we’ve also ensured that *Yoshimi* instrument patches are still fully compatible with *ZynAddSubFX* patches, and have now ported across the new refinements with thanks.

1.2.8 Audio Support

The preferred JACK/ALSA MIDI and audio connections are no longer fixed at compile time. There are now checkboxes on ‘Settings’ to change them. One can also set ‘preferred’ startup ALSA/JACK/MIDI and audio devices. These selections will be remembered on the next run.

Yoshimi will now always start even if the audio/MIDI backend called for doesn’t exist. In this situation it will try all combinations in the order JACK, ALSA, and null. This enables one to then change the settings and try again.

Another significant improvement is to the handling of ALSA audio, which is still very important for some people. Up until now, *Yoshimi* has insisted on 2-channel 16-bit format. Tests have shown that virtually all motherboard sound chipsets will handle this setting, but many external ones don’t. So now we initially request 32 bit 2 channel and work towards a compromise with the hardware. With external sound modules in mind, endian swaps are also implemented.

Yoshimi is now verified as being able to use the 192000 Hz sample rate in both ALSA and JACK... if one has a suitable soundcard!

1.2.9 Miscellany

Yoshimi now stamps instrument and patch-set XML files with its own major and minor version numbers so it is possible to tell which version created the files, or whether they were created by *ZynAddSubFX*.

It is now possible to direct messages to either `stderr` (the error output of a terminal console) or the report window on the fly. If one chooses `stderr`, the **Reports** button is greyed out.

One can now use the mouse scroll wheel to adjust rotary controls. Holding down the Ctrl key gives access to finer adjustment. Also, horizontal as well as vertical mouse movement will adjust the knob.

Including the Mixer Panel, all the vertical sliders will return to their ‘home’ positions if right-clicked anywhere in the control.

Part-editing windows carry the part number and voice name in the title bar. For the AddSynth oscillator window this also includes the voice number.

When opening an instrument bank, one can now tell exactly which synth engines are used by each instrument. This is represented by three pale background colours: Red = AddSynth; Blue = SubSynth; and Green = PadSynth.

If the instruments are kits they scanned to find out if any member of the kit contains each engine, so that the colors above can be applied. This feature is duplicated in the current part, the mixer panel for the currently loaded instruments, and in the Instrument Edit window. The same colors highlight the engine names when they are enabled with the check boxes.

Yoshimi now remembers where major windows were last placed (per instance), and if any were left open at shutdown, they will be reopened at the same location on the next run.

Thanks to the *ZynAddSubFX* developers, *Yoshimi* now has pink as well as white noise available on Addsynth voices. Pink noise sounds 'softer'. With the latest 'depop' port from *ZynAddSubFX*, *Yoshimi* is now fully compatibly with all instrument files.

The 'Humanise' feature has had more interest so it's been upgraded. It's now a slider and it's setting can be saved in patch sets. It provides a tiny per-note random detune to an *entire* part (all engines in all kits), but only for that part.

Audio and MIDI preferences have been improved. If one sets (say) ALSA MIDI and JACK audio, either from the GUI or the command line, the setting can be saved and will be reinstated on the next run. These settings are per-instance, so if one has multiple sound cards, one can make full use of them.

Barring major system failures, there are now no circumstances where *Yoshimi* will fail to start.

We have tested *Yoshimi* in 'recovery' mode, logged in as root, with no X server. Using the command `/usr/share/bin/yoshimi -A -i` worked perfectly and auto-connected the keyboard so we could prove everything worked. We still need the X11 libraries to compile *Yoshimi*, but we don't know if it is practical to provide a compile time option to build a purely headless version.

1.3 Document Structure

The structure of this document is a struggle. No matter which route is taken, there's no way to avoid jumping all over this document to adequately cover a topic. Therefore, the sections are basically provided in the order their contents appear in the user interface of *Yoshimi*. To help the reader jump around this document, multiple links and references are supplied.

Usage tips for each of the functions provided in *Yoshimi* are sprinkled throughout this document. Each tip occurs in a section beginning with "Tip:". Each tip is provided with an entry in the Index, under the main topic "tips".

Bug notes for some of the oddities found in *Yoshimi* are sprinkled throughout this document. Each bug occurs in a sentence beginning with "Bug:". Each bug is provided with an entry in the Index, under the main topic "bugs".

New features since the last version are flagged with "New:" We cannot pretend to have marked all new developments, as *Yoshimi* is advancing fast.

To-do items are also present, in the same vein.

1.4 Yoshimi Mailing List

The *Yoshimi* project used to have an email listserv at SourceForge, but the unreliability of the site has prompted a move to a new mailing list. See reference [19]. The team have managed to port across all the old *yoshimi-user* archives to this new site. See reference [20].

Subscribe to the *Yoshimi* mailing list with an e-mail to: yoshimi-request@freelists.org or by visiting <http://www.freelists.org/list/yoshimi>.

To post to the list, send an email to: yoshimi@freelists.org. The news archive is at: <https://www.freelists.org/archive/yoshimi>.

1.5 Yoshimi Licensing

Before we get started, one more thing.

Software licenses are something I *really* don't want to get involved in - I have much better things to do with my time - but I found I was obliged to do so.

It is possible I'm the only person who knows all the following events, as I was the one that instigated them!

The first time I saw ZynAddSubFX source files they were licensed as GPL V2. At that time Zyn had a number of very serious problems, and not much was being done about them. Somewhat naively I asked Lars Luthman if he would help, as he had offered a couple of small patches previously. His response was that he would not do any significant work, as he did not agree with the GPL V2 only license.

I then contacted Paul, explaining the situation and asking if he would consider a change in the license to V2 or later. I was actually a bit surprised that he immediately agreed. When I next looked at the sources, the licenses on the files had indeed been updated, so I passed this information on.

Unfortunately Paul forgot to update the website, but I wasn't especially concerned as it was only the files themselves that really mattered.

While developing Yoshimi after the initial fork, Cal queried the license situation. I told him of the conversations I'd had, and passed him a copy of the email I'd got from Paul. Later on, Cal - in good faith - wrote new sources and placed them under GPL V3. This would be quite compatible with V2 or later, but not with V2 strict.

What I didn't notice until very much later was that Paul had only updated half of the text in the sources, leaving the actual licence in an ambiguous state.

To the best of my knowledge, V3 is not compatible with V2 strict, but V2 or later is. However the *complete* project then becomes downgraded to V2 strict - although the V2 or later sources (such as all the new root/bank code) can independently be freely merged into V3 code.

I doubt anyone would actually make an issue of this. However, to safeguard Yoshimi as a whole, I took it upon myself to change Cal's code to V2 or later. I believe it retains the spirit of his wishes, and the only person with standing to object - his daughter - has been totally supportive of the work currently being done on Yoshimi.

Any source code I add will be GPL V2 or later.

Update.

The original change discussion has now been located and the license for both Zyn and Yoshi is confirmed as GPL V2 or later.

Anyone wanting to confirm this should look at the Zyn user list archives August 2007 and September 2007.

1.6 Let's Get Started with Yoshimi!

Let us run *Yoshimi*, but run it without using *JACK*, which complicates the discussion of *Yoshimi*. The first thing to do is make sure one has no other sound application running (unless one wants to risk blocking *Yoshimi* or hearing two sounds simultaneously, depending on one's sound card and ALSA setup). Then start *Yoshimi* so that it uses ALSA for audio and ALSA for MIDI. See section [20 "Yoshimi Man Page"](#) on page [211](#).

```
$ yoshimi -a -A
```



Figure 1: Yoshimi Splash Screen!

One sees a brief message, and then the splash screen. We show the splash screen, figure 1 ”[Yoshimi Splash Screen!](#)” on page 18, here because it goes away too fast when one runs *Yoshimi!* What fun is that?

Next shown is the *Yoshimi* main window, as shown in figure 2 ”[Yoshimi Main Screen, 1.4.1](#)” on page 19, and it persists, of course:

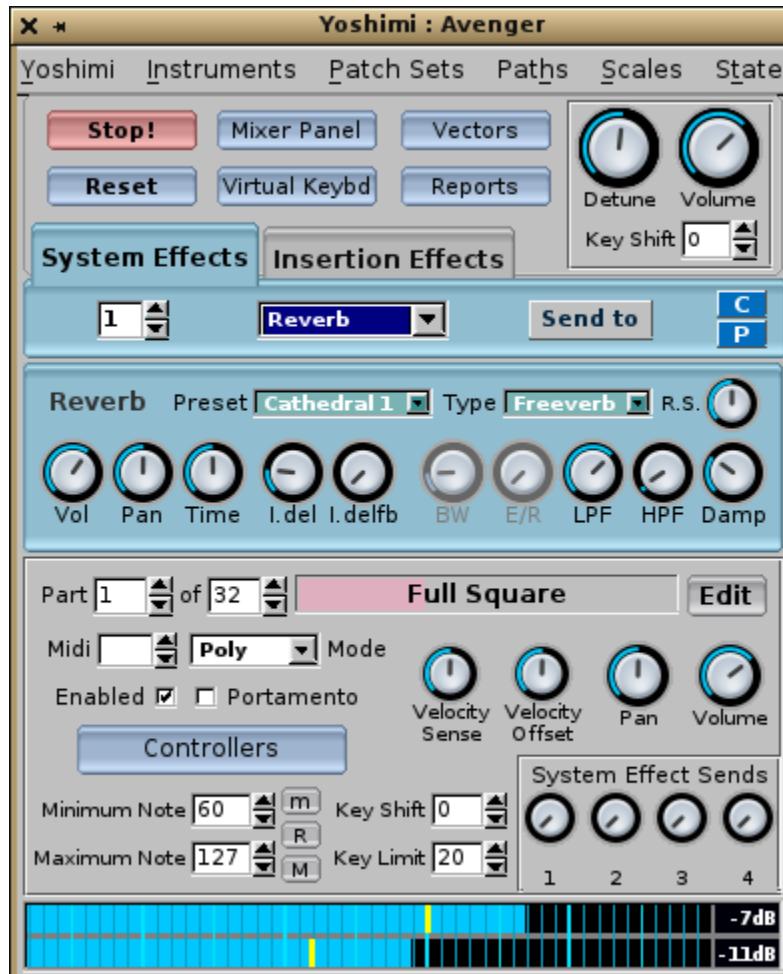


Figure 2: Yoshimi Main Screen, 1.4.1

For this manual, the main window is composed of the following sections:

1. **Menu.**
2. **Top Panel.**
3. **Effects Panel.**
4. **Bottom Panel.** Includes the VU-meter at the bottom.

One thing to note is that the **Detune** and **Pan** buttons no longer have a small red button next to them to press in order to reset the control to its center value. Starting with version 1.4.0, a right-click on any control in *Yoshimi* will reset the control's value to its center position. In version 1.4.1, the **Vectors** control appears, with some minor rearrangement of the top panel.

There's a lot going on with *Yoshimi*, with no way to describe it in linear order. This manual describes how to do useful things in each of the sections noted above, while leaving some of the details to be described in later sections, to which reference can be made for the details. This document depends heavily on index entries and references. There is also a "cookbook" at [2]; it is a long way from being comprehensive, but still has some useful tips.

If one downloads the source code for *Yoshimi*, in the `examples` directory one finds a complete song set, `OutThere.mid` and `OutThere.xmz`. Together these produce a fairly complex 12 part tune that makes *Yoshimi* work quite hard. Also, after installing *Yoshimi*, one can find a nice, short introduction to *Yoshimi*

in Will’s document, `/usr/share/doc/yoshimi/The Short Yoshimi Guide.odt`, along with a number of texts files with information that might not yet be present in the long manual.

2 Concepts

Before we start with the user-interface, let’s cover some concepts and terms. *Yoshimi* requires the user to understand many concepts and terms. Understanding them makes it easier to configure *Yoshimi* and to drive it from a sequencer application.

Significant portions of this section are shamelessly copied (and tweaked) from Paul Nasca’s original *ZynAddSubFX* manual [26] or [27]. One can discern such sections by the usage of the term *ZynAddSubFX* instead of *Yoshimi*. However, even the *Yoshimi* developers sometimes refer to *ZynAddSubFX* or *Zyn*.

Note that there are some audio/electrical concepts discussed in greater detail in section [6 ”Stock Settings Elements”](#) on page [77](#). Perhaps they belong in this ”concepts” section, but they are directly tied to user-interface items.

2.1 Concepts / Terms

This section doesn’t provide comprehensive coverage of terms. It covers mainly terms that might puzzle one at first, or have a special meaning in *Yoshimi*.

2.1.1 Concepts / Terms / Cent

The **cent** is a logarithmic unit of measure for musical intervals. Twelve-tone equal temperament divides the octave into 12 semitones of 100 cents each. Typically, cents are used to measure extremely small pitch intervals, or to compare the sizes of comparable intervals in different tuning systems. The interval of one cent is much too small to be heard between successive notes.

2.1.2 Concepts / Terms / Frame

The audio **frame** is a single sample of however many channels an application is handling. If one is using JACK, a mono signal will have frames of 1 float, 2 floats for stereo, etc. A six-channel device will have six samples in a single frame. An audio or JACK buffer will contain more than one frame of data. Buffers generally range in size from 16 to 1024 frames. Low values provide less latency, but make the CPU work harder.

2.1.3 Concepts / Terms / Instrument

In *Yoshimi*, an *instrument* is a complex sound that can be constructed using ADDsynth, SUBsynth, PADsynth, and kits. Each instrument is loaded into a *part* (see section [2.1.4 ”Concepts / Terms / Part”](#) on page [21](#)).

In our documentation, we will sometimes use the terms ”instrument”, ”patch”, and even ”program” interchangeably and loosely. However, ”part” now has a different meaning, as seen in the next term.

2.1.4 Concepts / Terms / Part

In *Yoshimi*, a *part* is one of 16, 32, or 64 "slots" into which one can load an instrument (see section [2.1.3 "Concepts / Terms / Instrument" on page 20](#)). Each part can be enabled or disabled, and assigned to a particular MIDI channel, one of the 16 MIDI channels. Note that the previous *Yoshimi* limit on parts was 16. Since 1.3.5, this limit has been raised to 64.

2.1.5 Concepts / Terms / Patch

In MIDI jargon, a *patch* is a sound played on one of 16 channels in a MIDI device. Many synthesizers can handle several waveforms per patch, mixing different instruments together to create synthetic sounds. Each waveform counts as a MIDI voice. Some sound cards can support two or more waveforms per patch. *Yoshimi* has some ability to combine waveforms ("voices") into one instrument (section [2.1.3 "Concepts / Terms / Instrument" on page 20](#)), which can then be loaded into a *Yoshimi* part (section [2.1.4 "Concepts / Terms / Part" on page 21](#)).

Before General MIDI, which standardized patches, MIDI vendors assigned patch numbers to their synthesizer products in an arbitrary manner.

2.1.6 Concepts / Terms / Patch Set

A patch set (also known as "patchset") is basically a group of instruments related simply by the user wanting to have them all loaded at once into *Yoshimi*. A patch set is stored in a `.xmz` file. A patch set is akin to a preset, in that it stores a combination of items, that took awhile to set up, for easy retrieval later.

As with most applications, *Yoshimi* and *ZynAddSubFX* allow for one to save one's work and reload it. *Yoshimi* has a number of different files that make up the current configuration. Together, they make up the concept of a *patch set* (also called a *patchset*). See section [3 "Configuration Files" on page 30](#).

2.1.7 Concepts / Terms / Presets

Presets allow one to save the settings for any of the components which support copy/paste operations. This is done with preset files (`.xpz`), which get stored in the folders indicated by **Paths / Preset Dirs....**. Note that the number of preset directories that can be set is limited to 128 (the same as for roots and banks).

In MIDI jargon, a *preset* is an instrument that can be easily loaded. It is also called a *program* or a *patch*. A program is selected via a "program-change" message. A *preset* is any collection of settings that can be saved to the clipboard or to a file, for later loading elsewhere.

2.1.8 Concepts / Terms / Program

In MIDI jargon, a *program* is the same as a *preset* ([2.1.7](#)).

2.1.9 Concepts / Terms / Voice

In MIDI jargon, a *voice* is the same as a *preset* or a *program*. In *Yoshimi*, a *voice* is a single configurable waveform that is just one of up to eight waveforms in an ADDsynth setting. Such voices can also be used as modulators for other voices.

2.2 Concepts / ALSA Versus JACK

Some discusson from the *Yoshimi* wiki. Here for eventual clarification.

A bit of a question mark was raised over ALSA MIDI support. A lot of people seem to be giving this up and relying on bridges like *a2jmidi* for legacy software and hardware inputs. JACK MIDI is already synchronous so should be jitter-free whereas ALSA MIDI runs on a 'best effort' basis. Added to which JACK is available for OS X and Windows so concentrating on this could make a possible port to other platforms more attractive – not to me I (Will J. Godfrey) hasten to add!

Sq24 (a nice, if old, sequencer) uses ALSA MIDI. To connect applications that exclusively support JACK MIDI, *a2jmidi* will do the translation. (Jack v. 1 has this integrated in recent versions, apparently).

ALSA is more complex as it handles the sound card's format, commonly 16-bit integers, 24 bit integers (low byte ignored), and short integers. Less commonly it may be floats or the weird 24-bit long integers. We're still not sure if these are packed or low-aligned (top byte ignored). We've assumed they are low-aligned, but we don't know anyone who has such a card, in order to prove it. The only ALSA format *Yoshimi* doesn't support is float.

Something that's not obvious is the way that ALSA audio is controlled and who takes command. If one sets a specific destination, then *Yoshimi* says what it wants. It's often a negotiation on bit depth and channel count, but *Yoshimi* nearly always gets to decide the buffer size (it will be set to the internal buffer size). However, if the destination is "default", then ALSA decides on the sound card, bit depth, number of channels and the buffer size, and *Yoshimi* will set its internal buffer size to match. On most machines this always seems to be 1024.

Yoshimi is now verified as being able to use the 192000 Hz sample rate in both ALSA and JACK... if one has a suitable soundcard!

If *Yoshimi* is configured for JACK, but cannot find the JACK server, it will try for ALSA. If neither JACK nor ALSA works, it will run with a null client so one can at least try to work out what went wrong. This status is reported to the command line or Reports window.

For JACK, if one has started *Yoshimi* from the command-line with the *-K* option, it will auto-connect the main left and right outputs. On some machines, using the *-k* argument to also start JACK ends up running *jackdbus* which seems to route all JACK audio to */dev/null*.

2.3 Concepts / Banks and Roots

In *Yoshimi*, a *root* is a location in which banks can be stored. It is basically a directory, though it ultimately is assigned a number by *Yoshimi*, to be able to access it in an automated way. By choosing a root, one can hone in on a smaller collection of banks.

Sometimes, one will see the term *path*. In *Yoshimi*, a *path* is simply the directory location of a root. This change is reflected in the user-interfaces, both graphical and command-line. Note that there are other file categories, such as *presets*, that are located via paths.

Another important concept in *Yoshimi* is *banks*. Instruments can be stored in banks. These are loaded and saved automatically by the program. On program start, the last used bank is loaded. A single bank can store up to 128 instruments normally, and 160 using extended programs. A bank isn't a file... it is a directory, managed by *Yoshimi*, which contains instrument (.xiz) files.

These concepts are discussed in great detail in section 4 "Banks and Roots" on page 35.

2.4 Concepts / Basic Synthesis

This section describes some of the basic principles of synthesis, and contains suggestions on how to make instruments that sound like they have been made with professional equipment. This applies to *Yoshimi* or to any synthesizer (even if one wrote it oneself with a few lines of code). All the ideas from *Yoshimi* are derived from the principles outlined below.

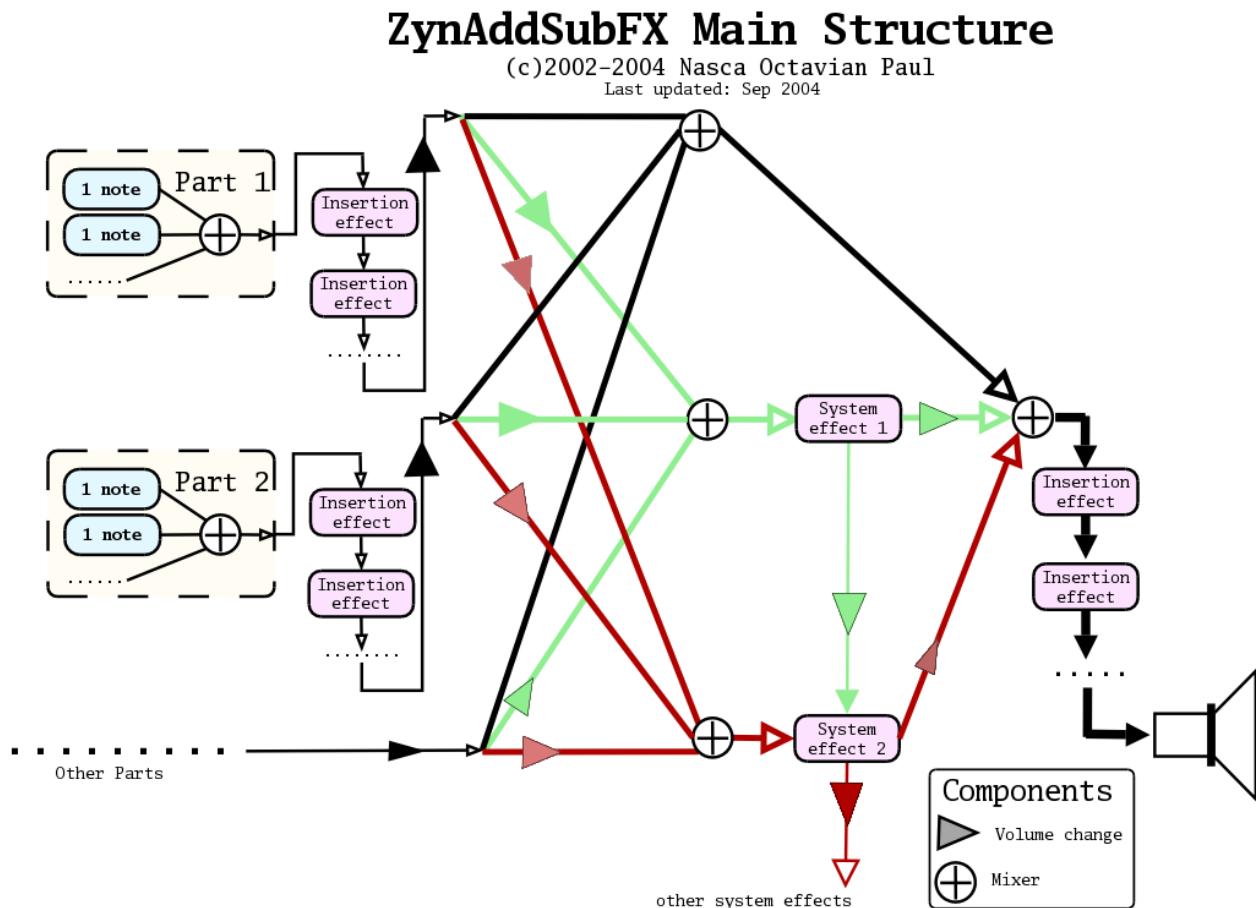


Figure 3: ZynAddSubFX/Yoshimi Main Structure

For a given part, the synthesizer first creates a note. Each note's waveform (for example, in a chord) is summed (mixed). This complex waveform is then sent to the series of Insertion effects (if any) that are defined. Each part is then sent to a System effect and (depending on the wetness of the mix) directly to a mixer. Additional Insertion effects (if any) are then applied. The result is the final output of the synthesizer.

The synthesizer has three major types of parameters:

1. **Master settings/parameters.** Contains all parameters (including effects and instruments).
2. **Instrument parameters.** Contains ADDnote/SUBnote/PADnote parameters for a part.
3. **Scale settings.** Contains the settings of scales (*Yoshimi* is a micro-tonal synth) and few other parameters related to tunings.

2.4.1 Concepts / Basic Synthesis / Panning

Pan lets one apply panning, which means that the sound source can move to the right or left. Set it to 0.0 to only hear output on the right side, or to the maximum value to only hear output on the left side.

2.4.2 Concepts / Basic Synthesis / Wetness

Wetness determines the mix of the results of the effect and its input. This mix is made the effects output. If an effect is wet, it means that none of the input signal is bypassing the effect. If it is dry, then the effect is bypassed completely, and has no effect.

2.4.3 Concepts / Basic Synthesis / Single Note

The idea of this synthesis model is from another synthesizer Paul Nasca wrote years ago, released on the Internet as "Paul's Sound Designer". The new model is more advanced than that project (adding SUBsynth, more LFO's/Envelopes, etc.), but the idea is the same.

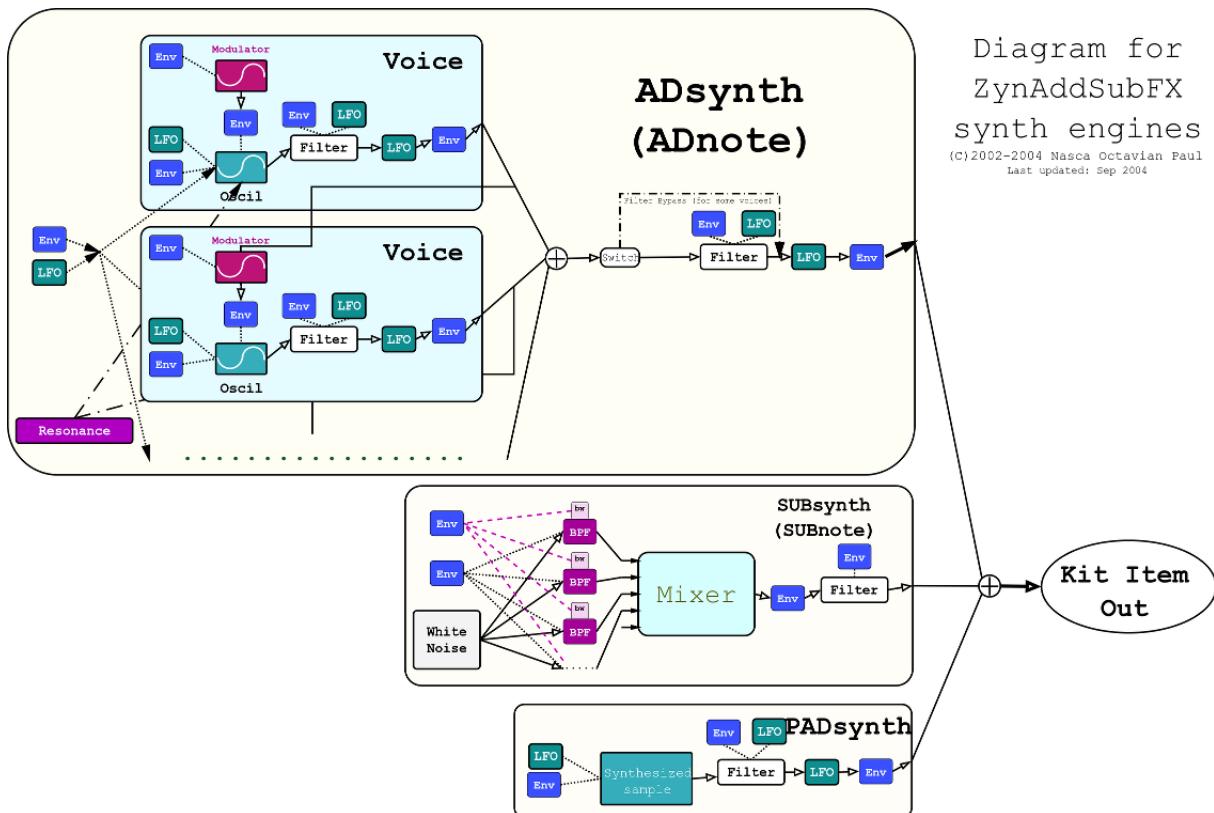


Figure 4: ZynAddSubFX/Yoshimi Note Generation

The figure represents the synthesizer module components. The continuous lines are the signal routing, and the dotted lines are frequency controlling signals (they control the frequency of something). The dashed lines control the bandwidths of bandpass filters. "Env" are the envelopes, "LFO" the Low Frequency Oscillators, "BPF" are band pass filters, "bw" are the bandwidth of the BPF's. If one uses instrument kits, the "note out" represents the output of the kit item.

2.4.4 Concepts / Basic Synthesis / Harmonics

Harmonics are sine waves that are multiple of the base frequency of a note. *Yoshimi* and *ZynAddSubFX* introduce the concept of increasing the bandwidth of a harmonic so that it is not quite a sine wave.

2.4.4.1 Harmonic Bandwidth

"Harmonic bandwidth" does not refer to sample-rate, it refers to the frequency "spread" of each harmonic. This is the most important principle of making instruments that sound good. Unfortunately there is very little documentation about it.

Often it is believed that the pitched sounds (like piano, organ, choir, etc.) for a single note have a frequency, but it's actually harmonics and nothing more. Many people try to synthesize a sound using an exact frequency plus the harmonics, and observe that the result sounds too "artificial". They might try to modify the harmonic content, add a vibrato, tremolo, but even that doesn't sound "warm" enough. The reason is that the natural sounds don't produce an exact period; their sounds are quasi-periodic. Please note that not all quasi-periodic sounds are "warm" or pleasant. (Nasca's discussion of periodic vs. quasi-periodic, and the figures he shows, are not included here.) Basically, by slightly increasing the bandwidth of a periodic sound, it is possible to make it quasi-periodic.

A very important thing about bandwidth and natural sounds is that the bandwidth has to be increased if one increases the frequency of the harmonic. If the fundamental frequency is 440 Hz and the bandwidth is 10 Hz (that means that the frequencies are spread from 435 to 445 Hz), the bandwidth of the second harmonics (880Hz) must be 20 Hz. A simple formula to compute the bandwidth of each harmonic if one knows the bandwidth of the fundamental frequency is $BWn = nbw1$, where n is the order of the harmonic, $bw1$ is the bandwidth of fundamental frequency and BWn is the bandwidth of the n 'th harmonic. If one does not increase the bandwidth according the frequency, the resulting instrument will (usually) sound too 'artificial' or 'ugly'. There are at least three methods of making good sounds with the above considerations:

1. **Detuning.** By adding slightly detuned sounds (in *Yoshimi* it is called "ADDsynth"). The idea is not new: it has been used for thousands of years in choirs and ensembles. That's why choirs sound so beautiful.
2. **Noise sculpting.** By generating white noise, subtracting all harmonics with band-pass filters and adding the results (in *Yoshimi* it is called "SUBsynth").
3. **Generation by spectrum.** By "drawing" the above graph that represents the frequency amplitudes on a large array, put random phases and do a single IFFT for the whole sample.

2.4.4.2 Harmonic Amplitude

An important principle of natural harmonics is to decrease the amplitude of higher harmonics on low-velocity notes.

All natural notes have this property, because on low-velocity notes there is not enough energy to spread to higher harmonics. On artificial synthesis one can do this by using a low-pass filter that lowers the

cutoff frequency on notes with low velocities or, if one uses FM (frequency modulation), by lowering the modulator index. The spectrum of the sound should be almost the same according to the frequencies and not the harmonics.

This means that, for example, the higher the pitch is, the smaller the number of harmonics it will contain. This happens in a natural instrument because of the resonance. In this case there are many instruments that don't obey this, but sound quite good (example: synth organ). If one records the C-2 note from a piano and one plays it at a very high speed (8 times), the result will not sound like the C-5 key from the piano. The pitch is C-5, but the timbre is very different. This is because the harmonic content is preserved (the n-th harmonic will have the same amplitude in both cases) and not the spectrum (eg. the amplitudes of the harmonics around 1000 Hz are too different from one case to another).

In artificial synthesis one can use filters to add resonance or FM synthesis that varies the index according to the frequency. In *Yoshimi* one can add the resonance:

1. **ADDsynth:** Use the Resonance, a high harmonics sound content, and filters or FM.
2. **SUBsynth:** Add some harmonics and use the Global Filter.

2.4.5 Concepts / Basic Synthesis / Randomness

The main reason why the digital synthesis sounds too "cold" is because the same recorded sample is played over and over on each key-press. There is no difference between a note played the first time and second time. Exceptions may be the filtering and some effects, but these are not enough. In natural or analog instruments this doesn't happen because it is impossible to reproduce exactly the same conditions for each note. To make a warm instrument one must make sure that it sounds slightly different each time. In *Yoshimi* one can do this:

1. **ADDsynth:** Set the "Randomness" function from Oscillator Editor to a value different than 0, or change the start phase of the LFO to the leftmost value.
2. **SUBsynth:** All notes already have randomness because the starting sound is white noise.
3. **PADSynth:** The engine starts the sample from random positions on each keystroke.

In setting the randomness of the oscillator output, there are two types of randomness. The first is *group randomness*, where the oscillator starts at a random position. The second is *phase randomness*: from -64 (max) to -1 (min) and each harmonic (the oscillator is phase distorted) is from 1 (min) to 63 (max). 0 is no randomness. One could use this parameter for making warm sounds like analog synthesizers.

See the ADDSynth oscillator editor, section [10.4.5 "ADDsynth / Voice Parameters / Voice Oscillator"](#) on page [154](#), for this kind of control, named **Ph.rnd** or **rnd**.

There is now the possibility to add a 'naturalising' random pitch element to a part. This is found in the part-edit window. The settings are not currently saved, but will be once the control values are settled, and there has been enough experience to decide whether it should be a part or voice setting. (In the newer versions of *Yoshimi*, see the **Humanise** setting in the part-edit window.

2.4.6 Concepts / Basic Synthesis / Components

Important: All indexes of MIDI Channels, Parts, Effects starts from 0, so, for example, the first Part is 0. However, in other discussions of MIDI, part numbers, programs, or channels are often described as starting from 1.

Yoshimi components:

1. **Parts.** They receive the note messages from MIDI Channels. One may assign a part to any channel. A part can store only one instrument. "Add.S" represents ADDsynth and "Sub.S" is SUBsynth. In recent versions of *Yoshimi*, the number of parts available has been increased from 16 to 64.
2. **Insertion Effect.** This effect applies only to one part; one can have any number of insertion effects for one part, but the number of these cannot be bigger than NUM.INS.EFX.
3. **Part Mixer.** Mixes all parts. Also known as the "Panel" or "Mixer Panel".
4. **System Effects.** Applied to all parts, one can set how much signal is routed through a system effect.
5. **Master mixer.** Mixes all outputs of Parts Mixers and System Effects.

2.4.7 Concepts / Basic Synthesis / Filters

Yoshimi offers several different types of filters, which can be used to shape the spectrum of a signal. The primary parameters that affect the characteristics of the filter are the cutoff, resonance, filter stages, and the filter type.

Cutoff: This value determines which frequency marks the changing point for the filter. In a low pass filter, this value marks the point where higher frequencies are attenuated.

Resonance: The resonance of a filter determines how much excess energy is present at the cutoff frequency. In *Yoshimi*, this is represented by the Q-factor, which is defined to be the cutoff frequency divided by the bandwidth. In other words higher Q values result in a much more narrow resonant spike.

Stages: The number of stages in a given filter describes how sharply it is able to make changes in the frequency response. The affect of the order of the filter is roughly synonymous with the number of stages of the filter. For more complex patches it is important to realize that the extra sharpness in the filter does not come for free as it requires many more calculations being performed. This phenomena is the most visible in SUBsynth, where it is easy to need several hundred filter stages to produce a given note.

The **Q:** value of a filter affects how concentrated the signals energy is at the cutoff frequency. For many classical analog sounds, high Q values were used on sweeping filters. A simple high Q low pass filter modulated by a strong envelope is usually sufficient to get a good sound.

Filter Type: There are different types of filters. The number of poles define what will happen at a given frequency. Mathematically, the filters are functions which have poles that correspond to that frequency. Usually, two poles mean that the function has more "steepness", and that one can set the exact value of the function at the poles by defining the "resonance value". Filters with two poles are also often referenced as Butterworth filters.

For the interested reader, functions having *poles* means that we are given a quotient of polynomials. The denominator has degree 1 or 2, depending on the filter having one or two poles. In the file `DSP/AnalogFilter.cpp`, `AnalogFilter::computefiltercoefs()` sets the coefficients (depending on the filter type), and `AnalogFilter::singlefilterout()` shows the whole polynomial (in a formula where no quotient is needed).

Filters are thoroughly described in section [6.2 "Filter Settings"](#) on page [79](#).

2.4.8 Concepts / Basic Synthesis / Envelopes

Envelopes are long-period wave forms that are applied to frequency, amplitude, or filters. Envelopes generate effects such as tremolo and vibrato, as well as effects that occur when a sound-generating physical

Table 1: ZynAddSubFX/Yoshimi MIDI Messages

| | |
|----------------|---|
| 0 or 32 | Bank Change (user selectable, does <i>not</i> force a program change) |
| 1 | Modulation Wheel |
| 2 | Breath Control |
| 6 | Data MSB |
| 7 | Volume |
| 10 | Panning |
| 11 | Expression |
| 38 | Data LSB |
| 64 | Sustain pedal |
| 65 | Portamento |
| 71 | Filter Q (Sound Timbre) |
| 74 | Filter Cutoff (Brightness) |
| 75 | BandWidth (different from GM spec) |
| 76 | FM amplitude (different from GM spec) |
| 77 | Resonance Center Frequency (different from GM spec) |
| 78 | Resonance Bandwidth (different from GM spec) |
| 96 | Data Increment |
| 97 | Data Decrement |
| 98 | NRPN LSB |
| 99 | NRPN MSB |
| 120 | All Sounds OFF |
| 121 | Reset All Controllers |
| 123 | All Notes OFF |
| 192 | Program Change (voices 1-128; see notes below) |
| 224 | Pitch Bend (see notes below) |

component changes shape. Envelopes are thoroughly described in section [6.5 "Envelope Settings"](#) on page [92](#).

2.5 Concepts / MIDI

It is useful to discuss some of the details of MIDI in order to understand *Yoshimi*. Obviously, we assume some knowledge already, or one wouldn't be running *Yoshimi*.

2.5.1 Concepts / MIDI / Learn

MIDI Learn is the ability to assign DAW, sequencer, and plugin controls to physical knobs and faders on a MIDI control surface.

2.5.2 Concepts / MIDI / Messages

Yoshimi responds to the following MIDI controller messages ([1](#)). This list seems to be more extensive than that presented in the online *ZynAddSubFX* documentation.

For the controllers (numbers 75 to 78) that are not defined in GM:

- **Bandwidth** control (75) increases or decreases the bandwidth of instruments. The default value of this parameter is 64.
- **Modulation amplitude** (76) decreases the amplitude of modulators on ADDsynth. The default value of this parameter is 127.
- **Resonance Center Frequency** control (77) changes the center frequency of the resonance.
- **Resonance Bandwidth** control (78) changes the bandwidth of the resonance.

Some standard MIDI messages are handled a bit differently by *Yoshimi*:

- **Program Change** (192) also provides user selectable CC for voices 128-160. There is now an option to make Program Change enable a part if it's currently disabled.
- **Key pressure (aftertouch)** is internally translated as CC 900.
- **Channel Pressure** is internally translated as CC 901.
- **Pitch Bend** is internally translated as CC 1000.
- **Modulation** The wheel only affects AddSynth and PadSynth, and then only the frequency LFO depth. Just to make it more confusing, it changes the level from 0 up to its current (GUI) setting only. Therefore, if the LFO depth is set to zero, the Mod Wheel will have no effect.
- **User selectable CC for Bank Root Path change** For more details of bank changes see section [2.3 "Concepts / Banks and Roots"](#) on page [22](#).

Instruments inside banks should *always* have file-names that begin with four digits, followed by a hyphen. Otherwise the results can be rather unpredictable.

2.5.3 Concepts / MIDI / NRPN

NRPN stands for "Non Registered Parameters Number". NRPNs can control all System and Insertion effect parameters. Using NRPNs, *Yoshimi* can now directly set some part values regardless of what channel that part is connected to. For example, one may change the reverb time when playing to keyboard, or change the flanger's LFO frequency.

NRPNs are described in greater detail in section [section 15 "Non-Registered Parameter Numbers"](#) on page [186](#).

2.5.3.1 Concepts / MIDI / NRPN / Vector Control

Vector control is a way to control more than one part with the controllers. Vector control is only possible if one has 32 or 64 parts active in *Yoshimi*. In vector mode, parts will still play together but the vector controls can change their volume, pan, filter cutoff in pairs, controlled by user defined CCs set up with NRPNs.

Vector control is described in greater detail in section [section 16.2 "Vector / Vector Control"](#) on page [194](#).

2.5.3.2 Concepts / MIDI / NRPN / Effects Control

NRPNs are very useful in modifying the parameters of the *Yoshimi* effects.

Effects control is described in greater detail in section [section 15.2 "NRPN / Effects Control"](#) on page [189](#).

2.6 Concepts / Command Line

This section covers a few terms useful in discussing the command line.

2.6.1 Concepts / Command Line / level

The term **level** is used in the description of the new command-line facility of *Yoshimi*. A **level** is simply a related group of parameters or a location where one can go to for making changes. Important levels are: the top level; system effects; part; and more.

2.7 Concepts / LV2 Plugin

Yoshimi now runs as an LV2 plugin.

TODO: Describe LV2 at a high-level.

3 Configuration Files

Let's cover the configuration files, which have expanded in utility in recent versions of *Yoshimi*. Understanding these configuration file makes it easier to use *Yoshimi*.

As with most applications, *Yoshimi* and *ZynAddSubFX* allow for one to save one's work and reload it. *Yoshimi* has a number of different files that make up the current configuration. Together, they make up the concept of a *patch set* (also called a *patchset*). Sometimes one will see reference to a "session", but that term is too easy to confuse with the "session" in "JACK session manager". Here are the file extensions used for saving the *Yoshimi* patch-set data:

Here is a summary of the files. Please note that the names all start with *yoshimi*. For example, *.banks* is really *yoshimi.banks*.

- **.banks** Contains information on the accessible instrument banks, and information to translate between bank directory names and bank ID values.
- **.config** Contains the setup information configured in the **Yoshimi / Settings** dialog.
- **.history** Recent patch sets are now stored in the **.history** file. (Does this include command history?)
- **.instance(n)** Contains the current root/bank, MIDI settings, and preferred engines. (This file does not yet exist, but is a planned future feature.)
- **.state** Contains the state information needed to duplicate a *Yoshimi* session that was saved.
- **.windows** Contains the current layout of windows for reinstatement at the next startup of *Yoshimi*. If there is no such file (`~/.config/yoshimi/yoshimi.window`) at *Yoshimi*, then the keyboard is also opened, alongside the main window, as a help to those new to *Yoshimi*. And of course that state will be saved, if present, when *Yoshimi* exits.
- **.xiz** An Instrument file.
- **.xmz** A full *Yoshimi* configuration; everything. This file is also called a *parameter set*.
- **.xpz** Presets. A preset is a *Yoshimi* sub-setting file.
- **.xsz** Scale Settings.
- **.xvy** Vector settings. The extension stands for "Xml Vector Yoshimi". It will eventually be integrated with the saved states. For a good example, see section [16.3 "Vector / Command Line"](#) on page [196](#). One day, vector settings will also be part of the state save, and possibly patch sets too.

The entire config set should then be (ignoring the prepended `yoshimi`):

- `.config`
- `.instance[n]` (future)
- `.windows`
- `.history`
- `.banks` (this is currently per instance)

The `.windows` file is specific to the GUI, so doesn't figure in this scheme at all, but it is created or saved when one exits *Yoshimi*.

In the file-save dialogs, the file extension is determined by the type of file being saved, and it doesn't matter if one enters the extension explicitly, or not. If it's missing, or it is the wrong one, it will be replaced. This is actually true of almost all file saves, and has been for quite some time now.

For vectors (in common with external instruments and patch sets), it's up to the user as to where to save. The file filter generally defaults to the either the user home directory, or if *Yoshimi* was launched from userland, it's the directory it launched from. Then it's the normal file browser selection. Once saved, **Vectors / Options / Recent** is your friend.

3.1 Configuration Files / Patch Set

A patch set is basically a group of instruments related simply by the user wanting to have them all loaded at once into *Yoshimi*. A patch set is stored in a `.xmz` file. A patch set is akin to a preset, in that it stores a combination of items, that took awhile to set up, for easy retrieval later.

Patch sets are not the full configuration. They carry *most* of it, including almost all of the dynamic settings, but they don't contain the configuration settings that `.state` does. The patch set format is either XML or compressed XML, as explained elsewhere. The **Patch Sets / Save External...** menu entry saves files with the `.xmz` extension. (This file used to be called *parameter set*, but that name is no longer used in *Yoshimi*.)

One of the simplest ways to save one's work is to save the entire *Yoshimi* configuration. This saving can be done through the **Patch Sets** menu (the **File** menu in *ZynAddSubFX*), and will result in the creation of a `.xmz` file. Once created, this file will hold the settings for all settings within that setup, such as microtonal tunings, all patches, system effects, insertion effects, etc. See section [5.1.5.1 "Menu / Yoshimi / Settings / Main Settings"](#) on page [44](#).

In many cases saving everything in a part is not what is desired. Saving a patch later on in an editing session is one such example. In order to save a patch, one can either save it from the **Instruments** menu, or through the **Bank** window.

3.2 Configuration Files / Config

Often, one will see the extension `.config` used in the `$HOME/.config/yoshimi` directory. This file once contained information to translate between bank directory names and bank ID values. In recent versions of *Yoshimi*, this file is much reduced in size, and its "doctype" is no longer "ZynAddSubFX".

The `.config` file is always going to be specific to one machine and working modes, so no one will ever want to copy it across even to another *Yoshimi* environment. Recent patch sets are now no longer stored in the main `.config` file, but in a new `.history` file. The `.config` file is now a much reduced common

settings – interfaces, sample rate – file. It is a single file that every instance can read, but only the first one can write.

.config hasn't yet been separated from .instance(n) and all files are still per instance, as the *Yoshimi* team haven't had time to work out exactly how to manage common files and memory locations for those that should be shared. The .config file is saved only when the user explicitly calls for it to be saved. *Yoshimi* will still mention its absense:

```
$ yoshimi -a -A
Yoshimi is starting
ConfigFile /home/ahlstrom/.config/yoshimi/yoshimi.config not found, will
use default settings ...
```

The .config file will be readable by all instances of *Yoshimi*, but writeable only by the main instance. The relevant controls will be greyed out in the other instances. The .config and .banks data now reside in separate configuration files. The banks file is saved every time there is a normal exit, so the last-used root and bank IDs will always match what that instance thinks is there. Conversely, the main .config file doesn't get saved when one starts a new (unkown) instance of *Yoshimi*, but the config-changed flag is set, so one has control over whether any settings are saved. So now, if anything goes wrong with the config files they won't corrupt one's carefully organised bank files, and vice-versa.

3.3 Configuration Files / State

Sometimes one will see the extension .state used in the \$HOME/.config/yoshimi directory. These files contain a lot more information, that needed to duplicate a *Yoshimi* session that was saved. Seems to be a superset of an .xmz file, saving everything. This is a facility that is peculiar to *Yoshimi*. The state file is accessed from the **State** menu item in the main window. Its default name is ~/ .config/yoshimi/yoshimi.state.

The *Yoshimi* 'state' file consists of the entire setup, from basic configuration settings to currently-loaded instrument sets. However, upon investigating some JACK session managers, it looks like they don't want (or can't use) most of the configuration information because they are expecting to be able to change the state in *running* instances.

If and when *Yoshimi* gets around to splitting the 'instance' data from the main configuration, then a lot of this session issue can be resolved buy saving only the 'true' configuration locally, and to the state save. However, the 'instance' data will include things like ALSA/JACK settings. Currently we can't change these live (although it would be nice if we could), but would anyone want to do so from a JACK session manager?

3.4 Configuration Files / Instrument

An Instrument. These files can have two formats, compressed and uncompressed. With the **Instrument** menu, one can just save the file to any given location with the .xiz extension.

3.5 Configuration Files / Scale

Scale Settings. These files store microtonal settings that *Yoshimi* can use to produce non-standard musical scales. Recent scales settings are saved and recorded.

3.6 Configuration Files / Presets

Have a favorite setting for an envelope, or a difficult-to-reproduce oscillator? Then presets are for you! Presets allow for one to save the settings for any of the components which support copy/paste operations. This is done with preset files (`.xpz`), which get stored in the folders indicated by *Paths / Preset Dirs*.... The key thing about using presets is that one must first specify a presets directory! Otherwise, who knows where they go? A good choice for a preset directory is `~/.config/yoshimi/presets`.

In *Yoshimi*, a *preset* is any collection of settings that can be saved to the clipboard or to a file, for later loading elsewhere.

A preset is canned version of a *Yoshimi* sub-setting. Presets can be copied and pasted using the **C** and **P** user-interface buttons associated with many of the *Yoshimi* dialog windows. They make it easy to save portions of the current settings for later use. For example, resonance settings can be saved.

The naming convention for a preset file is `presename.presettype.xpz`, where `presename` is the name one types into the **Copy to Preset** name field, `presettype` is the name that appears in the **Type** field, and `xpz` is the file-extension for compressed XML preset files.

3.7 Configuration Files / Instance

A new feature of the *Yoshimi* configuration. It contains the current root/bank, MIDI settings, and preferred engines. These instance files are totally independent files, distinguished by a number in the file-name.

3.8 Configuration Files / History

A new feature of the *Yoshimi* configuration. Recent patch sets are now stored in the `.history` file. For example, if the **XML Compression** option is set to 0, and one exits *Yoshimi*, then the file `~/.config/yoshimi/yoshimi.history` might contain the following items (ignoring the XML markup):

```
/home/me/yoshimi-cookbook/sequencer64/b4uacuse/yoshimi-b4uacuse-gm.state
/home/me/sequencer64/contrib/yoshimi/horse.state
```

`.history` is a single file that every instance can read and write. The `.history` file is saved only upon a normal exit, as it is comparatively unimportant.

The history is a single buffer and file, readable and writeable by all instances. This is actually quite interesting as there can never be a conflict. It is impossible to have two browser lists open at the same time (try it!) and the lists are always rebuilt from memory every time they are opened. Similarly, the histories are added too every time a new recognised file is loaded or saved and one can't physically do two at the same time – even if one could it would simply mean that one very briefly waited for the other, which is not an issue as they are not in the realtime thread.

Now, there is also another "history" file apparently created by *Yoshimi*: `~/.yoshimi.history`. This file seems to be a history of commands typed into the command-line interface of *Yoshimi*. TO BE DETERMINED.

3.9 Configuration Files / Banks

A new feature of the *Yoshimi* configuration. Currently each *Yoshimi* instance takes its own copy of the actual files as it starts up. However, they can all save, delete, or rename the actual files without talking to the other instances, so one can move a file in one instance, and then try (and fail) to access it from another.

With the **Banks** menu, one can assign a patch to a given slot with a bank. This instrument will remain in that slot for future use until it is deleted. To see the physical location of the `.xiz` file, one should check the **Yoshimi / Settings / Banks / Root Dirs** (`FileSettingsBank_Root_Dirs`) window to see the paths for banks.

At startup, after all the configuration is complete, the banks are loaded and installed. On a per instance basis, the first thing this process does is look for a `yoshimi(-n).banks` file, if it can't, find that it then hunts for a `yoshimi(-n).config` file, and if that fails it does a rescan for banks. In this way it should be completely backward compatible with any previous config files.

The `.banks` file is saved every time roots, banks, or instruments are changed, and again on a normal exit to catch the current root and bank (which don't otherwise trigger a save). This allows the last-used root and bank IDs to always match what that instance thinks is there. Note that one needs to have write permissions to add instruments to the bank.

Banks are more thoroughly described in section [2.3 "Concepts / Banks and Roots"](#) on page [22](#).

3.10 Configuration Files / Windows

No, this term isn't a reference to "that other operating system".

A new feature of the *Yoshimi* configuration. It saves the current layout of windows for reinstatement at the next startup of *Yoshimi*.

3.11 Configuration Files / Format

The Unix `file` command indicates that the XML files are one of two types:

- *exported SGML document, ASCII text*. These files are unindented XML data with an encoding of UTF-8 and a DOCTYPE of "ZynAddSubFX-data".
- *gzip compressed data, from Unix*. These files can be renamed to end in ".gz", and then run through the `gunzip` program to yield the XML file (but without an `.xml` extension).

The format depends on the "XML compression level" option discussed in section [5.1.5.1 "Menu / Yoshimi / Settings / Main Settings"](#) on page [44](#).

Saving settings or not: If one changes settings, and closes without saving, that means the settings remain in place only for the current session. If one has changed anything, when one closes *Yoshimi*, one will be given a second chance to save them. If one responds 'No', the next time *Yoshimi* starts, the old settings will be restored. An 'undo' feature would get pretty crazy very quickly.

In the **Settings** window, **Save Settings** refers to the entire window, not just individual tabs. The close buttons are actually outside the frame of the tabs.

Close without saving doesn't mean revert to previous settings; it means to use the changes, but don't immediately store them to the filesystem.

In general, the contents are structured a lot like the user-interface elements that are used to set them.

4 Banks and Roots

In recent versions of *Yoshimi*, the concepts of banks and roots have undergone a fair amount of change, including new features to make them easier to manage and easier to automate. There are a lot of details to understand, too many to include along with the descriptions of the user-interface elements that control them. Therefore, this new section is devoted to banks and roots. It is an elaboration of material originally presented in section [2.3 ”Concepts / Banks and Roots”](#) on page [22](#).

At one time, one could in theory have 1000 roots, 1000 banks and 1000 presets. However, now roots and banks were trimmed to what can be addressed from MIDI. One can supposedly still have 1000 presets, though. Anyway, $128 \times 128 \times 160 = 2621440$ instruments should be enough for anyone.

All root, bank, and instrument IDs are used by MIDI controls, and as of version 1.3.6 will also be accessible to the command line.

The file **Banks.txt** in the *Yoshimi* source-code bundle makes an important point about a transition (in newer versions) to tagging roots (directories) and banks with an ID code:

One no longer has the concept of a default root directory, but a current one. This can be changed at any time without requiring a restart, so there is no longer a need to display the (confusing) contents of all roots. Also, roots now have ID numbers associated with them, but no changes have been made to the actual directories to achieve this. Instead the IDs are stored in the config file. The same ID system is used for banks, again without making any file system changes.

At first run (and whenever new root directories are set) unknown roots and banks are given these IDs. Once set they will not change no matter how many more roots and banks are later added. One can however, manually change root directory IDs in the ‘Bank Root Paths window’ accessible from the ‘Paths’ item in the main window. Also, there is a new Banks window so that these can be set up, moved and renamed in exactly the same way as instruments can. With these IDs, roots and banks can be grouped/ordered by function instead of alphabetically. When using the GUI, one will always know exactly which root and bank one fetches an instrument from.

One can quickly step between roots, banks and instruments with the so marked buttons in each of these, and if one right-clicks on them one will close one window as one opens the other.

The significance of all this is that one’s MIDI sequencer can now reliably use these ID numbers to select roots, banks and (already available) instruments. That Rosegarden or Muse file one saves today will be just as valid in the future, unless one makes the deliberate choice to change some IDs. Indeed, one can now start with an ‘empty’ *Yoshimi*, and via MIDI, set roots, banks and load instruments into parts (enabling the parts as one does so) swapping banks and roots as necessary. While the MIDI file runs it can silently pull instruments from any root/bank into any non-sounding part without disturbing the playing ones.

In *Yoshimi* / Settings / MIDI one can enable or disable all these features, and can define which CCs one wants to use. Bank can be either MSB or LSB (as before). Root can be any non-reserved CC but including the one not in use for Bank. Also, Extended Program Change now has the same restrictions as Root, and these three are all cross-checked against each other. As an example, one might set Bank to LSB and Root to 0 (MSB), effectively giving one extended bank control compatible with all sequencers.

Also, different instances have their own config files so that one can have (say) the main instance with current root(9), bank(23) while instance 4 has current root(2), bank(6). One can call up instances by number and thus access saved settings for that instance. As each instance has its own MIDI and audio ports, they can behave more-or-less independently.

In doing all of this we have completely changed the way we manage the structure internally, resulting in much greater efficiency, at the cost of only a slightly slower startup. Swapping roots performs *no* file operations. Swapping banks only fetches the directory list of the newly selected bank. Changing an instrument doesn’t have to search for a file, only load from its already known location.

If one changes a bank root path, either through the gui or via MIDI, it will always reset the current bank to the lowest numbered one it can find. This is because there may not be a bank in the new root with the same ID, and even if there is, there is no guarantee that it will have the same name or contents.

Also if an attempt is made to reload the same root, nothing will actually happen. The same is true of banks. Both of these are kept fully up-to-date so there would be no point.

However, reloading the same *instrument* will be performed every time, as one may have changed what is currently loaded without saving it. This provides an effective ‘restore’ operation.

Finally, it is generally advisable to make root and bank changes on channel 1 so that one can more easily keep track of them. However they are not channel sensitive as they don't directly affect the sound, so one can set them in any convenient channel then perform individual program changes on the desired channels.

A "CC" is a MIDI "continuous controller". A MIDI bank change is usually a CC#0 value of 0, followed by a CC#32 value of X, where X is the desired bank number from 0 to whatever. (However, in some cases it may simply be a CC#0 on its own with a value of X). Many synths also require that one send a program change after the bank change, to select the program within the bank.

4.1 Roots

In *Yoshimi*, a *root* is a location in which banks can be stored. It is basically a directory, though it ultimately is assigned a number by *Yoshimi*, presumably to be able to access it in an automated way. By choosing a root and making it the current root, one can hone in on a smaller collection of banks.

One cannot reach root paths through the **Yoshimi / Settings** menu any more; it was causing a nightmare of syncing with the other entry routes. One can reach it from the Banks window or the Instruments window, and both of the latter also have multiple entry routes. Roots can also be reached through the **Yoshimi / Paths** menu.

4.2 Banks

Another important concept in *Yoshimi* is *banks*. Instruments can be stored in banks. These are loaded and saved automatically by the program. On program start, the last used bank is loaded. A single bank can store up to 128 instruments normally, and 160 using extended programs.

Also note that, as well as bank and program changes, there is the ability to set a MIDI CC to access the voices from 129 to 160 (numbered re 1). All the Bank controls are contained in a tab in the main **Settings** window, and take immediate effect.

Bank root directories are identified with ID numbers that can be changed by the user in the user-interface. This feature is also made available for selection over MIDI. MIDI only sees banks in the *current* root directory, but all banks are accessible to the user-interface.

4.2.1 Bank Directories

Banks are arranged in directories, with each directory containing a number of instrument files.

Each instrument's file-name should begin with a 4-digit number (left-padded with 0's to make it 4 digits long). This number can serve as a MIDI patch number for automated selection of the instrument via a MIDI program-change message.

Unnumbered instruments in a bank will be given a temporary ID starting from number 160 and working down. If those numbers already exist then they will be skipped over. This can get very confusing. However, if one simply loads it and re-saves it to the same instrument slot, it will gain that ID and be properly fixed. One can then move-swap it with others.

5 Menu

At last, we're now ready to describe the user-interface of *Yoshimi*! The *Yoshimi* menu, as seen at the top of figure 2 "Yoshimi Main Screen, 1.4.1" on page 19, is fairly simple, but it is important to understand the structure of the menu entries.

5.1 Menu / Yoshimi

The *Yoshimi* menu entry contains the sub-items shown in figure 5 "Yoshimi Menu Items" on page 37. The next few sub-sections discuss the sub-items in the *Yoshimi* sub-menu. (Note that, in *ZynAddSubFX*, this menu is called the *File* menu.)



Figure 5: Yoshimi Menu Items

This figure needs to be updated for version 1.5.0 of *Yoshimi*. The items it contains are:

1. **About**
2. **New instance...**
3. **New instance with id...**
4. **Settings**
5. **MIDI Learn** (new)
6. **Exit**

New: The **Vectors** menu entry of version 1.4.0 has been moved to its own button in version 1.4.1, as can be seen in the figure. See section 5.1.4 "Menu / Yoshimi / Vectors" on page 39, which presents this dialog and briefly describes it.

New: *MIDI Learn* is a new feature of *Yoshimi*, and is described below.

Bug: There seems to be a bug in that the expected menu hot-keys (Alt-Y, Alt-I, Alt-P, and Alt-S) do not work (*Yoshimi* 1.3.5).

5.1.1 Menu / Yoshimi / About...

There is no **Help** menu in *Yoshimi*. Therefore, the **About** dialog appears in the **Yoshimi** menu, as shown in figure 6 "Yoshimi Menu, About Dialog" on page 38. These guys need some acknowledgment for their hard work! And they acknowledge the massive groundwork laid by the *ZynAddSubFX* project.



Figure 6: Yoshimi Menu, About Dialog

5.1.2 Menu / Yoshimi / New instance

Creates a new instance of *Yoshimi*. If JACK is running, start a normal (JACK-using) instance of *Yoshimi*. Then use this menu entry. *Yoshimi* will start another instance of itself, with an ID of 1. This instance can be verified by running a JACK session manager such as QJackCtl.

It is important to note that each instance of *Yoshimi* has its own configuration file. Each also has its own MIDI and audio ports. Thus, these instances are partly independent of each other.

Opening a new instance creates a copy that has it's own dynamic memory for running storage. In the future, some data (such as recent history) will be shared between instances. This will be done only where instances actually need to be in sync.

Each instance has it's own file-store in *Yoshimi*'s configuration directory. The means that if one opens a numbered instance, one will get back all the settings that were previously used for that instance.

Instances no longer fight for access to JACK/ALSA audio; they will simply try to find another route to a soundcard. Failing to find one, they will revert to null audio, but will nonetheless start cleanly.

5.1.3 Menu / Yoshimi / New instance with id...

Creates a new instance of *Yoshimi* with an ID that is a number. See figure 7 "Yoshimi Menu, Instance Dialog" on page 39. It tries to open a *Yoshimi* instance based on the configuration found in the file `~/.config/yoshimi/yoshimi.configXX`, where XX is the ID one supplied.

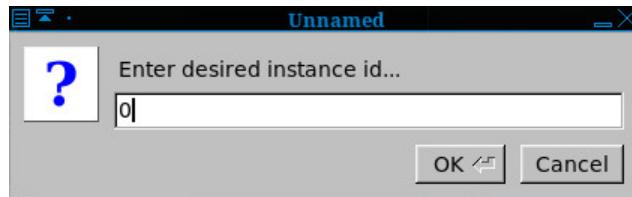


Figure 7: Yoshimi Menu, Instance Dialog

Useful when connecting devices with JACK. Start a normal (JACK-using) instance of *Yoshimi*. Then use this menu entry, supply a number as an ID. *Yoshimi* will start another instance of itself, with an ID of whatever number one specified. This instance can be verified by running a JACK session manager such as *QJackCtl*.

In a non-JACK setup it won't fail, but in the absence of any specific setting, it will have null audio, but (probably) will still connect to ALSA MIDI. Not too useful, but we should test that sometime.

5.1.4 Menu / Yoshimi / Vectors

Vectors provide a way of mixing up to four parts in a manner that can be automated, saved, and loaded. The features of vector control are presented in section 16 "Vector Control" on page 193. Vector setup and control from the *Yoshimi* command-line are discussed in section 18.1 "Command Level" on page 204. Here, we discuss the vector configuration dialog. (As an exercise, one can compare the various functions of the vector dialog to the command-line commands one can use to set up the vector functionality.) The new **Yoshimi / Vectors** menu entry brings up the following dialog:



Figure 8: Yoshimi Vectors Dialog

The user-interface items in the vector dialog are:

1. **Top Line**
 1. **Base Channel**
 2. **Options**
2. **X Vector**
 1. **Controller** (CC Event)

- 2. Part 1
- 3. Part 2
- 4. Features
 - 1. Feature 1 (Volume)
 - 2. Feature 2 (Pan)
 - 3. Feature 3 (Brightness)
 - 4. Feature 4 (Modulation)
- 3. Y Vector
 - 1. Controller (CC Event)
 - 2. Part 1
 - 3. Part 2
 - 4. Features
 - 1. Feature 1 (Volume)
 - 2. Feature 2 (Pan)
 - 3. Feature 3 (Brightness)
 - 4. Feature 4 (Modulation)
- 4. Bottom Line
 - 1. Vector Name
 - 2. Close

Although they are nested, for simplicity we will discuss the unique items serially.

1. Base Channel. Vector Base Channel. This item specifies the MIDI channel on which the vector (of parts) will be based. This channel is the incoming MIDI channel to which the vector setup will respond to on all parts.

Values: 1 to 16, 1*

2. Options. Vector Options.

Values: 1 to 127, 64*

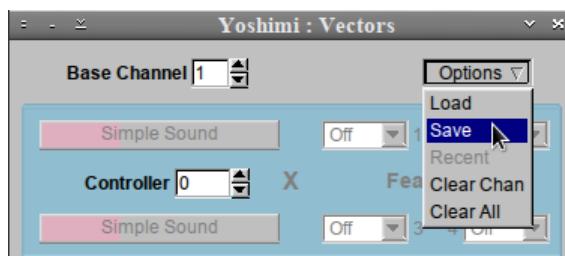


Figure 9: Yoshimi Vectors Options

The menu entries provide the actions described in this list:

1. **Load.** Brings up a file dialog that let's one pick an arbitrary vector file (extension .xvy) in an arbitrary directory, or select a "Favorites" directory in which to look for vector files. The base name of the file is then shown in the **Vector Name** field.
2. **Save.** Brings up a file dialog that let's one save an arbitrary vector file (extension .xvy) in an arbitrary directory, or select a "Favorites" directory in which to save a vector file. The base name of the file is then shown in the **Vector Name** field.
3. **Recent.** Brings up a short list of the previous vector files dealt with.
4. **Clear Chan.** Clears the base channel number????

5. Clear All. Clears out the full vector setup, rendering it an "empty" vector setup that cannot be saved.

3. X Vector. The X Vector. This vector provides the minimal setup for a vector. This setup requires *Yoshimi* to be configured for 32 parts, to be able to fully support a two-part vector for every MIDI channel. This section is disabled until selects a **Controller** event value for it.

4. Controller. Vector Controller CC Event. If 0, the section (**X** or **Y**) that this value is in is disabled. Otherwise, the number is the MIDI continuous controller (CC) event value that is to be used to control the mix of the two parts involved in this vector.

Values: 1 to 119, 0*

5. Part 1. Part 1. The top button in the section (**X** or **Y**) selects the first part to use in the two-part vector. Clicking this button brings up the default bank dialog. This dialog allows one to select a part (instrument), or to select an different bank from which to choose a part (instrument).

6. Part 2. Part 2. The bottom button in the section (**X** or **Y**) selects the second part to use in the two-part vector. Clicking this button brings up the default bank dialog, just as for the **Part 1** button.

7. Feature 1. Vector Feature 1, Volume. This feature can be disabled, or enabled. Feature 1 is always fixed as MIDI event 7 (volume), and is not reversible. When enabled, the volume is traded off between the first part and second part as the selected MIDI CC controller event data value changes. While the first part increases in volume, the second part decrease in volume, and vice versa.



Figure 10: Yoshimi Vectors, Feature 1

Values: Off*, Vol

Note that the common theme between all features is that they apply inversely to the two parts/instruments that are paired in an **X** or **Y** vector.

8. Feature 2. Vector Feature 2, Pan. This feature can be disabled, enabled, or reversed. When enabled, it acts similarly to volume, panning from left to right as the data value increases. When reversed, it pans from right to left as the data value increases.

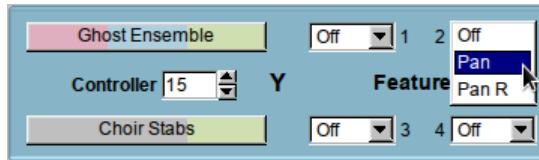


Figure 11: Yoshimi Vectors, Feature 2

Values: Off*, Pan, Pan R

9. Feature 3. Vector Feature 3, Brightness. Brightness here refers to the application of a (we presume) low-pass filter with a varying cutoff frequency. This feature can be disabled, enabled, or reversed. When

enabled, it acts similarly to volume, changing the brightness from left to right as the data value increases. When reversed, it changes the brightness from right to left as the data value increases.

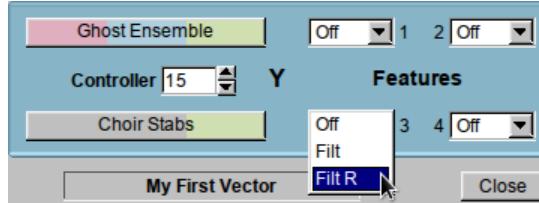


Figure 12: Yoshimi Vectors, Feature 3

Values: Off*, Filt, Filt R

10. Feature 4. Vector Feature 4, Modulation. Modulation here refers to the application of an (we presume) LFO (for amplitude or frequency) with a varying modulation depth. This feature can be disabled, enabled, or reversed. When enabled, it acts similarly to volume, changing the modulation from left to right as the data value increases. When reversed, it changes the modulation from right to left as the data value increases.

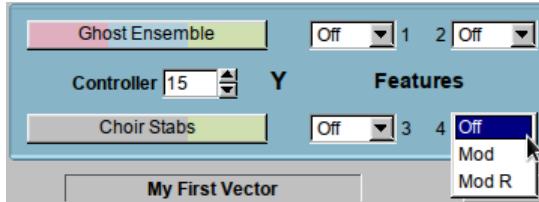


Figure 13: Yoshimi Vectors, Feature 4

Values: Off*, Mod, Mod R

11. X Vector. The X Vector. This vector provides the maximal setup for a vector. This setup requires *Yoshimi* to be configured for 64 parts, to be able to fully support an additional two-part vector for every MIDI channel. This section is disabled until selects a **Controller** event value for it.

Other than that, the **Y** vector acts like the **X** vector, and all of the sub-items have the same functionality as in the **X** vector.

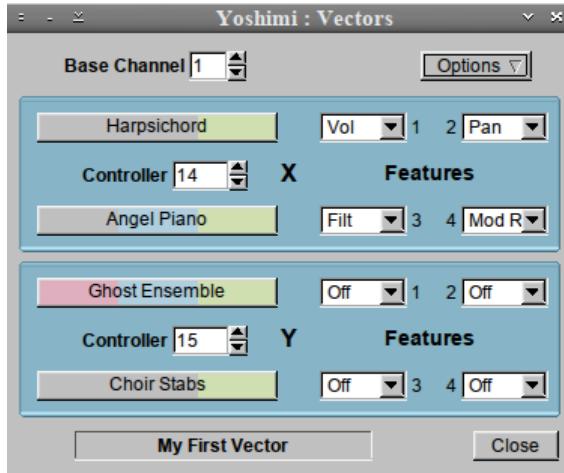


Figure 14: Yoshimi Vectors Saved as "My First Vector"

If starting a new vector setup, first select the base channel (1 to 16) to set the vector on. Next, use the **X** and **Y Controller** spin-boxes to select the incoming CC. If you set an invalid one strange things may happen, though it won't actually do any harm.

The instrument buttons bring up the instrument list window in exactly the same way as the main part one does, but do not currently the right-click windows return feature.

When setting up a completely new vector, if the mixer or the main part are visible, they may be slightly out of sync, but will correct themselves as soon as one changes an instrument or part.

When one **clears** a vector it doesn't delete loaded voices, nor does it change the active status of the part, nor the number of parts available. This is because these settings may have been made independent of vector control. In short, vector setup will add things but not remove them.

5.1.5 Menu / Yoshimi / Settings...

The *Yoshimi Settings* dialog contains five tabs that control the major and overall settings of *Yoshimi*. At the bottom of this dialog are two buttons: **Save and Close** and **Close Unsaved**.

Please note that the **Save and Close** and **Close Unsaved** buttons apply to the *whole Settings* window. Furthermore, the "saving" does *not* refer to preserving the changes that have been made in any of the tabs for the current *Yoshimi* session. Any changes made in **Settings** always remain in place for the current *Yoshimi* session. However, the changes to the settings are saved to the state file *only* if **Save and Close** is clicked.

1. Save and Close. This selection saves the settings made in **all** of the tabs to the state file, and closes the *Yoshimi* settings dialog.

2. Close Unsaved. Close Unsaved, Main Settings.

This selection closes the *Yoshimi* settings dialog. However, note that any changes made in the tabs are *preserved*. They are preserved for the current *Yoshimi* session, but are not saved to the filesystem.

Here are the tabs included in the main settings of *Yoshimi* as of version 1.4.1; each is described in its own section.

- **Main settings**

- **Switches** (new)
- **Jack**
- **Alsa**
- **MIDI**

5.1.5.1 Menu / Yoshimi / Settings / Main Settings

The Main Settings tab controls the main configuration items that follow, which apply to all patches/instruments. The main settings are shown in figure 15 "Yoshimi Main Settings Tab" on page 44.

Some settings only take effect after restarting the synthesizer. In Main settings, only items marked with an asterisk ('*') need a restart. (This is now only the first two. Some of the other ones had previously been wrongly marked.)

The settings dialogs are quite different between *ZynAddSubFX* and *Yoshimi*. There are some differences even between *Yoshimi* versions earlier than 1.3.5, and the current version (currently 1.3.9).

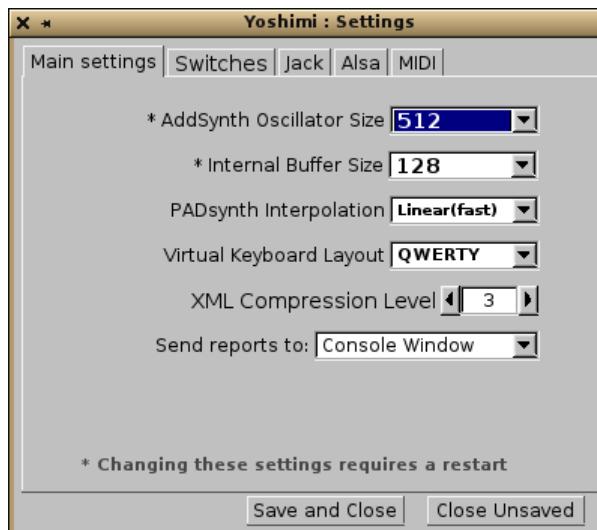


Figure 15: Yoshimi Main Settings Tab

The following settings exist in the *Main settings* tab:

1. **AddSynth Oscillator Size** (was "OscilSize")
2. **Internal Buffer Size** (new)
3. **PADsynth interpolation**
4. **Virtual Keyboard Layout**
5. **XML compression level**
6. **Send reports to**
7. **Hide Non Fatal Errors** (moved to 'Switches')
8. **Log XML headers** (moved to 'Switches')
9. **Show Splash** (new) (moved to 'Switches')

1. AddSynth Oscillator Size. ADDsynth Oscillator Size (in samples). This item used to be called "OscilSize". Sets the number of the points of the ADDsynth oscillator. Bigger is better, but it takes more CPU time on the start of any note, and it may add latency to some processes.

The default value for *Yoshimi* is shown marked with an asterisk, and the default value for *ZynAddSubFX* is 512. This asterisk/plus-sign convention is used throughout this manual. See figure 16 "OscilSize Values" on page 45, shown below for the AddSynth Oscillator Size drop-down element.

Values: 256, 512*, 1024, 2048, 4096, 8192, 16384

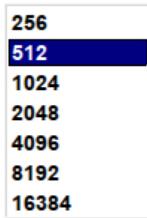


Figure 16: AddSynth Oscillator Size (samples)

2. Internal Buffer Size. This is a new item for version 1.3.6. It is actually the old **Period Size** field from the **Alsa** tab. It sets the granularity of the sound generation. To find out the internal delay in milliseconds, divide the buffer-size value by the sample-rate, then multiply the result by 1000: For example, $256/44100 * 1000 = 5.8ms$.

The default internal buffer size has been reduced from 1024 to 256. One gets better latency that way. Almost all modern computers can run *Yoshimi* with the current default (smaller) buffer-size value, and many will do so at 64 frames (and even 16 frames!) without any special precautions.

Note that, for ALSA, if the audio destination is "default", then ALSA decides on the buffer size (among other settings), and *Yoshimi* will set its internal buffer size to match, which always seems to be 1024.

Values: 64, 128, 256*, 512, 1024

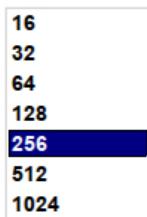


Figure 17: AddSynth Internal Buffer Size (samples)

3. PADsynth interpolation. See figure 18 "PADSynth Interpolation" on page 45, shown below, for the interpolation values. From an email conversation with Paul Nasca, Will notes that the sound improvement with cubic interpolation is quite subtle, and requires a well designed audio setup, a PADsynth instrument with a fair amount of high-frequency content... and good hearing!



Figure 18: PADSynth Interpolation Values

Values: Linear(fast)*, Cubic(slow)

4. Virtual Keyboard Layout. The virtual keyboard is useful, but it is difficult to move the mouse rapidly to the next key on the virtual keyboard. Therefore, *Yoshimi* supports using the computer keyboard to produce notes.

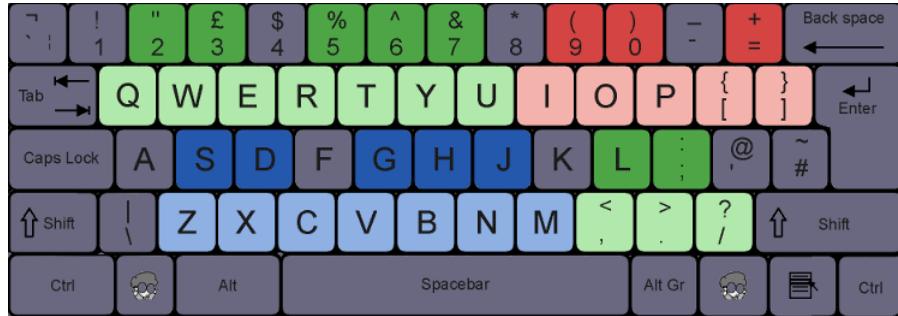


Figure 19: QWERTY Virtual Keyboard Layout

See figure 19 "QWERTY Virtual Keyboard Layout" on page 46, for the mapping of the computer keyboard to the virtual keyboard. Three octaves (blue, green, and red) are available, with the dark keys of each color representing the "black" keys. Note that this is a QWERTY layout. *Yoshimi* also supports other keyboard layouts. See figure 20 "Virtual Keyboard Layout" on page 46, for the virtual keyboard layout settings drop-down.

Values: QWERTY*, Dvorak, QWERTZ, AZERTY



Figure 20: Virtual Keyboard Layout Values

5. XML compression level. Gzip Compression level of *Yoshimi* XML files. The settings and instruments of *Yoshimi* are preserved in XML files. The value of 0 indicates that the XML file is uncompressed.

In general, 0 is probably the best setting for debugging only. Setting this option makes the XML files a bit larger, perhaps larger by a factor of more than 10, making a 10K file into a 180K file. For a little "wasted" space and time, one can view the XML file in a text/programmer's editor. But, if one's system is tight on disk space, higher levels of compression can be specified. Using XML compression can also save file access time which may be beneficial if one's computer is borderline on latency. This setting should stay at 3 if one is going to save large patchsets that will later be loaded while running. Uncompressing is much faster than file loading.

Values: 0 to 9, 3*

6. Send reports to. Notices and error messages can be sent to the standard error log of the terminal in which *Yoshimi* can be run, or, more usefully, to an output console window. Now these messages are pushed in reverse order, to avoid scrolling and to make the most recent statuses easily visible. See figure 21 "Send Reports" on page 46. It provides a depiction of the selection drop-down.

Values: stderr*, Console Window



Figure 21: Send Reports To

If the **Console Window** option is chosen, then the **Reports** button in the effects panel is enabled. Pressing the **Reports** button brings up a small console dialog, as shown in figure 22 ”[Yoshimi Console Window](#)” on page [47](#).

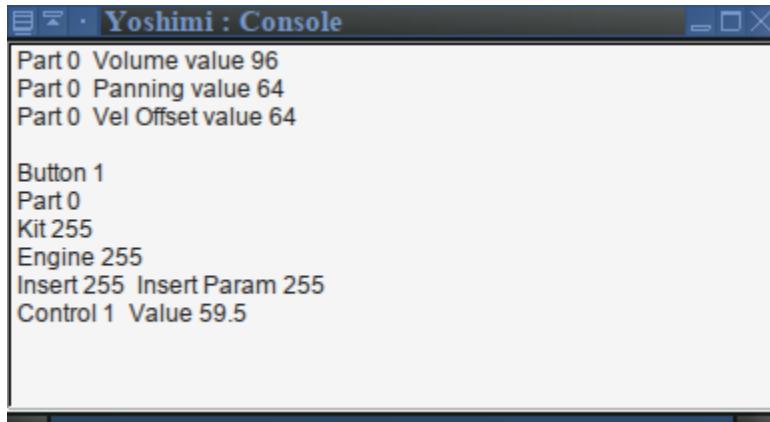


Figure 22: Console Window

An interesting feature of the console window is that one can identify user-interface elements of the *Yoshimi* configuration in this window by a middle-click on the user-interface element. The console window figure shows the results of middle-clicking on the following bottom-panel knobs in order:

1. Velocity Sense (left-click)
2. Velocity Offset
3. Pan
4. Volume

Information about each knob middle-clicked is pushed to the top of the windows in reverse order. Information about an earlier left-click is shown at the bottom of the figure. Each left-click ("Button 1") will increase the parameter represented by the knob, and each right-click ("Button3") will decrease the parameter represented by the knob, and each change is reported in the console window. And, of course, each middle-click changes nothing, but reports the current value in the console window. This powerful feature provides a way to gather the information needed to control the parameter from the command-line. The output can be selected, copied, and pasted to a script or archive text file for safe-keeping. Consider it a form of "MIDI learn" that will be developed in the future. And note that it applies to output to `stderr` as well.

5.1.5.2 Menu / Yoshimi / Settings / Switches

Many of the check-box items have been moved into this new tab, to reduce clutter.

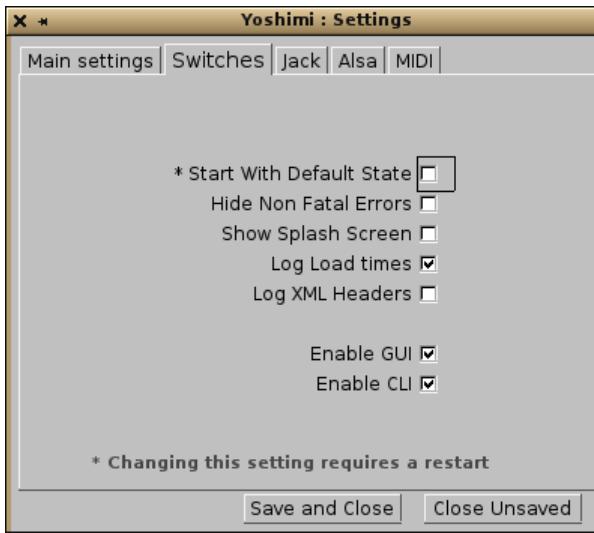


Figure 23: Yoshimi Switches Tab

The following settings exist in the **Switches** tab:

1. **Start With Default State**
2. **Hide Non Fatal Errors**
3. **Show Splash Screen**
4. **Log Load times**
5. **Log XML headers**
6. **Enable GUI**
7. **Enable CLI**

1. **Start With Default State.** Requires *Yoshimi* to be restarted, to take effect. MORE TO COME.
2. **Hide Non Fatal Errors.** Especially when running from the command line (with reports going there too), under some circumstances one can get a swamp of low-level error messages (such as XRUNs) that is so large that one cannot work out what is going on. This feature disables these error messages; it is a work in progress to catch the bulk of them, while still reporting top-level messages and ones that cause a forced exit (surely not!)
3. **Show Splash Screen.** This item will speed up the start-up of *Yoshimi* slightly if unchecked, by not showing the splash screen while files are being loaded.
4. **Log Load times.** Provides a way of noting problematic patch sets. MORE TO COME.
5. **Log XML headers.** This item sends the information to the console window (or `stderr`) so that one can then see what `ynAddSubFX/Yoshimi` version created the file.
6. **Enable GUI.** MORE TO COME.
7. **Enable CLI.** MORE TO COME.

5.1.5.3 Menu / Yoshimi / Settings / Jack

JACK is the "Jack Audio Connection Kit", very useful for increasing audio performance and configurability. When using the JACK audio backend, instruments can be individually routed and sent to the main L/R outputs. This is controlled from the panel window, section 7.1 "Mixer Panel Window" on page 104, and the settings are saved with all the other parameters.

Direct part outputs carry the Part and Insertion effects, but not the System ones.

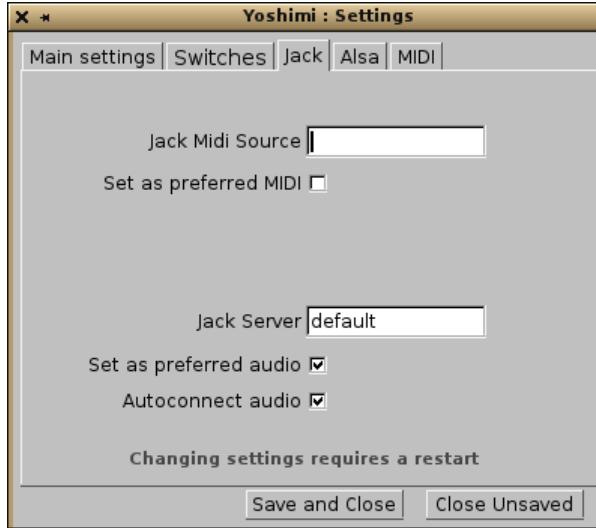


Figure 24: JACK Settings Tab

The following items are provided by the Jack settings:

1. **Jack Midi Source**
2. **Set as preferred MIDI**
3. **Jack Server**
4. **Set as preferred audio**
5. **Autoconnect audio** (new, 1.3.9)

1. Jack Midi Source. Jack MIDI Source. It is possible to have more than one JACK MIDI source. This option tells this instance of *Yoshimi* which JACK client to try to auto-connect to for MIDI input. This option corresponds to the *Yoshimi* command line option `--jack-midi(=device)`.

Values: `default*`, `name` name, as in "jackd --name"

2. Set as preferred MIDI. Set as preferred MIDI for JACK. This setting determines which MIDI connections a particular instance will first attempt. The switches are mutually exclusive across JACK and ALSA, so if one checks ALSA for MIDI, it automatically unchecks JACK for MIDI. As well as from the GUI, this setting can be set (for instance 0) from the command line, both at start-up and once running.

3. Jack Server. Jack Server Name. It is possible to have more than one JACK server running. This option tells this instance of *Yoshimi* which JACK server to use. This option corresponds to the *Yoshimi* command line option `--jack-audio(=server)`.

Values: `default*`, `name` name, as in `jackd --name`.

4. Set as preferred audio. Set as preferred audio for JACK. This setting determines which audio connections a particular instance will first attempt. The switches are mutually exclusive across JACK and ALSA, so if one checks ALSA for audio, it automatically unchecks JACK for audio. As well as from the GUI, this setting can be set (for instance 0) from the command line, both at start-up and once running. Note that any of these setting changes require a restart of *Yoshimi* to take effect.

5. Autoconnect audio. Sets *Yoshimi* to connect automatically to the JACK server, just like the `-K` command-line option does. (However, note that the command-line has no way to disable this feature if the configuration has been saved.)

5.1.5.4 Menu / Yoshimi / Settings / Alsa

A significant improvement is to the handling of ALSA audio, which is still very important for some people. Until now, *Yoshimi* has insisted on a 2-channel, 16-bit format. Tests have shown that virtually all motherboard sound chipsets will handle this, but many external ones don't.

From *Yoshimi* 1.3.6 onwards, when using ALSA audio, *Yoshimi* first tries to connect 2 channels at 32 bit depth. If that connection does not succeed, then *Yoshimi* negotiates whatever the soundcard will support. For example, a card might support only 24 bits, and 6 channels. So *Yoshimi* will fall back to 24 bit, and, due to its own limits, will use only channels 1 and 2. With external sound modules in mind, endian swaps are also implemented.

To be able to reliably use ALSA audio, one needs to set a card name, not just "Default". In a terminal window enter the following command:

```
$ cat /proc/asound/card*/id
```

The result of this command should be something like:

```
PCH
K6
```

Go to the ALSA settings tab illustrated below, and in *Alsa Audio Device* enter, for example, "hw:PCH". This ensures one will always connect to this card at startup regardless of the order this and other ones. Another benefit of using this hardware name is that ALSA will now use *Yoshimi*'s internal buffer size (256), otherwise ALSA will force *Yoshimi* to accept its default size (usually 1024).

One can also set the sample rate, but bear in mind that not all cards can use all of these. The sample rates 44100 and 48000 are almost always available. If one sets a Midi Device as well (such as a keyboard) *Yoshimi* will try to find and connect to this device at startup.

To find the MIDI devices available, try:

```
$ grep Client /proc/asound/seq/clients
```

The result of this command should be something like:

```
Client info
Client  0 : "System" [Kernel]
Client 14 : "Midi Through" [Kernel]
Client 128 : "TiMidity" [User]
```

It is not obvious how ALSA audio is controlled and who takes command. If one sets a specific audio destination, then *Yoshimi* makes a request. It's often a negotiation on bit depth and channel count, but *Yoshimi* nearly always gets to decide the buffer size, which is the internal buffer size. However, if the

destination is 'default' then ALSA decides on the sound card, bit depth, number of channels and the buffer size, and *Yoshimi* will set it's internal buffer size to match. On most machines this seems to be 1024.

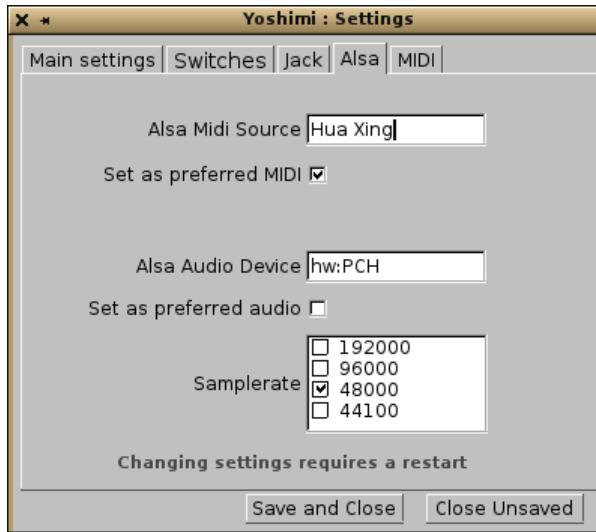


Figure 25: ALSA Settings Tab

1. Alsa Midi Source. ALSA MIDI Source. The purpose of this setting is the same as the command line option `--alsa-midi="name"`. It is used so that *Yoshimi* can auto connect to a MIDI source such as a keyboard. For example, the one that *Will* has identifies itself as name = "Hua Xing". A port name, such as "128:0" (for one of the ports provided by *TiMidity*) should work as well. If the destination is "default", then ALSA decides on the sound card, bit depth, number of channels and the buffer size, and *Yoshimi* will set it's internal buffer size to match. On most machines this always seems to be 1024.

Values: `default*`

2. Set as preferred MIDI. Set as preferred MIDI for ALSA. This setting determines which MIDI connections a particular instance will first attempt. The switches are mutually exclusive across JACK and ALSA, so if one checks ALSA for MIDI, it automatically unchecks JACK for MIDI. As well as from the GUI, this setting can be set (for instance 0) from the command line, both at start-up and once running.

3. Alsa Audio Device. ALSA Audio Device. This specifies the sound card to which *Yoshimi* can connect. Normally, this will be an ALSA hardware specification such as "hw:0". ALSA audio also lets one connect to a sound card by name. For example, with a Komplete Audio KA 6 sound card, the device specification is "hw:K6". This feature is particularly useful for USB modules, as one can never be sure where they appear numerically.

Values: `default*`

4. Set as preferred audio. Set as preferred audio for ALSA. This setting determines which audio connections a particular instance will first attempt. The switches are mutually exclusive across JACK and ALSA, so if one checks ALSA for audio, it automatically unchecks JACK for audio. As well as from the GUI, this setting can be set (for instance 0) from the command line, both at start-up and once running.

5. Samplerate. Sample Rate. Sets the quality of the sound, higher is better, but it uses more CPU. One can select from a list. Note that both ALSA and JACK will support the 192000 rate, if the sound-card supports it. To find out the internal delay in milliseconds, divide the buffer-size value by the Sample Rate and multiply the result by 1000 ($256 / 44100 * 1000 = 5.8$ ms).

Note that, as of version 1.3.6, the **Period Size** field has been removed from the **Alsa** tab, and is replaced by the **Internal Buffer Size** field in the **Main Settings** tab. Note that any of these setting changes require a restart of *Yoshimi* to take effect.

Values: 192000, 96000, 48000*, 44100

5.1.5.5 Menu / Yoshimi / Settings / MIDI

The CC settings tab has been renamed the "MIDI" tab. This tab, shown in figure 26 "MIDI Preferences" on page 52, presents MIDI bank-root, bank, program change, and extended program change settings, plus some new values.

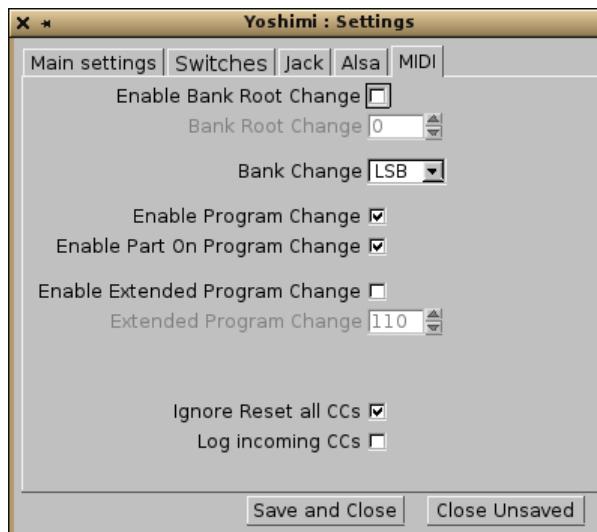


Figure 26: MIDI Preferences Tab

A new feature as of version 1.3.6 is that some changes to the items in this tab cause a red **Pending** button to appear. Pressing this button saves that particular change.

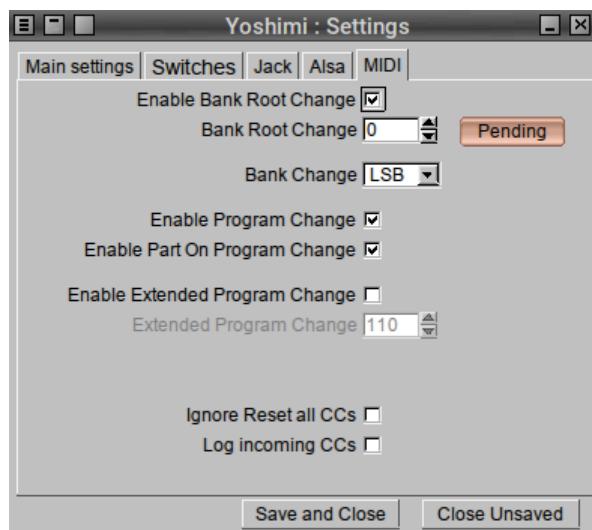


Figure 27: MIDI Settings Pending

The following items are provided by the MIDI settings tab:

1. **Enable Bank Root Change**
2. **Bank Root Change**
3. **Bank Change**
4. **Enable Program Change**
5. **Enable Part On Program Change**
6. **Enable Extended Program Change**
7. **Extended Program Change**
8. **Ignore Reset all CCs**
9. **Log incoming CCs**

The concepts of banks and roots is very useful. See section [2.3 "Concepts / Banks and Roots"](#) on page [22](#). The settings in this tab affect the usage of banks and root changes controlled by MIDI messages, thereby making *Yoshimi* able to implement MIDI automation.

1. Enable Bank Root Change. Enable Bank Root Change.

Values: Off*, On

2. Bank Root Change.

Values: 0*, to 127

If enabled, a new reddish button, **Pending**, appears. Once the change has been made in the scroll list, click this button to set the change. **Warning:** The **Save and Close** button will not result in the removal of the **Pending** button. This result seems counter-intuitive, but the pending button is not removed here because, at that point, it still hasn't actually been either set or abandoned. It remains available for when the user actually makes up his/her mind.

3. Bank Change. Bank Change. Defines which MIDI preferences one wants to use. Note that MIDI Controller 0 = CC0 = Bank Select MSB, and MIDI Controller 32 = CC32 = Bank Select LSB. When combined, these Bank Select messages provide

$$128 * 128 = 16384$$

banks.

But note that all a Bank Select does is selects the bank for the next Program Change event. The program doesn't change after changing a bank, until a Program Change is sent.

Bank changes can be completely disabled; some hardware synthesizers don't play nice with banks.

Values: LSB, MSB*, Off

4. Enable Program Change.

Values: Off*, On

Enables/disables MIDI program change. Program changes can be completely disabled, but some hardware synths don't play nice!

5. Enable Part On Program Change.

Values: Off*, On

The part is automatically enabled if the MIDI program was changed on this part.

6. Enable Extended Program Change.

Values: Off*, On

7. Extended Program Change. If enabled, a new reddish button, **Pending**, appears. Once the change has been made in the scroll list, click this button to set the change.

Values: 0-127, 110*

8. Ignore Reset all CCs. Causes *Yoshimi* to ignore this message. For example, using *Yoshimi*'s fairly new CC monitor (see the next item), Will found that *Rosegarden* was sending CC 121 (reset all controllers) at the start of some song segments. Checking this option prevents unwanted resets.

Values: Off*, On

9. Log incoming CCs. This setting is about the only setting that is never saved. It is there solely as an aid for when *Yoshimi* appears to ignore MIDI commands, as it tells one exactly what *Yoshimi* thinks it received.

Values: Off*, On

5.1.6 Menu / Yoshimi / MIDI Learn...

The **MIDI Learn** functionality of *Yoshimi* gives it the ability to redirect MIDI input from physical controllers to various user-interface controls in *Yoshimi*, so that the user can basically control *Yoshimi*'s knobs and sliders via MIDI equipment.

There's enough to say about this topic so that we describe it in a section of its own. See section [17 "MIDI Learn"](#) on page [198](#)for details.

5.1.7 Menu / Yoshimi / Exit

Simply exits from *Yoshimi*. The user is prompted if unsaved changes exist, as shown in figure [28 "Yoshimi Menu, Exit"](#) on page [54](#).

One can sometimes get a false parameters-changed warning if one scrolls through one of the menu type entries without actually changing it. Better safe than sorry!

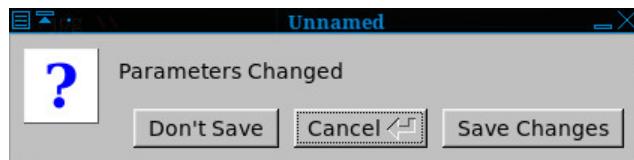


Figure 28: Yoshimi Menu, Exit

5.2 Menu / Instruments

The *Yoshimi* Instruments menu lets one select instruments and work with banks of instruments. *Yoshimi* stamps instrument XML files with its own major and minor version numbers so it is possible to tell which version created the files, or whether they were created by *ZynAddSubFX*.

While the **Instrument Menu** allows for the management of parts, the **Part Edit** dialog, described in section [9.3 "Bottom Panel Instrument Edit"](#) on page [141](#), is where one would start for the creation of a new part/instrument.

When opening an instrument bank one can now tell exactly which synth engines are used by each instrument. This is represented by three pale background colours:

- **Red:** ADDsynth
- **Blue:** SUBsynth
- **Green:** PADsynth

These new colored engine backgrounds aren't just pretty. They give real information about expected processor load, and time taken to be ready when loaded:

- Processor Load, low to high: **PAD**, **SUB**, then **ADD**.
- Time to initialize, low to high: **SUB**, **ADD**, **PAD**.

If the instruments are kits they scanned to find out if any member of the kit contains each engine. This scanning is duplicated in the current part, the mixer panel for the currently loaded instruments, and in the Instrument Edit window the same colors highlight the engine names when they are enabled with the check boxes.

The following sub-menus are provided, as shown in figure 29 "Yoshimi Menu, Instrument" on page 55.

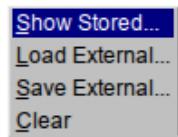


Figure 29: Yoshimi Menu, Instrument

This new version of the **Instrument** menu is somewhat different than the old version. It is actually simpler and easier to use, while still offering all of the power of the setting up of instruments in *Yoshimi*.

1. **Show Stored...**
2. **Load External...**
3. **Save External...**
4. **Clear**

5.2.1 Menu / Instrument / Show Stored...

Instruments are stored in banks (see section 2.3 "Concepts / Banks and Roots" on page 22). The banks (and current bank setting) are loaded/saved automatically by the program, so one doesn't have to worry about saving the banks before the program exits. On program start, the last used bank is loaded. A single bank can store up to 128 instruments. However, there is space for a number of additional instruments in the bank, the extended-program section, to allow up to 160 instruments in a bank.

When the **Show Stored...** button is selected, a dialog comes up that shows all of the instruments present in the currently-selected bank.

| Yoshimi : Root 30, Bank 32 - /data/Source/zynaddsubfx-instruments/banks/Cormi_Sound | | | | |
|---|----------------------|--------------------|--------------------|---|
| 32. Cormi_Sound | | Roots | Banks | This column uses MIDI Extended Program Change |
| 1. Bassoon | 33. Long Space Choir | 65. Synth piano 03 | 97. k | 129. Bello |
| 2. Bassoon2 | 34. Choir Pad4 | 66. Synth Piano 02 | 98. z | 130. abbellimento |
| 3. Bassoon3 | 35. Ancient Echos | 68. Piano | 99. a | 131. Carino |
| 4. Volo | 36. Campane | 69. Pianola | 100. Steel Rhodes | 132. Cigno |
| 6. Arpeggio 01 | 38. HellVoice | 70. clavicembalo | 101. Sweet Night | 133. fluido |
| 7. Arpeggio 02 | 39. Chorus2 | 72. Zufolo 1 | 102. Sweet Night 2 | |
| 8. Arpeggio 03 | 41. DarkNight | 73. Zufolo 2 | 103. Gocce | |
| 9. Glass Arpeggio2 | 42. LightDawn | 74. Zufolo 3 | 104. Ice Rhodes2 | 136. Romantico |
| 11. abracadabra | 43. Fiiuu | 75. Zufolo 4 | 105. Voluttuoso | 137. Romantico2 |
| 12. Ghost Whistle | 45. Spazio profondo1 | 76. Pinkollo | 106. Entropia | 138. romanicone |
| 13. Spazio1 | 46. Spazio Profonda2 | 78. Tremulo 01 | 108. Arcano | 139. Emptyness3 |
| 14. Spazio2 | 47. Spazio Profonda3 | 79. Tremulo 02 | 109. Arcano2 | 140. Foglie |
| 15. Space Synth | 49. DolcePiano 01 | 81. Organetto 01 | 110. Arcano3 | 142. Solitudine |
| 16. SpaceAtmo | 50. DolcePiano 02 | 82. Organetto 02 | 112. Glass 01 | 144. Inquietudine |
| 17. friendly sines | 51. DolcePiano 03 | 84. Organo 01 | 113. Glass 02a | 145. c |
| 19. Acquoso 1 | 53. Ding 01 | 85. Organo 02 | 114. Glass 02b | 146. Ancestrale |
| 20. Acquoso 5 | 54. Ding 02 | 86. Organo 03 | 115. Glass 03 | 147. Attesa |
| 21. Acquoso 6 | 56. Senza tempo | 87. Harp 3 | 116. Glass 04 | 148. vento |
| 23. Fagotto 01 | 57. Senza tempo 2 | 88. Harp4 | 119. Arcadia 1 | 149. pioggia |
| 24. Fagotto 02 | 58. Senza tempo 3 | 90. Dolcino 01 | 120. Arcadia 2 | 150. nebbia |
| 25. Fagotto 03 | 59. Senza tempo 4 | 91. Dolcino 02 | 121. Arcadia 3 | 151. Memory |
| 27. Delicato 01 | 60. Senza tempo 5 | 92. Dolcino 03 | 122. Arcadia 4 | 152. Memory2 |
| 28. Delicato 02 | 62. Sospirato 01 | 93. Dolcino 04 | 124. Armonica | 153. Memory3 |
| 29. Delicato 03 | 63. Sospirato 02 | 95. Accordion | 125. Fanfara | 155. contorno |
| 31. Wah dolce 1 | 64. Sospirato 03 | 96. padNice | 126. Polvere | 156. fantasia |
| 32. Wah dolce 2 | | | 127. Comb Filter | 157. nostalgia |
| | | | 128. Synth Pad 5 | 158. patetico |
| | | | | 159. Destino |

Buttons: SELECT RENAME SAVE DELETE SWAP Show synth engines

Figure 30: Instruments Stored in Current Banks

As figure 30 "Show Stored Instruments" on page 56, shows, this is a very complex dialog with a lot of options. The figure shows a default setup, with the first bank of instruments, 5. Arpeggios, listed. If one drops this list down (shown later), one also observes that the banks are numbered in increments of 5, to make it easier for a user to insert his or her own bank(s) of instruments.

The default set of banks are spaced 5 apart only because that's the best-fit for the current number of banks. If we add more banks in future versions of *Yoshimi*, then a *clean* install is likely to have different spacing, but for an existing setup, the new entries will just be slotted in where they will fit.

Also, if one deletes banks or instruments by some external means, the next time *Yoshimi* starts, it will notice their absence and quietly remove their entries.

Note how *Yoshimi* now shows the color codings for the synth-sections used in each instrument: red for ADDsynth, blue for SUBsynth, and green for PADsynth.

Also note how the numbers at the beginning of the filenames are used as an "instrument" or "program" number. These numbers can be used in MIDI Program Change commands.

All of the instrument files (such as 0001-Arpeggio1.xiz) with filenames starting with 4-digit numbers will be shown in the corresponding slot number. Those instrument files without numbers (or larger numbers?) will start with numbers at 129 or above ("Extended Program Change"). One could give them numbers by renaming them outside of *Yoshimi*, then reloading the bank. One can also fix unnumbered ones simply by loading them, then resaving them to the same slot. It's then probably best to swap them into the main set, if there is space.

Note that MIDI CC (see section 5.1.5.5 "Menu / Yoshimi / Settings / MIDI" on page 52) can be set to access voices from 129 to 160. All the Bank controls in the **MIDI** settings tab take immediate effect when set. Bank and program changes can be completely disabled in the settings tab; some hardware synths don't play nice with it.

Learning how to use the Instruments dialog is an important way to make instruments easier to manage, and so this will be a long discussion.

Here is a list of the user-interface items in the instruments/banks dialog:

1. **Bank Names**
2. **Roots**
3. **Banks**
4. **Instrument and Bank Matrix**
5. **SELECT**
6. **RENAME**
7. **SAVE**
8. **DELETE**
9. **SWAP**
10. **Show synth engines** (was **Show PADsynth status**)
11. **Close**

1. Bank Names. Instruments Bank Name. This item is a drop-down list of the available instrument banks in the currently-selected **root** directory. Basically, each bank is a directory name, with a number prepended. The banks are found under the current root, which is also a directory name, and is the name of the parent directory of a set of banks. Here is the Bank Names drop-down list for the default setup, which has the default banks provided by the basic **Yoshimi** installation.



Figure 31: A Sample Bank List

And here is the directory listing associated with it, in the order produced by the UNIX/Linux `ls -1` (list single-column) command (shown in two columns to save space):

| | |
|-----------------|-------------------------|
| Arpeggios | Pads |
| Bass | Plucked |
| Brass | Reed_and_Wind |
| chip | Rhodes |
| Choir_and_Voice | Splited |
| Drums | Strings |
| Dual | Synth |
| Fantasy | SynthPiano |
| Guitar | The_Mysterious_Bank |
| Misc | Will_Godfrey_Collection |
| Noises | Will_Godfrey_Companion |
| Organ | |

The directories (banks) shown above come from the default **root** when *Yoshimi* and its data files are installed: `/usr/share/yoshimi/banks`. If one installed *Yoshimi* by building the source code, then this directory will be `/usr/local/share/yoshimi/banks`.

The first thing to note is that there are only 128 *Yoshimi* banks supported in a *Yoshimi* root. If the list of banks takes up about half of the available slots, it might be time to move some of those banks to a new root directory.

The numbers in the drop-down list are generated by *Yoshimi* the first time it sees a new root path or a new bank within the root path. Once set, these numbers will never change unless one actually moves them around (using the **SWAP** button).

The bank number is also the MIDI ID for the bank; one can be sure that it will always be there for bank changes, no matter how many banks are added later. *Yoshimi* always lists the banks in ID order, not alphabetical order, so one can group them sensibly and permanently. However, at first-time creation *Yoshimi* sets the IDs in alphabetical order and tries to space them evenly over the range to provide some wiggle room.

Selecting one of the items in this drop-down list selects the bank and loads it into the Banks dialog.

Right- or left-clicking on a bank in the drop-down list causes the instrument list of the previous bank to be replaced by the instrument list of the newly-selected bank.

2. Roots. Instruments Roots Button. Shows a list of directories that can serve as "root" directories. The "Bank Root Paths" dialog discussed in section 5.3.5 "Menu / Patch Sets / Patch Bank Roots" on page 67 in figure 37 "Show Patch Banks" on page 64, shows the system root (e.g. `/usr/share/yoshimi/banks`) and a user's home location for his/her banks and roots.

3. Banks. Banks Button. This item brings up a Banks dialog showing all of the banks present in the current root. It is an alternative to using the **Bank Names** drop-down list to select a bank. It is also a way to reorganize and renumber the banks without using the Linux console or a file-explorer application to do so.

4. Instrument and Bank Matrix. Instruments Bank Matrix. Shows the instruments that are in the currently selected bank (directory).

The next few items are selector buttons that determine what happens when one clicks on an instrument name.

5. SELECT. Instruments SELECT. When this button is selected, then clicking on an instrument selects that instrument as the instrument for the current Part active in the main window. In the main

window of *Yoshimi*, that instrument name will appear in the currently-selected **Part**. If *Yoshimi* is writing to a console window then each part, when clicked, will be shown:

```
yoshimi> Loaded 64 "Hyper Organ1" to Part 0
Loaded 65 "Hyper Arpeggio" to Part 0
Loaded 10 "Arpeggio11" to Part 0
Loaded 41 "Soft Arpeggio4" to Part 0
Loaded 67 "Glass Arpeggio1" to Part 0
```

(Remember that "Part 0" in the console is actually "Part 1" in the main window.)

6. RENAME. Instruments RENAME. When this button is selected, then clicking on a bank brings up a small dialog to rename the clicked-on bank. However, one will see the following warning message if trying to rename a file that is in a directory not modifiable by normal users:

```
! Could not rename instrument 39 to Soft Arpeggio5 [Close]
```

Note that, as soon as this operation is done, the auto-selector (green check-box) moves back to the **SELECT** button.

7. SAVE. Instruments SAVE. When this button is selected, then clicking on a bank saves the instruments as currently configured. A prompt like the following will appear:

```
? Overwrite the slot no. 43 ? [No/Yes]
```

However, if one answers yes, and the instrument is in a non-modifiable directory, then one will see the following error message:

```
! Could not save to this location [Close]
```

8. DELETE. Instruments DELETE. Selecting this button and clicking an empty bank entry does nothing. Selecting this button and clicking an existing bank entry brings up a small dialog asking one if this bank is really to be deleted.

```
? Clear the slot no. 68? [No/Yes]
```

However, if one answers yes, and the instrument is in a non-modifiable directory, then one will see the following error message:

```
! Could not clear this location [Close]
```

9. SWAP. Instruments SWAP. Selecting this button, then selecting one instrument, and then another, swaps the numbering and position of the selected instruments. However, one might also experience the following warning message:

```
! Could not swap these locations [Close]
```

Note that all of the above error messages are also shown in the console, if it is where *Yoshimi* is running. For example:

```
40 Failed to remove /usr/local/share/yoshimi/banks/Arpeggios/0041-Soft
Arpeggio3.xiz Permission denied
```

10. Show synth engines. If enabled, then the usage of each of the *Yoshimi* synthesis engines is indicated by color coding, as shown in the figure above.

11. Close. Closes the window.

5.2.2 Menu / Instrument / Load External...

This menu entry simply brings up a file dialog, allowing the user to navigate to an arbitrary directory, and then to a solitary instrument file (*.xiz), and load it into the current Part.

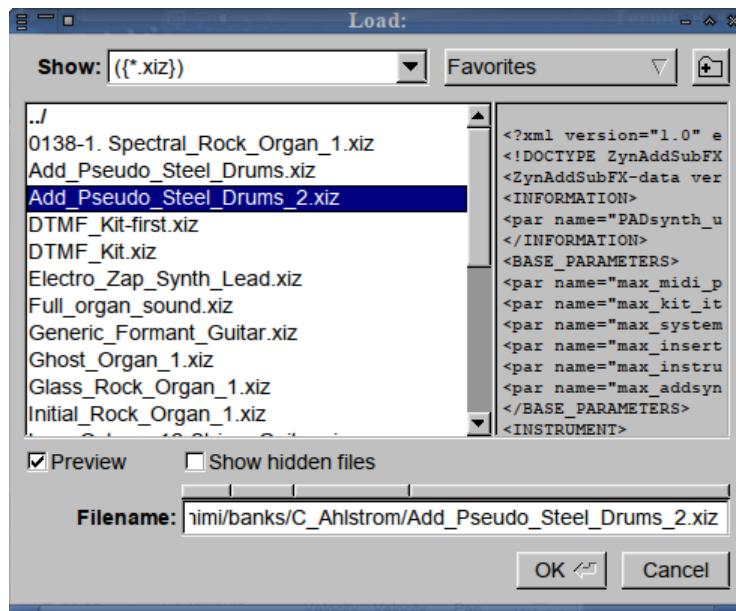


Figure 32: Instruments, Load External

These "xiz" files are normally found in a `banks` directory, but this operation allows access to instruments that are not located in a bank.

This dialog has a number of user-interface elements to discuss:

1. Show
2. Favorites
3. Create a new directory
4. Instrument List
5. XML Preview
6. Preview
7. Show hidden files
8. Directory Bar
9. Filename
10. OK
11. Cancel

These elements are used in a number of different places in *Yoshimi*. Therefore, we will explain them all once, here.

1. Show. Show types of files. This item shows a file filter for selecting instrument files. The types of filters are as follows (screen shot not available):

1. `{*.xiz}` (compressed XML files)
2. All Files (*)
3. Custom Filter

2. Favorites. Favorite directories. Provides a list of options and favorite directories in which to find instrument files.

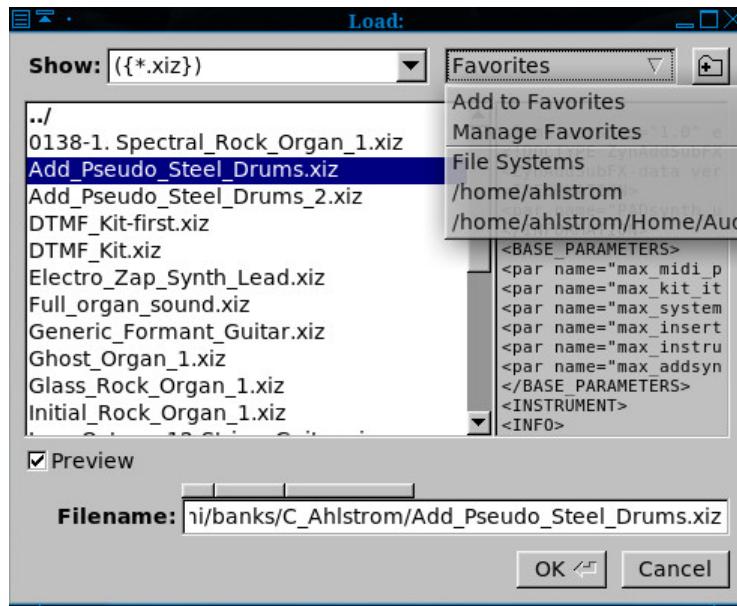


Figure 33: Manage Favorites Drop-Down List

1. Add to Favorites
2. Manage Favorites
3. File Systems
4. (*current favorite directories*)

Add to Favorites simply adds the currently selected directory shown in the instrument list to the list of favorites.

To add favorites in the file dialog, navigate to the desired directory. Then click **Favorites**, and select **Add to Favorites**.

Once one has a number of favorites set up, there is a **Manage Favorites** that can be used. For example, if one needs to get rid of a directory, one can use the **Manage Favorites** dialog, shown in figure 34 "Manage Favorites Dialog" on page 62 below, to do that.

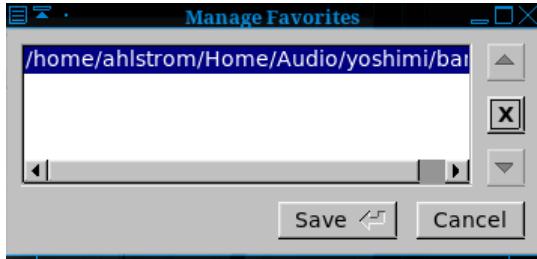


Figure 34: Manage Favorites Dialog

File Systems Provides a list of all file systems starting at root (""). This list can be pretty confusing, with a lot of entries. But note that one navigates to (""), and from there to `/usr/share/yoshimi/banks` to get easy access to all the instruments that are preinstalled with *Yoshimi*. Generally, one will want to use only **Add to Favorites** and **Manage Favorites**.

3. Create Directory. Creates a New Directory. This little symbol brings up a small "New Directory?" dialog (not shown here, it is very simple and stock) into which one can type a directory name to be added to the current directory of the instrument list.

4. Instrument List. Provides a list of the instrument files available in the current directory. Also shown are sub-directories (if available) that might contain more instruments, and a ("..") entry to navigate to the parent directory.

5. Preview. If one thinks the preview feature is not useful, uncheck this check-box. so that one doesn't see the preview window. As a bonus, one can see more of a long instrument file-name.

6. Preview pane. XML Preview. This box can show the beginning of the XML data of an instrument file. **Bug:** The XML preview feature shows the XML only if the XML is not compressed.

7. Show hidden files. Shows file that are hidden. Not sure how useful this feature is; who would hide a *Yoshimi* instrument file?

8. Directory Bar. Provides an alternate way to move up through the directory structure. Click on each of the small bevelled rectangles to move around in the directory hierarchy.

9. Filename. File Name. Provides the full path specification for the instrument file.

10. OK/Cancel. We don't really need to discuss the **OK** and **Cancel** buttons, do we? OK, we'll cancel that discussion.

5.2.3 Menu / Instrument / Save External...

This menu entry simply brings up a file dialog, allowing the user to navigate to an arbitrary directory, and then save the current Part to a solitary instrument file (*.xiz).

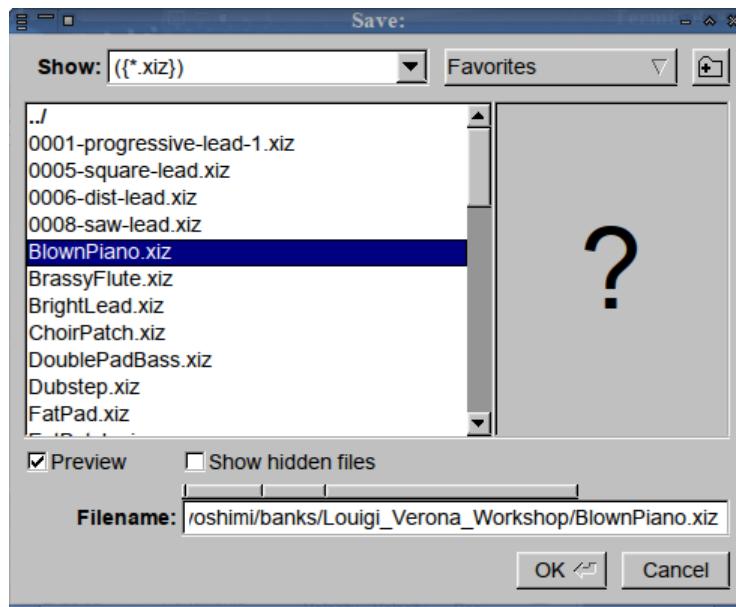


Figure 35: Instruments, Save External

This dialog is very similar to the **Load External** dialog. Note the large question mark in the XML preview, indicating a compressed XML file. If uncompressed, then an XML text preview will be shown. The instrument save action saves only what is essential to the instrument, and not the part it may be sitting in. If there have been no changes in the instrument, then a **Nothing to save!** dialog appears.

5.2.4 Menu / Instrument / Clear

This menu entry simply clears the instrument that is loaded into the current Part. This converts the instrument to a *Simple Sound* patch. This menu entry brings up a prompt to clear the parameters of the instrument that is currently loaded in the current part.

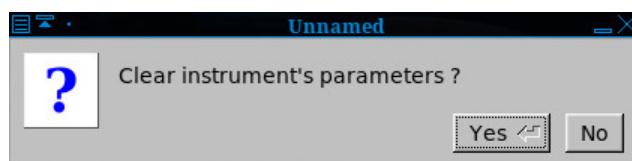


Figure 36: Clear Instrument Dialog

Funny, in recent versions of *Yoshimi*, the **Yes** and **No** buttons have switched places. **No** is now the default action.

5.3 Menu / Patch Sets

This new menu entry is part of the very nice reorganization and simplification of the handling of roots and banks in the new *Yoshimi*. The **Patch Sets** menu replaces the old **Parameters** menu. Do you like the new name? The patch set saves all of the settings, including effects and instruments.

Yoshimi stamps its parameter XML files with its own major and minor version numbers so it is possible to tell which version created the files, or whether they were created by *ZynAddSubFX*.

The main dialog is somewhat similar in layout and function to the dialog shown in figure 30 "Show Stored Instruments" on page 56, for managing instruments in a selected bank.

5.3.1 Menu / Patch Sets / Show Patch Banks...

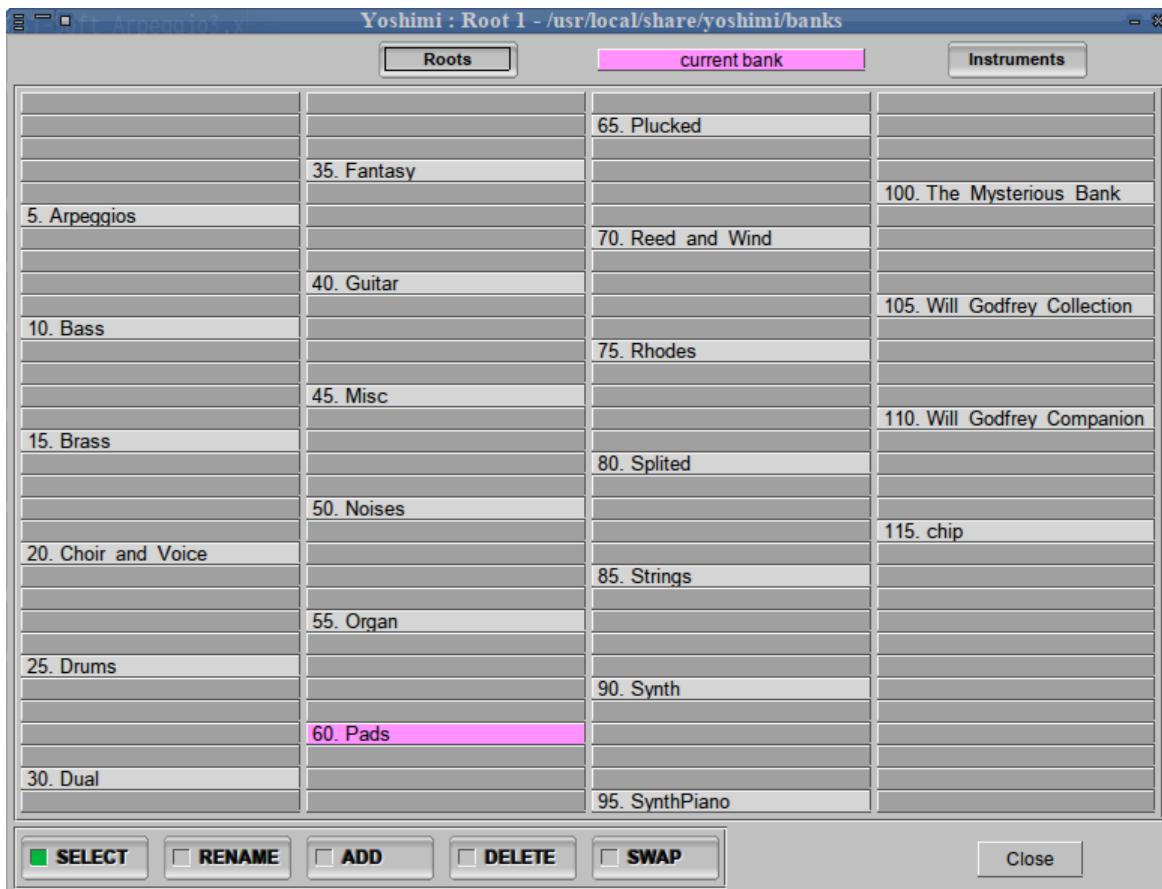


Figure 37: Show Patch Banks

Here is a list of the user-interface items in the patch-banks dialog:

1. Roots
2. current bank
3. Instruments
4. Bank Matrix
5. SELECT
6. RENAME
7. SAVE
8. DELETE
9. SWAP
10. Close

1. Roots. Show Patch Banks, Root Directories. To add a bank root path, delete a bank root path, or manage bank root path, press this button. The result is somewhat similar to a file dialog, and is described in detail in section [5.3.5 "Menu / Patch Sets / Patch Bank Roots"](#) on page [67](#), later in this sub-chapter.

2. current bank. This item is highlighted in pink, and the bank that is actually the current bank is also highlighted in pink. There is no action associated with this user-interface element; it merely indicates the currently-selected bank.

3. Instrument. This button brings up an instruments window similar to the one shown in figure [30 "Show Stored Instruments"](#) on page [56](#), which shows the instruments collected in the currently-selected bank. Clicking on a bank in the dialog also brings up the instruments window.

4. Bank Matrix. This view shows all of the banks available in the current root. Left-clicking on a bank in the dialog brings up the Instruments window for that bank. Right-clicking on a bank in the dialog brings up the Instruments window for that bank, but also closes the banks window, to reduce clutter.

The rest of the buttons **SELECT**, **RENAME**, **SAVE**, **DELETE**, and **SWAP** behave similarly to the same buttons in the Instruments window, as described in the discussion at section [5.2.1 "Menu / Instrument / Show Stored.."](#) on page [55](#).

5.3.2 Menu / Patch Sets / Load External...

This menu entry simply brings up a file dialog, allowing the user to navigate to an arbitrary directory, and then to a solitary instrument file (*.xmz), and load it into the current set of parts.

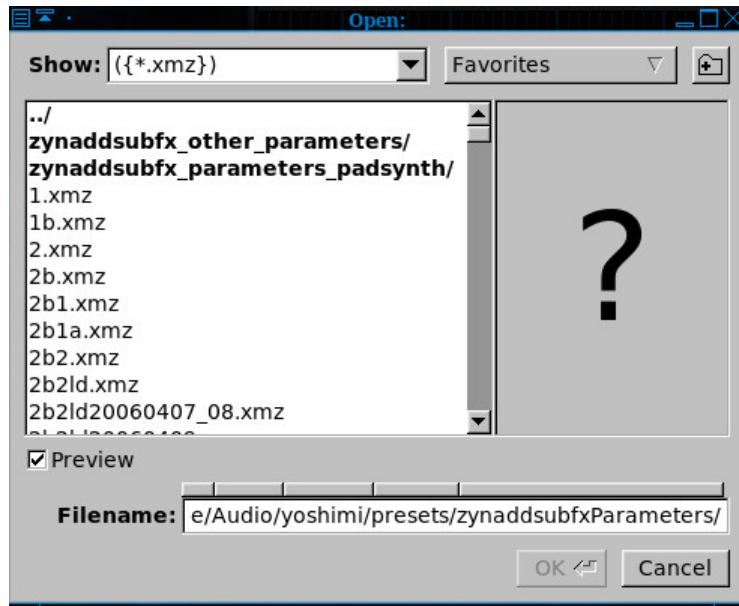


Figure 38: Load Patch Set

These "xmz" files are normally found in a **presets** directory, but this operation allows access to banks that are not located in a particular root.

When an "xmz" file is loaded, all of the instruments it contains are loaded sequentially into the Parts. Thus, a number of instruments are loaded at once. So, a patch set is a list of instruments that are related by being necessary for a given tune, rather than by being located in a particular bank.

In parameter sets, *Yoshimi* will save named-but-disabled patches. Currently, *ZynAddSubFX* does not, so be aware when transferring data between the two synthesizers.

5.3.3 Menu / Patch Sets / Save External...

This menu entry simply brings up a file dialog, allowing the user to navigate to an arbitrary directory, and then save the current Part to a solitary instrument file (*.xiz).

In parameter sets, *Yoshimi* will save named-but-disabled patches. Currently, *ZynAddSubFX* does not, so be aware when transferring data between the two synthesizers.

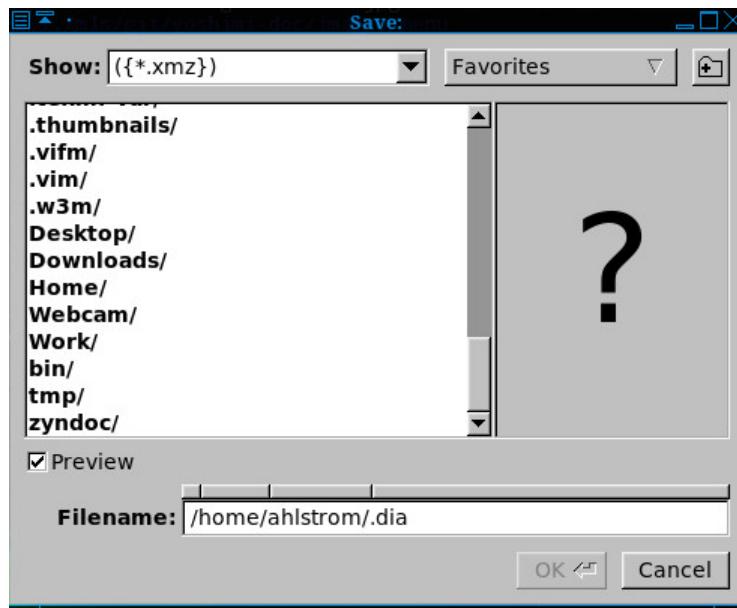


Figure 39: Save Patch Set

Patch set saves include everything that is not part of the main configuration, and so saved patch sets includes Master Volume and Detune, Part destinations, Humanise, and more.

If nothing has changed, then the following dialog is shown.

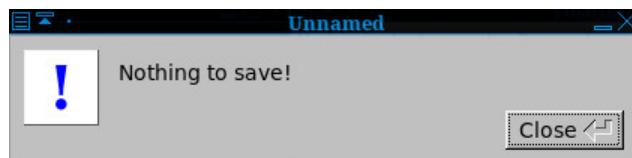


Figure 40: Patch Set, Nothing to Save

5.3.4 Menu / Patch Sets / Recent Sets

This menu entry brings up a dialog box with a list of the recent patch sets that have been loaded. This item makes it easy to move around one's frequently-used banks.

5.3.5 Menu / Patch Sets / Patch Bank Roots

Yoshimi (as installed by Debian Linux) provides a default bank at `/usr/share/yoshimi/banks`. To add one's own directory, click on the **Roots** button. It brings up the following dialog.

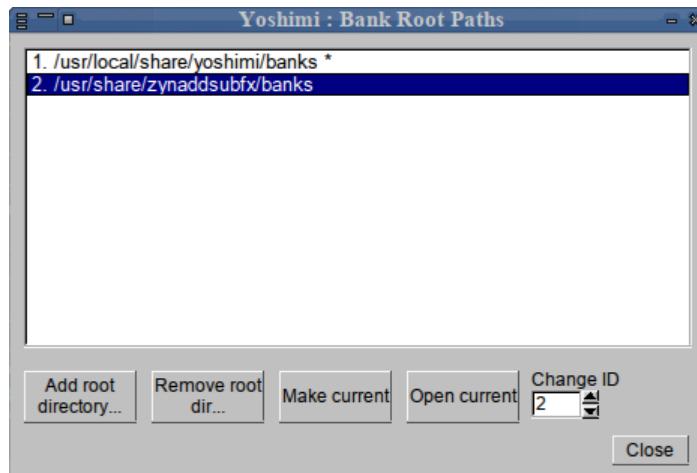


Figure 41: Bank Root Paths

This dialog has a number of buttons, some of which will be disabled if no directory in the list is selected. Then click on the "Add root directory..." button. In the file dialog that appear, one can use the **Create Directory** button to make a new directory, if desired:

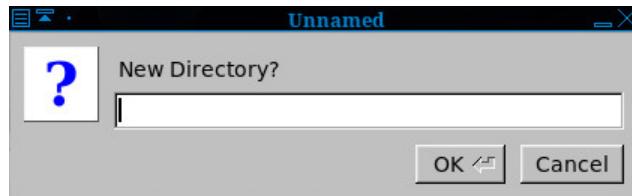


Figure 42: New Root Directory?

Otherwise, once can add an existing directory to the list.

1. Add root directory.... Bank Root Paths, Add Root Directory.

Once selected, one will see that `/usr/share/yoshimi/banks` or `/usr/local/share/yoshimi/banks` is marked with an asterisk. One can select the new root directory via the file dialog that appears, and then make it the current root by clicking the **Make current** button. Then the Banks dialog will show all the banks in that directory, one bank per subdirectory (each subdirectory "is" a bank).

2. Remove root directory.... Bank Root Paths, Remove Root Directory. If a path is selected, then this button is active, and can be used to delete the selected path from the "root paths" list.

3. Make current. Bank Root Paths, Make Current. This button marks the currently-selected path as the "current root" path.

4. Open current. Bank Root Paths, Open Current. This button opens the current root path. (Does this work?)

5. Change ID. Bank Root Paths, Change ID. This ID can be used to make the bank selectable via an extended MIDI control.

Values: 0* to 127

5.4 Menu / Paths

This menu entry provides a more direct way to set up the Bank Root and the Presets directories. It contains the following items:

1. **Bank Root Dirs...**
2. **Preset Dirs...**

5.4.0.1 Bank Root Dirs...

The Paths Bank Root Dirs dialog is described in section [5.3.5 ”Menu / Patch Sets / Patch Bank Roots”](#) on page [67](#), which shows figure [41 ”Bank Root Paths”](#) on page [67](#), and describes this dialog in full.

5.4.0.2 Preset Dirs...

The *Yoshimi* preset directories are the locations where presets can be found. When first installed, the system preset directory is one of the following, depending on whether *Yoshimi* was installed via a package manager or via source code:

```
/usr/share/yoshimi/presets  
/usr/local/share/yoshimi/presets
```

The user can provide additional directories for the presets, up to a limit of 128 directories (the same limit as for roots and banks). These directories are useful for containing copies of the system presets that one can modify safely, and for providing custom presets designed by the user.

The following items are provided by the preset directory settings:

1. **Preset list**
2. **Add preset directory...**
3. **Remove preset directory...**
4. **Make default**
5. **Save and Close**
6. **Close Unsaved**

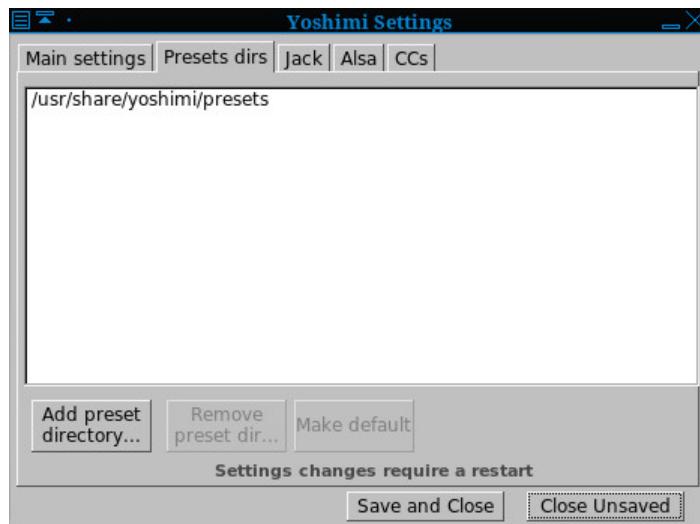


Figure 43: Yoshimi Preset Dirs Dialog

1. Preset list. This interface element contains a list of preset directories. By default, the only directory present is the installed preset directory. For example, `/usr/share/yoshimi/presets`.

Tip: If there is no directory in this dialog, then one must add one, otherwise there is no place to store the presets. So make this one of the first items specified when first running *Yoshimi*!

Another example would be this project; let `YOSHIMI-DOC` be the directory where this project is stored. Then one can add `YOSHIMI-DOC/config/yoshimi/presets` to this list, using the button described next.

2. Add preset directory.... Use this button and dialog to add a preset directory to the list, for easy access.

Press the **Add preset directory...** button, revealing the following dialog.

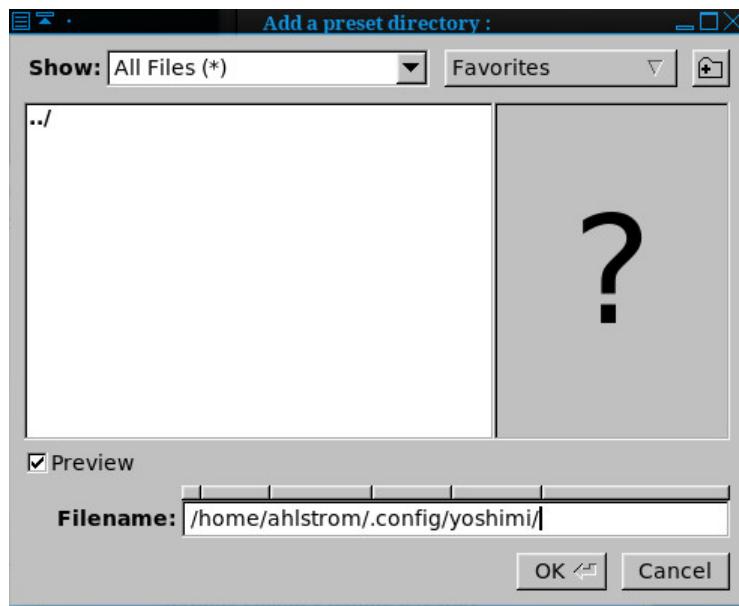


Figure 44: Add a Preset Directory

Navigate to the desired directory, select it, and press the **Ok** button. (There is no need to press the **Save and Close** button; the directory is added as soon as *OK* is clicked. However, one tends to want to click it anyway, to be sure.) *Important:* Restart *Yoshimi* to use the preset directory.

3. Remove preset directory.... Select one of the preset directories in the preset list, then press this button to remove the preset directory from the list of preset directories. It is removed immediately, with no need to confirm the deletion, click an OK button, or click a Save button.

4. Make default presets. Make Default Presets Directory. Select one of the preset directories in the preset list, then press this button to make the preset directory the default preset directory. It should be a directory for which one has write permissions. By default, it is `~/.config/yoshimi/presets`.

5.5 Menu / Scales

Yoshimi is a microtonal synthesizer, and is capable of a wide range of microtonal scales.

At present, we're not too experienced with this feature.

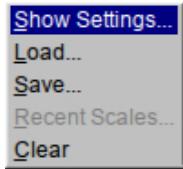


Figure 45: Yoshimi Menu, Scales

1. Show Settings...
2. Load...
3. Save...
4. Recent Scales...
5. Clear

5.5.1 Menu / Scales / Show Settings

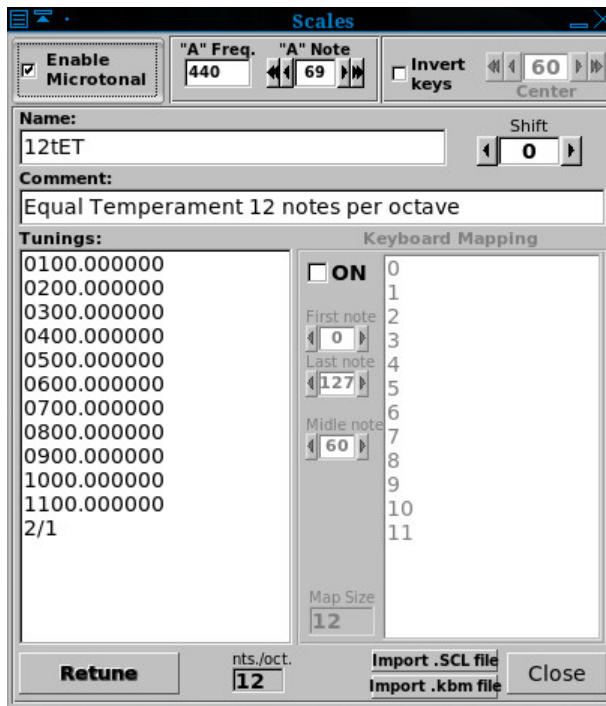


Figure 46: Yoshimi Menu, Scales Settings

5.5.1.1 Scales Basic Settings

This item controls the micro-tonal capabilities of *Yoshimi* and some other settings related to tuning. The last entry in the tunings list represents one octave. All other notes are deduced from these settings.

1. Microtonal. Enable Microtonal Scales. When disabled, the synthesizer will use equal-temperament, 12 notes per octave. Otherwise, one can input any scale one desires.

Values: Off*, On

2. "A" Freq. Frequency of the "A" Note. Sets the frequency of the "A" key. The standard is 440.0 Hz.

Values: 440*

3. "A" Note. Sets the MIDI Value of the "A" Note.

Values: 0 to 127, 69*

4. Invert Keys. Allows the keys to be inverted, so that higher-valued keys play lower notes.

Values: Off*, On

5. Center. Center for Inverted Keys. This is the center where the notes frequencies are turned upside-down if **Invert keys** is enabled. If the center is 60, the note 59 will become 61, 58 will become 62, 61 will become 59, and so on.

Values: 0 to 127, 60*

6. Name. Name of the Mapping. For example, the default mapping is called "12tET".

7. Shift. Key Shift. Shift the scale. If the scale is tuned to A, one can easily tune it to another key.

Values: -63 to 64, 0*

8. Comment. Comment for Key Mapping. Provides a comment or a description of the scale. By default, this is "Equal Temperament 12 notes per octave".

9. Tunings. Tunings. Here one can input a scale by entering all the tunings for one octave. One can enter the tunings in two ways:

1. As the number of cents (1200 cents=1 octave) as a float number like "100.0", "123.234"
2. As a proportion like "2/1" which represents one octave, "3/2" a perfect fifth, "5734/6561". "2/1" is equal to "1200.0" cents.

The default is a series of values: 0100.0, 0200.0, ..., 1100.0, 2/1.

10. Retune. Retune button. This button retunes the synthesizer according to the settings of the **Tunings** and **Keyboard Mapping** lists. All other changes operate immediately.

11. nts./oct. Notes Per Octave.

Values: 12* (range not yet known)

12. Import .SCL file. Import Scala files. Scala is a powerful application for experimentation with musical tunings (intonation scales, micro-tonal,...etc.). From its home page [13], one can download more than 2800 scales which one can import directly into *Yoshimi*. Note that the zip file *must* be unzipped with the **-aa** ("autoconvert") option. However, we have converted it to a much smaller tar file (it crams 18 Mb of files into an sub-500 Kb file), which can be untarred directly into one's configuration directory to create a `~/.config/yoshimi/scales` directory chock full of scales.

```
$ cd ~/.config/yoshimi/
$ tar xf yoshimi-scales.tar.xz
```

Note that a Scala file cannot be loaded directly. It must be imported.

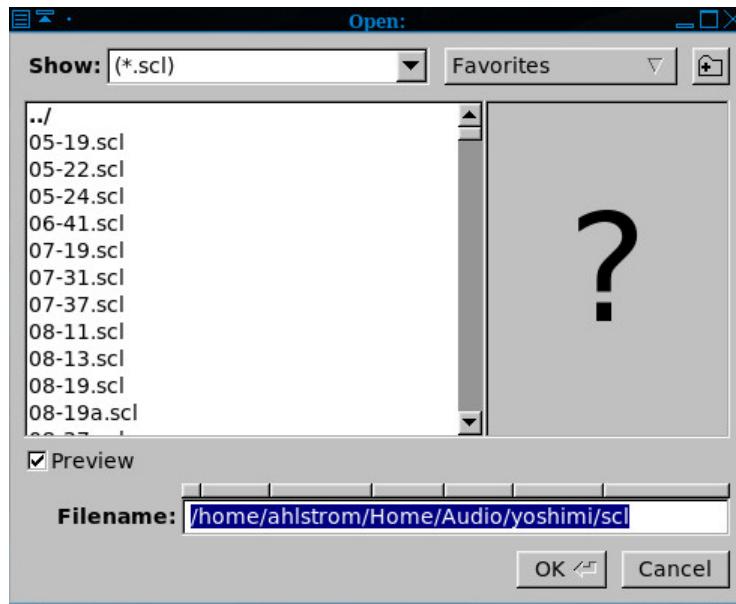


Figure 47: Yoshimi Menu, Scales, Import File

- 13. Import .scl file.** This item is a standard file dialog for reading a *.scl file.

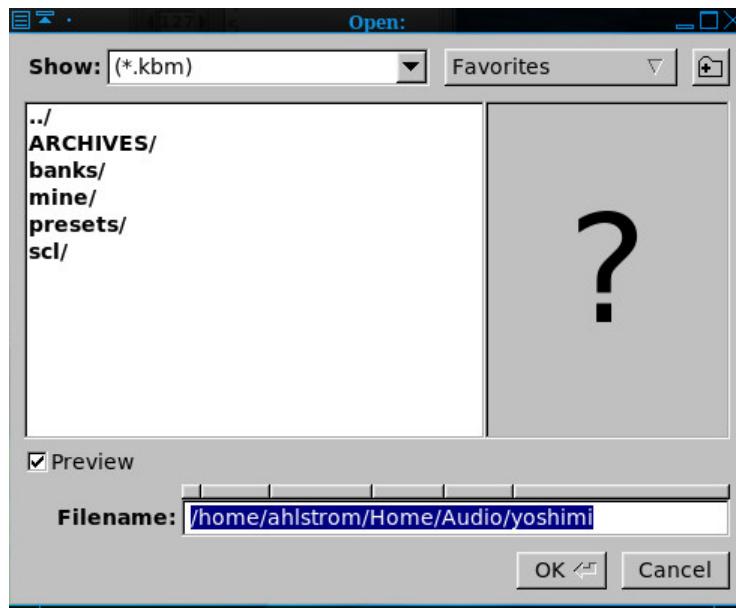


Figure 48: Yoshimi Menu, Scales, Import Keyboard Map

- 14. Import .kbm file.** This item is a standard file dialog for reading a *.kbm file.

15. Close, Scales Dialog.

The items related to the **Keyboard Mapping** are discussed separately in the next section.

5.5.1.2 Keyboard Mapping

One can set the MIDI keyboard mapping to scale-degree mapping. This is used if the scale has more or less than 12 notes/octave. One can enable the mapping by pressing the **ON** check-box.

1. **ON**
2. **First Note**
3. **Last Note**
4. **Midle Note**
5. **Map**
6. **Map Size**

1. ON.

Values: **Off***, **On**

2. First Note. First MIDI Note Number. Keys below this value are ignored.

Values: **0*** to **127**

3. Last Note. Last MIDI Note Number. Keys above this value are ignored.

Values: **0** to **127***

4. Middle Note. Middle note where scale-degree 0 is mapped to; the middle note represents the note where the formal octave starts. Note the misspelling of "middle".

Values: **0** to **127***

5. Map. Scales map. This is the input field where the mappings are entered. The numbers represent the order (degree) entered on **Tunings Input** field, with the first value being 0. This number must be less than the number of notes per octave (since the values start at 0). If one doesn't want a key to be mapped, one enters an "x" instead of a number.

Values: 0 to 11

6. Map Size. Provides the size of the scale-map.

Values: 12

In the current version of *Yoshimi*, up to 25 recently used scales are now stored in the new history file (*yoshimi.history*), and can be quickly reinstalled with a mini-browser in exactly the same way as patch sets.

5.5.2 Menu / Scales / Load

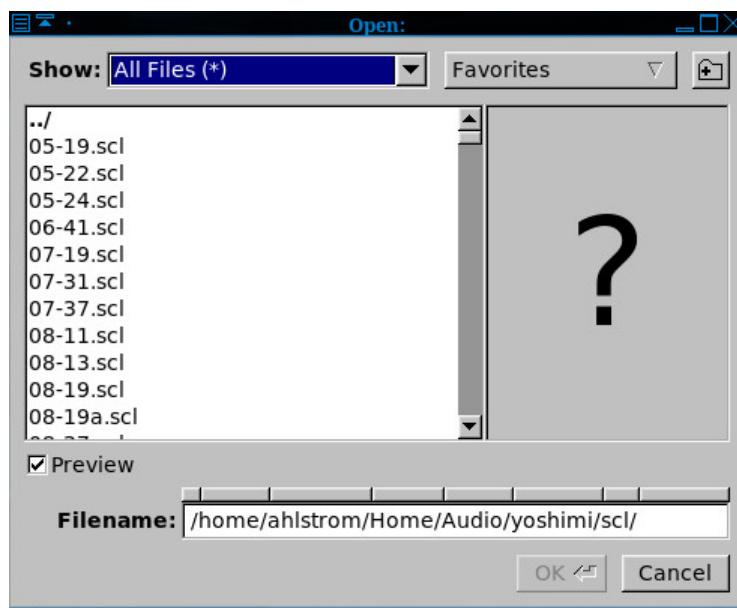


Figure 49: Yoshimi Menu, Open Scales

If the format of the scales file is not correct, then the following prompt will appear.

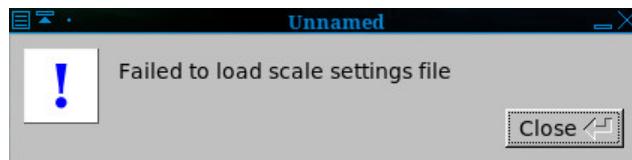


Figure 50: Yoshimi Menu, Failed to Load Scales

5.5.3 Menu / Scales / Save

This dialog opens a stock file-dialog to allow the saving of *.xsz files. If one has imported a scale from an *.scl file, and one wants direct access to it from the **Scales / Recent Scales** menu, one must first

save the imported file as an `*.xsz` files.

5.5.4 Menu / Scales / Recent Scales...

Once some scale file has been loaded (or imported and saved), then it becomes available in this list, for more convenient access to it.

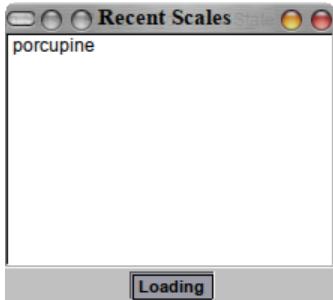


Figure 51: Yoshimi Menu, Recent Scales

5.5.5 Menu / Scales / Clear

This menu entry simply resets the *Yoshimi* scale back to its default, the twelve-tone equally-tempered scale.

5.6 Menu / State

Yoshimi state is saved in files with the extension `.state`. These files are also XML files.

Yoshimi "state" will include the system settings, as well as all patches. Some of these settings (such as Oscillator Size) can only be realised on a reload if loading via the command line at startup. However, the ones that can't be dynamically changed will be set, and if the configuration is then saved, will be set on the next load – this is not ideal. We are working on it, but don't expect improvements soon!

1. Load
2. Save
3. Recent States...

As the following figures show, state files are normally stored in the user's `.config/yoshimi/yoshimi.state` file.

1. State Load. Provides a way to load a previously-saved *Yoshimi* state file.

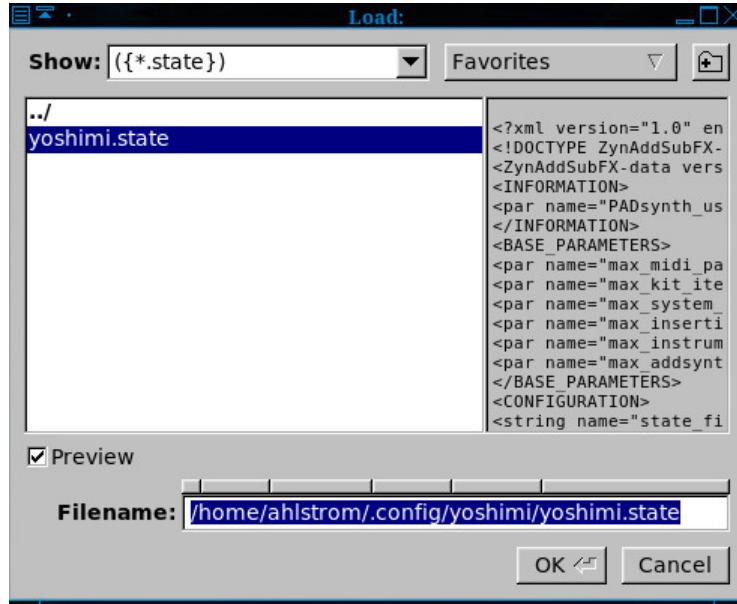


Figure 52: Yoshimi Menu, State Load

This item is a standard *Yoshimi* file dialog. Note that XML text is shown in the preview pane, but, if XML compression is set, then a large question mark is all that would be shown.

2. State Save. Provides a way to save a new or modified *Yoshimi* state file.

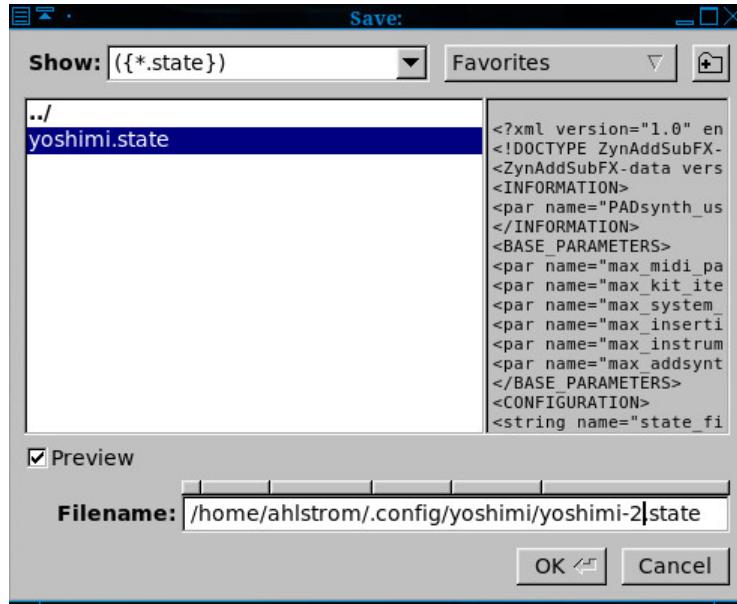


Figure 53: Yoshimi Menu, State Save

This item is a standard *Yoshimi* file dialog.

3. Recent States. This item brings up a list of states to select. The Recent States dialog will not come up if there are no states that have yet been managed.

6 Stock Settings Elements

This section collects all of the setting values and small user-interface items that one will find for audio parameters in the *Yoshimi* GUI. Sometimes the labels and tool-tips in the application are a bit too brief to understand. One will find their full meanings, their tricks, and usage notes in this section.

This section also covers the sub-panels that provide the settings. Many of these sub-panels are used in many places in *Yoshimi*, not only as user-interface elements, but as presets that can be saved and load. By describing the deep details of these sub-panels here, we can refer to them when describing how to set up specific sounds in *Yoshimi*.

Much of this material comes from <http://sourceforge.net/zynaddsubfx/Doc> and has been reorganized, and, it is to be hoped, expanded.

6.1 Settings Features

This section notes some minor interface and synthesizer features that may be seen throughout *Yoshimi*.

6.1.1 Mouse Features

New: In the AddSynth dialogs and other dialogs with nested windows, if one right-clicks on a button that opens a child window, the current window is closed. Conversely, if one right-clicks on the **Close** button of a child window, it will re-open the parent. This feature is especially useful when going up and down the AddSynth stack, and avoids having a screenful of intermediate windows. Note that this feature does *not* apply to the main window.

6.1.2 Title Bars

The title bars of all editing windows display both the part number and the current name of the instrument one are working on. In the **ADDsynth Oscillator Editor**, one also sees the voice number of the oscillator one is editing. Some title bars now also include the kit entry number if that part has a kit enabled; this feature needs more work to get all of them.

6.1.3 Color Coding

A GUI enhancement for *Yoshimi 1.3.5* is color-coded identification of an instrument's use of ADD-, SUB-, and PAD-synth engines, no matter where in the instrument's kit they may be. This can be enabled/disabled in the mixer panel. It does slow down *Yoshimi*'s startup, but due to the banks reorganisation (done some time ago) it causes no delay in changing banks/instruments once *Yoshimi* is up and running. Some saved instruments seem to have had their "Info" section corrupted. *Yoshimi* can detect this issue, and step over it to find the true status. Also, if one resaves the instrument, not only will the PADsynth status be restored, but ADDsynth and SUBsynth will be included, allowing a faster scan next time.

6.1.4 Rotary Knobs

Visual rotary knobs are used for modifying numerical parameters in the user-interface. Horizontal, as well as vertical, mouse movements will adjust the knob. Mouse clicks also can adjust the knob.

- **Coarse Control.** When rotated using the left mouse button, the rotary knobs give a coarse control of the numerical settings of the knob.
- **Fine Control.** When a knob is rotated using the right mouse button, the rotary knobs give a finer control of the numerical settings of the knob.
- **Scroll Wheel.** One can also use the mouse scroll wheel to adjust rotary controls, which gives better control than using the mouse pointer.
- **Super Fine Control.** If the Ctrl key is held at the same time as the wheel is scrolled, the control is *extremely* fine. If the middle button is dragged, the control is *extremely* fine.
- **Home Position.** A right-click sends the knob to the home position (and sets its value to the home value). For setting like **Pan** and **Detune** it is the middle position; for other settings, it is whatever the default value is for that setting.

The fact that every control can now be homed with a right mouse click means there is no longer a need for the few 'Zero' and 'Reset' buttons dotted around, so they are all gone as of version 1.4.0.

6.1.5 Sliders

For both horizontal and vertical sliders, if one holds down the right mouse button, the thumb will go to its default position. The same thing will happen if you click on the track with the right button. If on top of the thumb of the control, it won't move unless one moves the mouse slightly while right-clicking.

Yoshimi has changed some rotary controls or rollers to sliders. These controls pack better without looking crowded, are easier to manage, with clearer indication.

6.1.6 Presets

The *ZynAddSubFX/Yoshimi* concept of presets is very powerful.

Absolutely every user-interface section that has blue **C** and **P** buttons can be stored in the **presets** directory. That includes entire Addsynth engines! When one looks at the copy/paste buffer, one sees only items that are relevant to the group that the C/P buttons are in.

As one wants to save, as well as load, these presets, it makes sense to copy all the default ones to a location such as `~/.config/yoshimi/presets`. That makes them fully accessible, but tucked away out of sight. *Yoshimi* creates this directory at first time start up. Preset files allow one to save the settings for any of the components which support copy/paste operations. This is done with preset files (`.xpz`), which get stored in the folders indicated by **Paths / Preset Dirs....** Note that the number of preset directories that can be set is limited to 128 (the same as for roots and banks).

6.1.7 Automation

In *Yoshimi 1.3.5*, a number of existing, as well as new features have come together to give much greater flexibility (especially for automation) using standard MIDI messages. These are:

1. **NRPNs**
2. **ZynAddSubFX controls**
3. **Independent part control**
4. **16, 32 or 64 parts**
5. **Vector Control**

6. Direct part stereo audio output

1. NRPNs. NRPNs can handle individual bytes appearing in either order, and usually the same with the data bytes. Increment and decrement is also supported as graduated values for both data LSB and MSB. Additionally, the ALSA sequencer's 14-bit NRPN blocks are supported.

2. ZynAddSubFx controls. System and Insertion Effect controls are fully supported, with extensions to allow one to set the effect type and (for insertion effects) the destination part number.

3. Part control. Independent part control enables one to change instrument, volume, pan, or indeed any other available control of just that part, without affecting any others that are receiving the same MIDI channel. This can be particularly interesting with multiply layered sounds. There are more extensions planned.

4. 16/32/64 Parts. With 32 and 64 parts, it helps to think of 2 or 4 rows of 16. When one saves a parameter block, the number of parts is also saved, and will be restored when one reloads. By default each column has the same MIDI channel number, but these can be independently switched around, and by setting (say) number 17 taken right out of normal access.

In tests, *compiling* for 64 parts compared with 16 parts increased processor load by a very small amount when *Yoshimi* was idling, but this becomes virtually undetectable once one has 8 or more instruments actually generating output. In normal use, selecting the different formats makes no detectable difference, but using the default 16 reduces clutter when one doesn't need the extras.

5. Vector control. Vector control is based on these parts columns, giving one either 2 (X only) or 4 (X + Y) instruments in this channel. Currently the vector CCs one set up can (as inverse pairs) vary any combination of volume, pan, and filter cut-off. More will be added. To keep the processor load reasonable it pays to use fairly simple instruments, but if one has sufficient processing power, it would be theoretically possible to set up all 16 channels with quite independent vector behavior! Also see section [5.1.4 "Menu / Yoshimi / Vectors"](#) on page [39](#), for a discussion of the vector configuration dialog, and section [16 "Vector Control"](#) on page [193](#), for an in-depth discussion of how vectors work.

6. Direct part audio. Direct part audio is JACK-specific, and allows one to apply further processing to just the defined part's audio output (which can still output to the main L+R if one wants). This setting is saved with parameter blocks. Currently it is only set in the mixer panel window, but it will also eventually come under MIDI direct part control. Again, to reduce unnecessary clutter, part ports are only registered with JACK if they are both enabled, and set for direct output. However, once set they will remain in place for the session to avoid disrupting other applications that may have seen them.

6.2 Filter Settings

This section describes filtering at a high level, in terms of frequency responses and other concepts of filtering. The end of this section covers a user interface used in filter settings. It is a stock-panel re-used in other user-interface elements. See section [6.2.5 "Filter Parameters User Interface"](#) on page [82](#), if one is in a hurry.

Yoshimi offers several different types of filters, which can be used to shape the spectrum of a signal. The primary parameters that affect the characteristics of the filter are the cutoff, resonance, filter stages, and the filter type.

Filter stages are the number of times that this filter is applied in series. So, if this number is 1, one simply has this one filter. If it is two, the sound first passes the filter, and the results then pass the same filter again. In *ZynAddSubFX*, the wetness is applied after all stages were passed.

6.2.1 Filter Type

A filter removes or attenuates frequency elements or tones from a signal. Filtering changes the character of a signal.

The basic analog filters that *Yoshimi* and *ZynAddSubFX* offer are shown in figure 54 "Basic Filter Types" on page 80, with the center frequency being marked by the red line. The state variable filters should look quite similar.

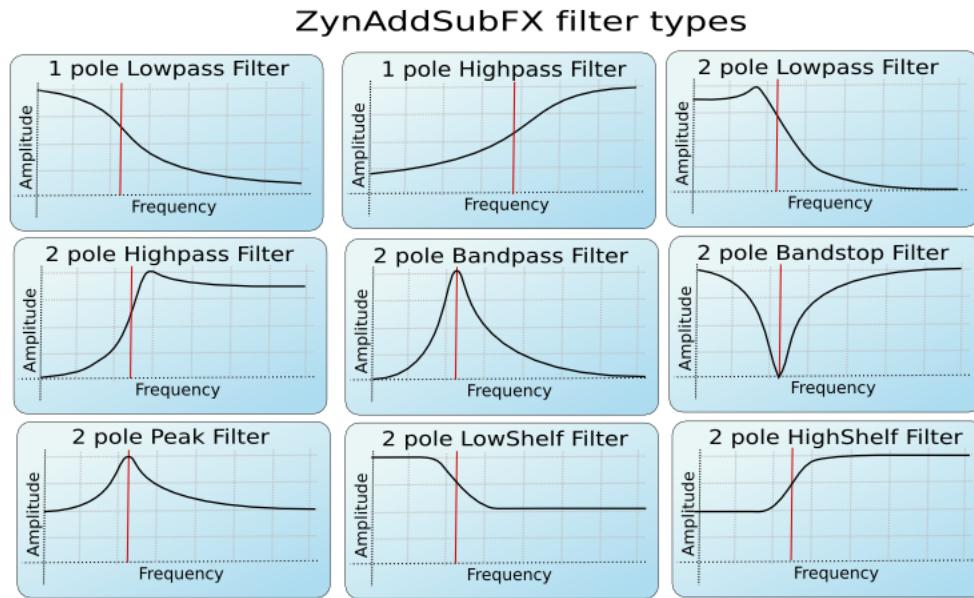


Figure 54: Filter Types, Yoshimi/ZynAddSubFX

1. A **low-pass** filter makes the sound more muffled.
2. A **band-pass** filter makes the sound more tone-like, and sometimes more penetrating, if the total energy in the passband is preserved as the bandwidth decreases.
3. A **high-pass** filter makes the sound seem sharper or more strident.

6.2.2 Filter Cutoff

The filter cutoff value determines which frequency marks the changing point for the filter. In a low pass filter, this value marks the point where higher frequencies begin to be attenuated.

6.2.3 Filter Resonance

The resonance of a filter determines how much excess energy is present at the cutoff frequency. In *Yoshimi* and *ZynAddSubFX*, this is represented by the Q-factor, which is defined to be the cutoff frequency divided by the bandwidth. In other words higher Q values result in a much more narrow resonant spike.

The Q value of a filter affects how concentrated the signals energy is at the cutoff frequency. The result of differing Q values are shown in figure 55 "Low Q vs. High Q" on page 81. For many classical analog sounds, high Q values were used on sweeping filters. A simple high Q low pass filter modulated by a strong envelope is usually sufficient to get a good sound.

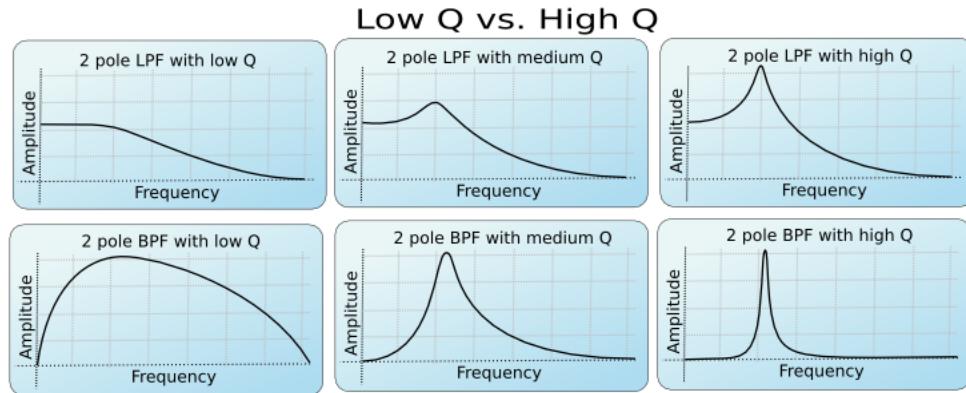


Figure 55: The Effect of the Q Value

6.2.4 Filter Stages

The number of stages in a given filter describes how sharply it is able to make changes in the frequency response. The more stages, the sharper the filter. However, each added stage increases the processor time needed to make the filter calculation.

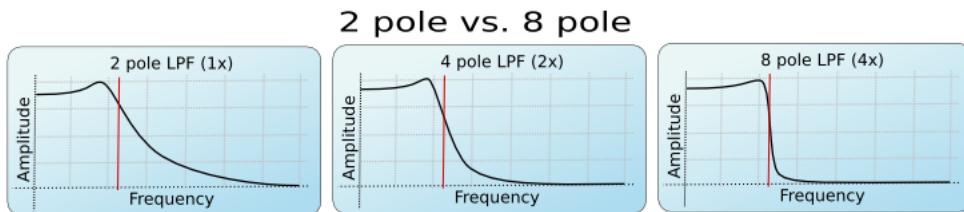


Figure 56: The Effect of the Order of a Filter

The affect of the order of the filter can be seen in the figure above. This is roughly synonymous with the number of stages of the filter. For more complex patches, it is important to realize that the extra sharpness in the filter does not come for free, as it requires many more calculations to be performed. This phenomena is the most visible in SUBsynth, where it is easy to need several hundred filter stages to produce a given note.

There are different types of filters. The number of poles define what will happen at a given frequency. Mathematically, the filters are functions which have poles that correspond to that frequency. Usually, two poles mean that the function has more "steepness", and that one can set the exact value of the function at the poles by defining the "resonance value". Filters with two poles are also often referred to as *Butterworth Filters*.

For the interested, functions having poles means that we are given a quotient of polynomials. The denominator has degree 1 or 2, depending on the filter having one or two poles. In the file `DSP/AnalogFilter.cpp`, `AnalogFilter :: computefiltercoefs()` sets the coefficients (depending on the filter type), and `AnalogFilter :: singlefilterout()` shows the whole polynomial (in a formula where no quotient is needed).

6.2.5 Filter Parameters User Interface

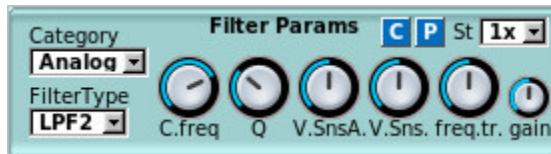


Figure 57: Stock Filter Parameters Sub-Panel

The user interface for filter parameters is a small stock sub-panel that is re-used in a number of larger dialog boxes, as shown in the figure above. Let's describe each item of this sub-panel.



Figure 58: Filter Categories, Dropdown Box

1. **Category**
2. **Filter Type**
3. **C.freq**
4. **Q**
5. **V.SnsA**
6. **freq.tr**
7. **gain**
8. **St**
9. **C**
10. **P**

1. Category. Determines the category of filter to be used. There are three categories of filters (as shown in the dropdown element shown in figure 58 "Filter Categories Dropdown" on page 82).

1. **Analog** (the default)
2. **Formant**
3. **StVarF**

An **analog** filter is one that approximates a filter that is based on a network of resistors, capacitors, and inductors.

A **formant** filter is a more complex kind of filter that acts a lot like the human vocal tract, allowing for sounds that are a bit like human voices.

A **state variable** ("StVarF") filter is a type of active filter. The frequency of operation and the Q factor can be varied independently. This and the ability to switch between different filter responses make the state-variable filter widely used in analogue synthesizers.

Values: **Analog***, **Formant**, **StVarF**

2. Filter Type. Selects the type of filter to be used, such as high-pass, low-pass, and band-pass. See the dropdown element in figure 59 "Filter Type Dropdown" on page 83.



Figure 59: Type of Filter Passband, Dropdown Box

Values: LPF1, HPF1, LPF2*, HPF2, BPF2, NF2, PkF2, LSh2, HSh2

3. C.freq. Cutoff frequency or center frequency. This item has various definitions in the literature. Usually it refers to the frequency at which the level drops to 3 Db below the maximum level. In various dialogs, this value is the center frequency of the filter or the base position in a vowel's sequence.

Values: 0 to 127, 90*

4. Q. The level of resonance for the filter. It indicates a measure of the sharpness of a filter. The higher the Q, the sharper the filter. Generally, a higher Q value leads to a louder, more tonal affect for the filter. Note that some filter types might ignore this parameter.

5. V.SnsA. Velocity sensing amount for filter cutoff. Velocity sensing amount of the filter.

Values: 0 to 127, 64*

6. V.Sns. Velocity sensing function of the filter. Set the amplitude of the velocity sensing.

Values: 0 to 127, 64*

7. freq.tr. Filter Frequency Tracking Amount. When this parameter is positive, higher note frequencies shift the filters cutoff frequency higher. For the filter frequency tracking knob, left is negative, middle is zero, and right is positive.

Values: 0 to 127, 64*

8. gain. Filter gain. Additional gain/attenuation for a filter. Also described as the filter output gain/damping factor.

Values: 0 to 127, 64*

9. St. Filter stages. The more filter stages applied to a signal, the stronger (in general) the filtering. It is the number of additional times the filter will be applied (in order to create a very steep roll-off, such as 48 dB/octave). This dropdown element is shown in figure 60 "Filter Stage Dropdown" on page 83. Obviously, the more stages used, the more calculation-intensive the filter will be. This should also increase the latency (lag) of the filter.

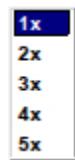


Figure 60: Filter Stage Dropdown

Also present in this sub-panel are the usual **Copy** and **Paste** buttons that call up a copy-parameters or paste-parameters dialog.

6.3 Stock Resonance Settings

Yoshimi provides for setting very arbitrary "resonance" settings for some sounds. In fact, "resonance" is too limiting a word. A lot of control over the spectrum is possible. The following dialog is used by the ADDsynth editor, figure 10.7 "ADDsynth / Resonance" on page 159, and the the PADsynth editor,

The resonance editor is brought on-screen via the **Resonance** button of the ADDsynth or PADsynth global part editors.

The resonance effect acts as a "resonance box" or a filter with arbitrary frequency response. This produces very realistic sounds. The cursor location is shown below the graph (the frequency, kHz, and the amplitude, dB).

Paul Nasca has a video on YouTube that includes a demonstration of how the resonance dialog works and affects the sound, if you care to look for it.

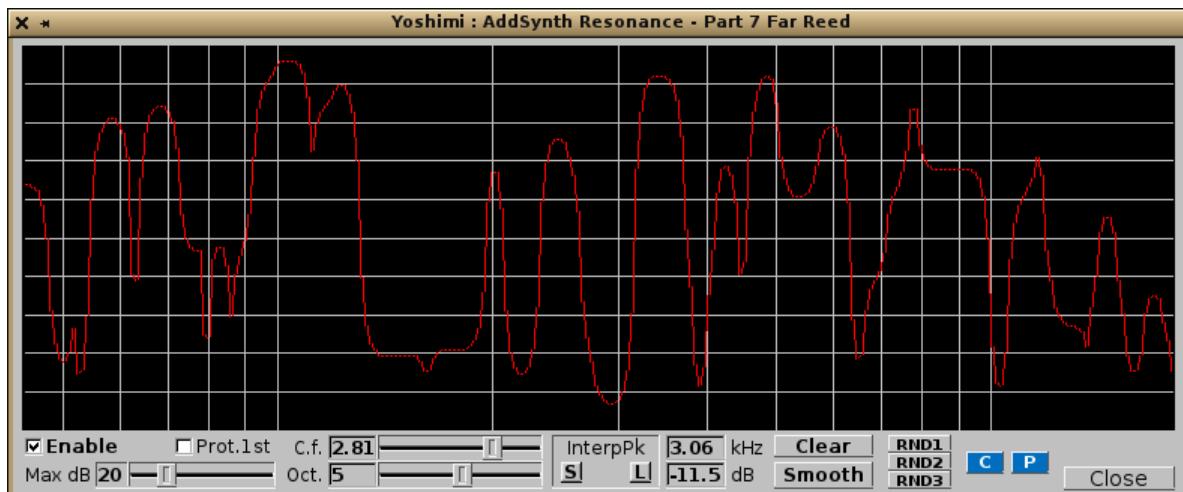


Figure 61: ADDsynth/PADsynth Resonance

1. Graph Window
2. Enable
3. Max dB
4. C.f.
5. Oct.
6. Prot.1st
7. InterpPk
8. KHz
9. dB
10. Zero
11. Smooth
12. RND1
13. RND2
14. RND3
15. C
16. P
17. Close

1. Graph Window. Resonance Graph Window. Lets one draw the resonance frequency response in "freehand" mode.

2. Enable. Resonance Enable. Turn the Resonance effect on.

Values: Off*, On

3. Max dB (wheel). The Maximum Amplitude (dB) wheel. Sets the amount of resonance: lower values have little effect. Use the roller below to set it.

Values: 1 to 90, 20*

4. C.f. (knob). Center Frequency (kHz). Sets the center frequency of the graph. The value is shown in the read-only text-box to the left.

Values: 0 to 127, 64* for 0.10 to 10.0, 1.0*

5. Oct. Number of Octaves. Sets the number of octaves the graph represents. The value is shown in the read-only text-box to the left.

Values: 0 to 127, 64* for 0 to 10, 5*

6. Prot.1st. Protect the fundamental Frequency. That is, do not damp the first harmonic.

Values: Off, On

7. InterpPk. Interpolate the resonance peaks. This setting used to be a weird one where the mouse button (left versus right) affected the kind of interpolation used, but also affects the next field as well, but in *Yoshimi* 1.3.9 the mechanism for interpolation has been made more clear. In addition, some of the controls have been changed to sliders for easier usage.

This setting allows one to make resonance functions very easily. To use it effectively, first, clear the graph using the **Clear** button. Click the left button on a position on the graph to create a peak (or do it more than once to create more peaks). Click either the **InterpPk S** button (smooth interpolation) or the **InterpPk L** button (linear interpolation). *Yoshimi* will interpolate automatically between the peaks drawn, as shown in figure 62 "ADDsynth/PADsynth Resonance Interpolated" on page 85, which shows smooth interpolation.

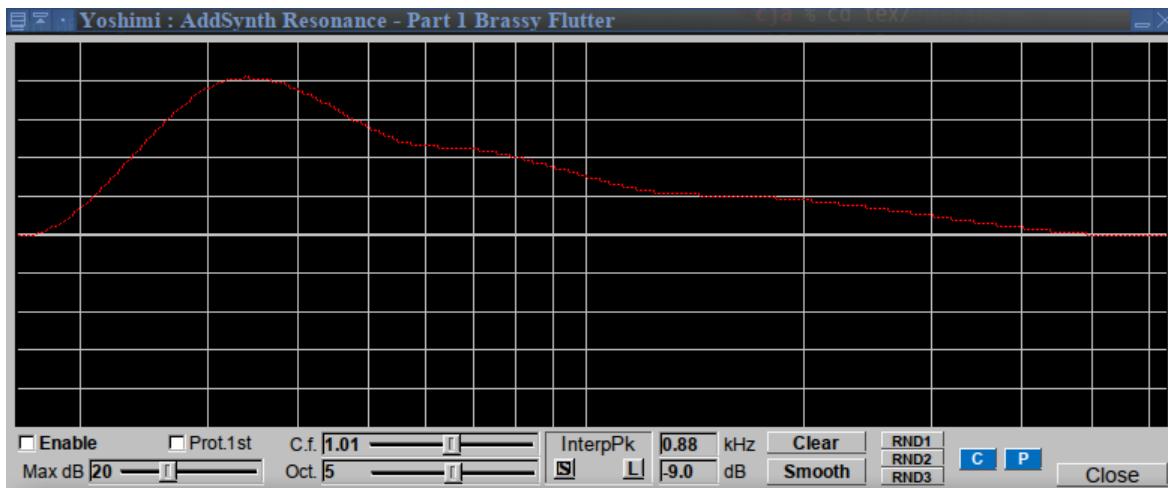


Figure 62: ADDsynth/PADsynth Resonance Interpolated

Please do not confuse this "smoothing" with the processing done using the **Smooth** button discussed below.

Also note that one can clear a part of the graph by dragging with the right mouse button. In fact, the **interpPk** functionality interpolates between non-zero values. Oh, and note that the **kHz** and **dB** fields update to match it. And don't forget to try the middle-click feature to see the corresponding command-line needed to achieve the setting.

8. KHz. The current frequency on graph.

9. dB. The current level on graph window.

Values: -90 to +90

10. Clear. Clear the resonance function. (Used to be called "Zero".) Clear the graph.

11. Smooth. Smooth the resonance function. Smooth the graph. This button causes each jagged portion of the graph to be smoothed. This smooth does not interpolate between the peaks, unlike the **InterpPk** functionality described earlier. Compare the interpolation shown in figure 62 "ADDsynth/PADsynth Resonance Interpolated" on page 85, and the smoothing shown in figure 63 "ADDsynth/PADsynth Resonance Smoothed" on page 86.

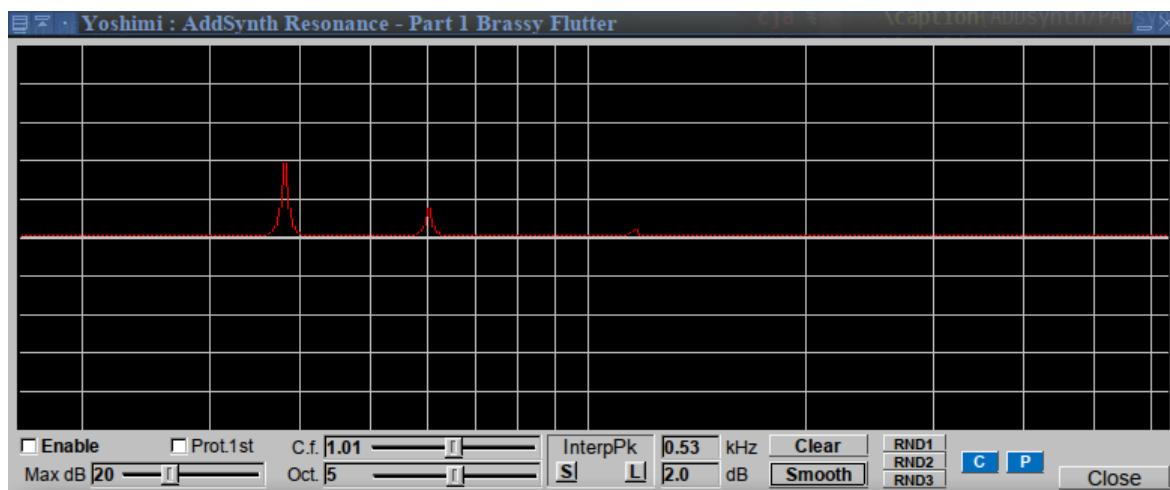


Figure 63: ADDsynth/PADsynth Resonance Smoothed

Note how the amplitude of the peaks is also reduced by the smoothing. Presumably, a frequency-smoothing window is applied to the peaks, thus making each new data-point a weighted average of the data-points around it. Don't forget to try the middle-click feature to see the corresponding command-line needed to achieve the setting.

12. RND1. Randomize the resonance function, 1. RND1, RND2, RND3 are used to create random resonance functions.

13. RND2. Randomize the resonance function, 2.

14. RND3. Randomize the resonance function, 3.

15. C. Copy Dialog.

16. P. Paste Dialog.

17. Close. Close.

6.4 LFO Settings

Yoshimi provides LFOs for its amplitude, frequency, and filtering functions. "LFO" means Low Frequency Oscillator. These oscillators are not used to make sounds by themselves, but they change parameters cyclically as a sound plays.

LFOs are, as the name says, oscillators with, compared to the frequency of the sound, low frequency. They often appear in order to control the effect.

6.4.1 LFO Basic Parameters

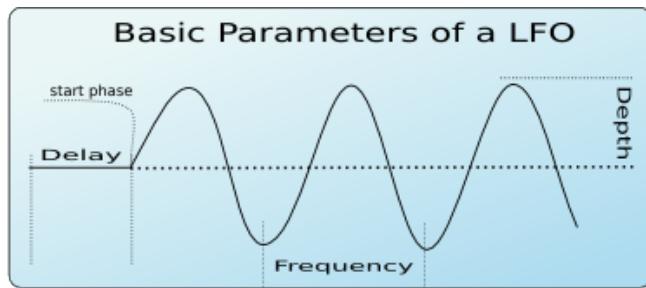


Figure 64: Basic LFO Parameters

1. **Delay**.
2. **Start Phase**.
3. **Frequency**.
4. **Depth**.

The LFOs have some basic parameters (see figure 64 "Basic LFO Parameters" on page 87).

1. **Delay.** LFO Delay. This parameter sets how much time takes since the start of the note to start the cycling of the LFO. When the LFO starts, it has a certain position called "start phase".
2. **Start Phase.** LFO Start Phase. The angular position at which a LFO waveform will start.
3. **Frequency.** LFO Frequency. How fast the LFO is (i.e. how fast the parameter controlled by the LFO changes.)
4. **Depth.** LFO Depth. The amplitude of the LFO (i.e. how much the parameter is controlled by the LFO changes.)

6.4.2 LFO Function

Another important additional LFO parameter is the shape or type of the LFO. There are many LFO Types that vary according to the function used to generate the LFO. *Yoshimi* supports the LFO shapes shown in figure 65 "LFO Functions" on page 88.

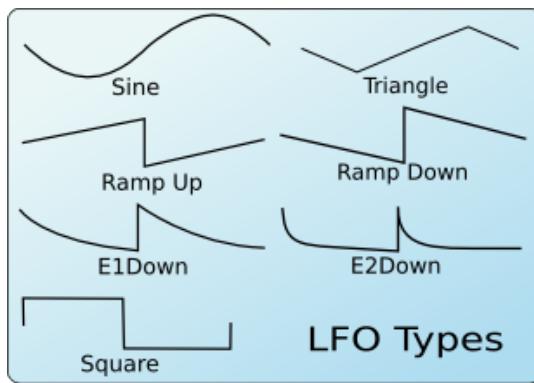


Figure 65: LFO Types, Shapes, or Functions

6.4.3 LFO Randomness

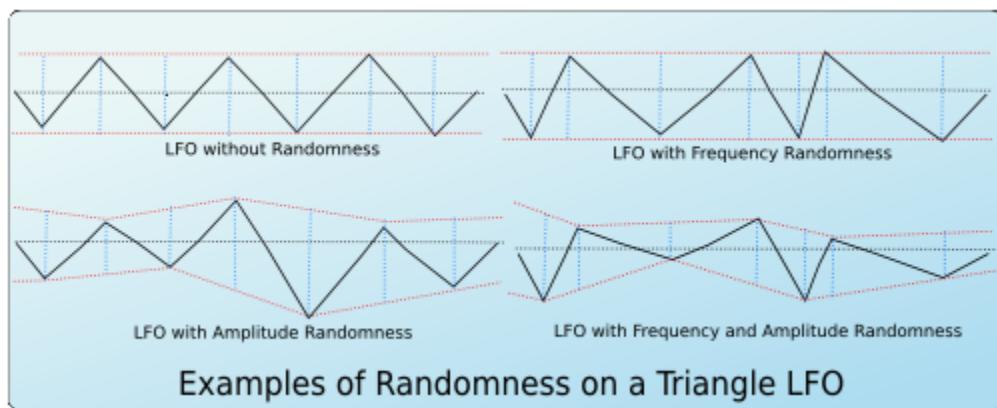


Figure 66: LFO Randomization

Another parameter is the LFO Randomness. It modifies the LFO amplitude or the LFO frequency at random. In *Yoshimi* one can choose how much the LFO frequency or LFO amplitude changes by this parameter. Observe figure 66 "LFO Randomization" on page 88. It shows some examples of randomness and how it changes the shape of a triangle LFO.

6.4.4 LFO, More Settings

Other settings are available as well.

Continuous mode: If this mode is used, the LFO will not start from "zero" on each new note, but it will be continuous. This is very useful if one applies on filters to make interesting sweeps.

Stretch: It controls how much the LFO frequency changes according to the notes frequency. It can vary from negative stretch (the LFO frequency is decreased on higher notes) to zero (the LFO frequency will be the same on all notes) to positive stretch (the LFO frequency will be increased on higher notes).

6.4.5 LFO User Interface Panels



Figure 67: Amplitude LFO Sub-Panel

In *Yoshimi*, LFO parameters are available for amplitude, filters, and frequency. They all have essentially the same interface elements. Note figure 67 "Amplitude LFO Sub-Panel" on page 89, which shows an example of an LFO stock sub-panel.

These parameters are:

1. **Freq**
2. **Depth**
3. **Start**
4. **Delay**
5. **A.R**
6. **F.R**
7. **C or C.**
8. **Str**
9. **Type**
10. **C (copy)**
11. **P (paste)**

1. Freq. LFO Frequency. This parameter varies from 0 to 1. We still need to figure out what that scale means, however. Obviously, it is a relative scale, and is perhaps related to the overall sampling frequency.

Values: 0 to 1, 0.63*

2. Depth. LFO Depth. Also called "LFO Amount".

Values: 0* to 127

3. Start. LFO Start Phase. If this knob is at the lowest value, the LFO Start Phase will be random.

Values: 0 = random, to 127, 64*

4. Delay. LFO Delay.

Values: 0* to 127

5. A.R. LFO Amplitude Randomness.

Values: 0* to 127

6. F.R. LFO Frequency Randomness.

Values: 0* to 127

7. C. LFO Continous Mode.

Values: Off*, On

8. Str. LFO Stretch. See the image in figure 67 "Amplitude LFO Sub-Panel" on page 89. It shows that the LFO stretch is set to zero, though the tooltip would show it to be 64.

Values: 0 to 127, 64*

9. Type. LFO Function. Also present in this sub-panel are the usual **Copy** and **Paste** buttons that call up a copy-parameters or paste-parameters dialog.

Values: SINE*, TRI, SQR, R.up, R.dn, E1dn, E2dn



Figure 68: LFO Function Type Drop-down

10. Type. LFO Type (or Shape, or Function). The various shapes of LFO functions are shown in figure 65 "LFO Functions" on page 88. The values that can be selected are shown in figure 68 "LFO Type Drop-down" on page 90. Also present in this sub-panel are the usual **Copy** and **Paste** buttons that call up a copy-parameters or paste-parameters dialog.

Values: SINE*, TRI, SQR, R.up, R.dn, E1dn, E2dn

For reference, figure 69 "Filter LFO Sub-Panel" on page 90 shows the LFO sub-panel for a filter, and figure 71 "Frequency LFO Sub-Panel" on page 91 shows the LFO sub-panel for frequency.

6.4.6 Filter LFO Sub-panel



Figure 69: Filter LFO Sub-Panel

1. **Enable** (present on some versions of this sub-panel).
2. **Freq.**
3. **Depth**
4. **Start**
5. **Delay**
6. **Str.**
7. **C.**
8. **A.R.**
9. **F.R.**
10. **Type**
11. **C**
12. **P**

1. Enable. Enable the panel. (Present on some versions of this sub-panel).

2. Freq. LFO Frequency.

Values: 0 to 1, 0.64*

3. Depth. LFO Amount.

Values: 0* to 127

4. Start. LFO Startphase (leftmost is random).

Values: 0 to 127, 64*

5. Delay. LFO Delay.

Values: 0* to 127

6. Str. LFO Stretch.

Values: 0 to 127, 64*

7. C. Continuous LFO.

Values: Off*, On

8. A.R. LFO Amplitude Randomness.

Values: 0* to 127

9. F.R. LFO Frequency Randomness.

Values: 0* to 127

10. Type. LFO Type.



Figure 70: LFO Function Type Dropdown

Values: SINE*, TRI, SQR, R.up, R.dn, E1dn, E2dn

11. C. Copy to Clipboard/Preset.

12. P. Paste from Clipboard/Preset.

6.4.7 Frequency LFO Sub-panel



Figure 71: Frequency LFO Sub-Panel

This panel is basically identical to the Filter LFO panel described in the previous section.

6.5 Envelope Settings

Envelopes control how the amplitude, the frequency, or the filter changes over time. The general envelope generator has four sections:

1. **Attack.** The attack is the initial envelope response. It begins when the key for the note is first held down (at Note On). The volume starts at 0, and rises fast or slowly until a peak value. In *Yoshimi*, the attack is always linear.
2. **Decay** When the attack is at its highest value, it immediately begins to decay to the sustain value. The decay can be fast or slow. The attack and decay together can be used to produce something like horn blips, for example.
3. **Sustain** This is the level at which the parameter stays while the key is held down, i.e. until a Note Off occurs.
4. **Release** When the key is released, the sound decays, either fast or slowly, until it is off (the volume is 0).

Together, these values are called "ADSR". The ADSR envelope generally controls the amplitude of the sound. In *Yoshimi*, amplitude envelopes can be *linear* or *logarithmic*.

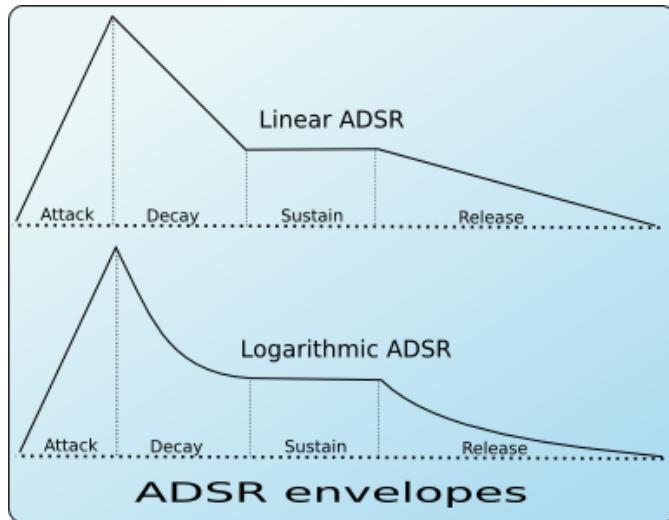


Figure 72: ADSR Envelope (Amplitude)

See figure 72 "ADSR Envelope (Amplitude)" on page 92, it shows a depiction of an ADSR envelope. The ADSR is mostly applied to amplitude envelopes.

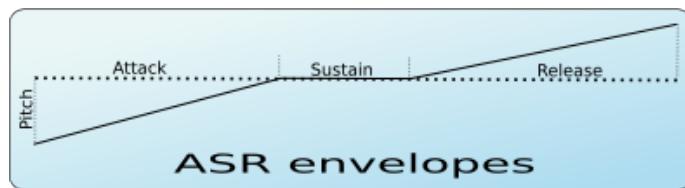


Figure 73: ASR Envelope, Frequency

Frequency envelopes control the frequency (more exactly, the pitch) of the oscillators. The following image depicts the stages of these envelopes.

For frequency envelopes, a simpler form of envelope is used. This envelope is an ASR envelope, shown in figure 73 ”ASR Envelope, Frequency” on page 92. The dotted line represents the real pitch of the sound without the envelope. The frequency envelopes are divided into 3 stages:

1. **Attack.** It begins at the Note On. The frequency starts from a certain value and glides to the real frequency of the note.
2. **Sustain.** The frequency stays the same during the sustain period.
3. **Release.** This stage begins on Note Off and glides the frequency of the note to a certain value.

6.5.1 Amplitude Envelope Sub-Panel



Figure 74: Amplitude Envelope Sub-Panel

1. **A.dt**
2. **D.dt**
3. **S.val**
4. **R.dt**
5. **Str**
6. **L**
7. **frcR**
8. **C**
9. **P**
10. **E**

1. A.dt. Attack duration, attack time. We need to determine the units of time at play for ADSR durations.

Values: 0* to 127

2. D.dt. Decay duration, decay time.

Values: 0 to 127, 44*

3. S.val. Sustain value. This is the (relative?) level at which the envelope will settle while the note is held down. The only stage that always remains defined is the Sustain, where the envelopes freezes until a Note Off event.

Values: 0 to 127*

4. R.dt. Release time.

Values: 0 to 127, 25*

5. Str. Stretch. How the envelope is stretched according the note. Envelope Stretch means that, on lower notes, the envelope will be longer. On the higher notes the envelopes are shorter than lower notes. In the leftmost value, the stretch is zero. The rightmost use a stretch of 200%; this means that the envelope is stretched about 4 times per octave.

Values: 0 to 127, 64*

6. L. Linear envelope. If this option is set, the envelope is linear, otherwise, it will be logarithmic.

Values: Off*, On

7. frcR. Forced release. This means that if this option is turned on, the release will go to the final value, even if the sustain stage is not reached. Usually, this must be set. If this option is turned on, the release will go to the final value, even if the sustain level is not reached. Also present in this sub-panel are the usual Copy and Paste buttons that call up a copy-parameters or paste-parameters dialog.

Values: Off, On*

8. C. Copy to Clipboard/Preset.

9. P. Paste from Clipboard/Preset.

10. E. Amplitude Envelope Editing Window. Described in the next section.

6.5.2 Envelope Settings

This section describes the **Amplitude Envelope Editing** window.



Figure 75: Amplitude/Filter/Frequency Envelope Editor

1. Graph Window

2. FreeMode

3. C

4. P

5. Close

1. FreeMode. Freemode Enable. Enables the envelope editor's Free Mode. See the next section for details.

Values: Off*, On

6.5.3 Freemode Envelope Settings

The envelope panels are parts that control a parameter (such as the frequencies) of a sound. For all envelopes, there is a mode that allows the user to set an arbitrary number of stages and control points. This mode is called *Freemode*. The only stage that always remains defined is the Sustain, where the

envelopes freezes until a Note Off event. The Freemode envelope editor has a separate window to set the parameters and controls.

The main concept of the freemode editor window is the *control point*. One can move the points using the mouse. In the right on the window, it shows the total duration of the envelope. If the mouse button is pressed on a control point, it will be shown the duration of the stage where the point is.

[figure 76 "Amplitude/Filter/Frequency Envelope Freemode Editor" on page 95](#) shows an example of the stock Freemode envelope editor, with Freemode enabled.



Figure 76: Amplitude/Filter/Frequency Envelope Freemode Editor

All of the envelope editors have some common controls.

1. **Graph Window**
2. **Add point**
3. **E**
4. **FreeMode**
5. **Add point**
6. **Delete point**
7. **Sust**
8. **Stretch**
9. **L**
10. **frcR**
11. **Close**
12. **C**
13. **P**

1. E. Editor. Graph Window. Shows a window with the real envelope shape and the option to convert to Freemode to edit it. The envelope editor shows a window in which one can view and modify the detailed envelope shape, or convert it to Freemode to edit it almost without restriction. By default, only the *Freemode* button/checkbox is visible.

If an envelope has FreeMode enabled, it allows one to edit the graph of the envelope directly. Select a point from the graph and move it. Notice that *only the line before the currently edited point of the envelope* changes its duration. As the point is dragged, the text on the right shows the duration of the line before it. Otherwise, the text shows the total duration of the envelope.

If the envelope doesn't have the FreeMode mode enabled, it doesn't allow one to move the points; the envelope window is then useful only to see what happens if one changes the ADSR settings.

2. FreeMode. FreeMode. Provides a mode where completely arbitrary envelopes may be drawn. Actually, the envelopes aren't completely arbitrary, as the sustain section is always flat, and its duration corresponds with the duration the note is held down. When this mode is enabled, the rest of the controls shown in figure 76 "Amplitude/Filter/Frequency Envelope Freemode Editor" on page 95 appear, and are described in the following paragraphs.

Values: Off*, On

3. Add point. Add point. Provides a way to add a data point to the Freemode envelope. It adds the point after the currently-selected point. One can select a point by clicking on it.

4. Delete point. Delete point. Provides a way to delete the current data point from the Freemode envelope.

5. Sust. Sustain point. Sets the sustain point. The sustain point is shown using the yellow line. If the point is at 0, then sustain is disabled. It is difficult to determine the difference between 1 and 2.

1. 0 means that sustain is disabled, and the envelope immediately starts dying, even if the note is held.
2. 1 seems to mean the sustain curve follows its course while the note is held.
3. 2 seems to mean that extra sustain kicks in after the note is released.

Values: 0, 1, 2*

6. Stretch. Envelope Stretch. How the envelope is stretched according the note. On the higher notes the envelopes are shorter than lower notes. At the leftmost value, the stretch is zero. The rightmost sets a stretch of 200%; this means that the envelope is stretched about four times/octave.

7. L. Envelope Linear. This setting is only available in the amplitude envelope. If enabled, the envelope is linear. If not enabled, the envelope is logarithmic (dB).

Values: Off*, On

8. frcR. Forced Release. This means that if this option is turned on, the release will go immediately to the final value, even if the sustain stage is not reached. Usually, this must be set. When the key is released, the position of the envelope jumps directly to the point after the release point. If the release is disabled, the envelope position jumps to the last point on release.

Values: Off*, On

9. Close. Close Dialog.

Also present in this sub-panel are the usual **Copy** and **Paste** buttons that call up a copy-parameters or paste-parameters dialog, as well as a button to bring up the editor window.

6.5.4 Envelope Settings, Frequency

These envelopes controls the frequency (more exactly, the pitch) of the oscillators. Observe figure 73 "ASR Envelope, Frequency" on page 92. It depicts the stages of these envelopes. The dotted line represents the real pitch of the sound without the envelope.

The frequency envelopes are divided into 3 stages: attack (see 1.); sustain (see 3.); and release (see 4.).

One question to answer is: can the attack and release go in the opposite directions, or do the knob ranges prohibit this?



Figure 77: Frequency Envelope Sub-Panel

1. **Enable** (present on some versions of this sub-panel).
2. **A.value or A.val**
3. **A.dt**
4. **R.dt**
5. **R.val** (present on some versions of this sub-panel).
6. **Stretch**
7. **frcR**
8. **C**
9. **P**
10. **E**

For Frequency Envelopes the interface has the following parameters:

1. Enable. Enable the panel. (Present on some versions of this sub-panel).

2. A.val. Attack value. We need to figure out what this means.

Values: 0 to 127, 64*

3. A.dt. Attack duration. Attack time.

Values: 0 to 127, 40*

4. R.dt. Release time.

Values: 0 to 127, 60*

5. R.val. Release Value. Actually present only on the Frequency Env sub-panel.

Values: 0 to 127, 64*

6. Stretch. Envelope Stretch. Envelope Stretch (on lower notes make the envelope longer).

Values: 0 to 127, 64*

7. frcR. Forced release. If this option is turned on, the release will go to the final value, even if the sustain level is not reached.

Values: Off, On*

Also present in this sub-panel are the usual **Copy** and **Paste** buttons that call up a copy-parameters or paste-parameters dialog, as well as a button to bring up the editor window.

6.5.5 Envelope Settings for Filter

This envelope controls the cutoff frequency of the filters. The filter envelopes are divided into 4 stages:

1. **Attack.** It begins at the Note On. The cutoff frequency starts from a certain value and glides to another value.
2. **Decay.** The cutoff frequency continues to glide to the real cutoff frequency value of the filter (dotted line).

3. **Sustain.** The cutoff frequency stays the same during the sustain period (dotted line).
4. **Release.** This stage begins on Note Off and glides the filter cutoff frequency of the note to a certain value.



Figure 78: Filter Envelope Sub-Panel

1. **A.value**
2. **A.dt**
3. **D.val**
4. **D.dt**
5. **R.dt**
6. **Stretch**
7. **frcR**
8. **L**

Filter Envelopes has the following parameters:

1. A.value. Attack Value. Starting Value. We need to figure out what this means.

Values: 0 to 127, 64*

2. A.dt. Attack Duration. Attack Time.

Values: 0 to 127, 40*

3. D.val. Decay Value.

Values: 0 to 127, 64*

4. D.dt. Decay Duration. Decay Time.

Values: 0 to 127, 70*

5. R.dt. Release time.

Values: 0 to 127, 60*

6. Stretch. Stretch. Envelope Stretch (on lower notes make the envelope longer).

Values: 0 to 127, 64*

7. frcR. Forced Release. If this option is turned on, the release will go to the final value, even if the sustain level is not reached.

Values: Off, On*

Also present in this sub-panel are the usual **Copy** and **Paste** buttons that call up a copy-parameters or paste-parameters dialog, as well as a button that bring up the editor window.

8. L. If this option is set, the envelope is linear, otherwise, it will be logarithmic.

Values: Off*, On

6.5.6 Formant Filter Settings

This window allows one to change most of the parameters of the formant filter. It is reached by enabling a **FILTER** panel, changing the **Category** value to *Formant*, and then clicking the **Edit** button that sits below the category drop-down list.

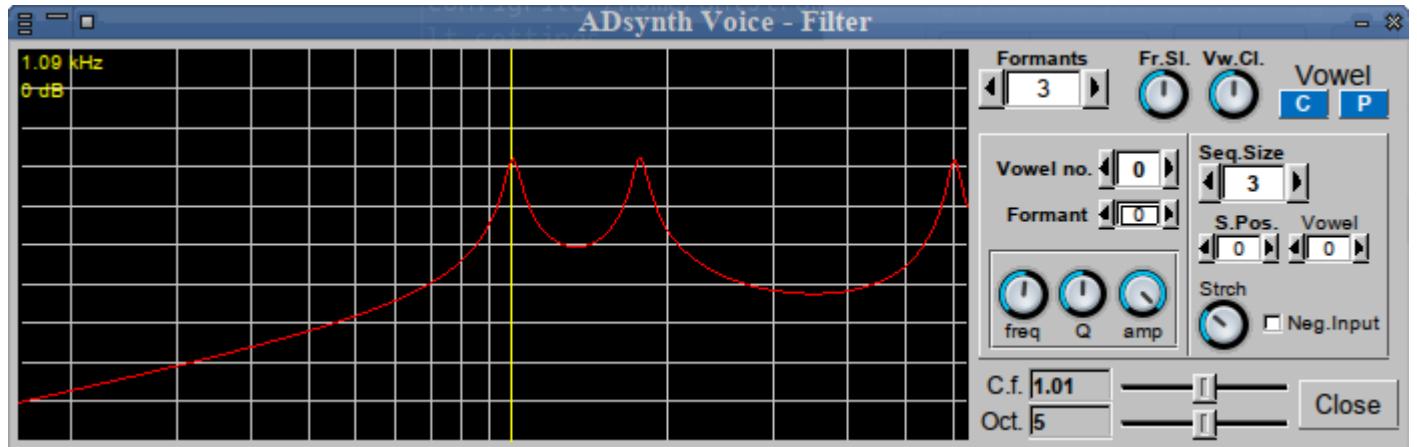


Figure 79: Formant Filter Editor Dialog

This editor dialog provides a lot of functionality:

1. **Formants**
2. **Fr.Sl.**
3. **Vw.Cl.**
4. **C.f.**
5. **Oct.**
6. **Vowel no.**
7. **Formant**
8. **freq**
9. **Q**
10. **amp**
11. **Seq.Size**
12. **S.Pos.**
13. **Vowel**
14. **Strtch**
15. **Neg Input**

6.5.6.1 Formant Parameters

9. Formants. Number of Formants Used.

Values: 1 to 12, 3*

10. Fr.Sl. Formant Slowness. This parameter prevents too-fast morphing between vowels.

Values: 0 to 127, 64*

11. Vw.Cl. Vowel "Clearness". Sets how much the vowels are kept "clear", that is, how much "mixed" vowels are avoided.

Values: 0 to 127, 64*

12. C.f. Center Frequency. This slider control changes the center frequency of the graph, in relative units. Not quite sure how to describe this one, so play with the slider and see (and hear) for yourself.

Values: 0.09 to 10.00, 1.0*

13. Oct. Number of Octaves. This slider controls the number of octaves shown in the graph.

Values: 0 to 10

6.5.6.2 Formant Vowel Parameters

14. Vowel no. Vowel Number. The number of the current vowel. Each number represents a different vowel, and leads to a gross change in the shape of the formant spectrum. We do not yet have a mapping between the numbers and which vowel is represented.

Values: 0 to 5

15. Formant. Formant Number. The current formant to be emphasized or modified. The vertical marker in the graph moves as this value is changed.

Values: 0 to 11

16. freq. Formant Frequency. The frequency of the current formant. This knob changes the frequency of the formant peak selected by the Formant Number control.

Values: 0 to 127

17. Q. Formant Resonance, Formant Q. The Q (resonance depth or bandwidth) of the current formant. Used to sharpen or make the current formant sound dull.

Values: 0 to 127

18. amp. Formant Amplitude. Controls the amplitude of the current formant. Initially, one will want to set this to the maximum value.

Values: 0 to 127

6.5.6.3 Formant Sequence Parameters

The sequence represents what vowel is selected to sound according to the input from the filter envelopes and LFO's. We need to learn a bit about how this setup actually works.

19. Seq Size. Sequence Size. The number of vowels in the sequence.

Values: 1 to 7

20. S.Pos. Sequence Position. The current position of the sequence.

Values: 0 to 6

21. Vowel. Vowel Position. The vowel from the current position.

Values: 0 to 5

22. Strtch. How the sequence is stretched. This number probably means that the duration of the sequence decreases as the pitch of the selected notes increase.

Values: 0 to 127

23. Neg Input. Negative Input. If enabled, the input from the envelope or LFO control is reversed.

Values: off, on

6.6 Clipboard Presets

In many of the settings panels, there are buttons labelled **C**, **P**, and **E**. **E** is the editor window, discussed in section 6.5.3. **C** and **P** are the clipboard/preset copy and paste dialogs, respectively. These buttons allow cut-and-paste for shorter sections of the XML configuration.

The preset dialog also provides a way to save a preset to a preset file. The naming convention for a preset file is `presename.presettype.xpz`, where *presename* is the name one types into the **Copy to Preset** name field, *presettype* is the name that appears in the **Type** field, and *xpz* is the file-extension for compressed XML preset files.

The presets are stored in the current default preset directory, which is normally `~/.config/yoshimi/presets`. Preset directories can be added to the list, and the default preset directory can be changed. See section 5.4 "Menu / Paths" on page 68.

6.6.1 Clipboard/Preset Copy

Note that figure 80 "Copy to Clipboard" on page 101 shows an example of the copying dialog for the clipboard.

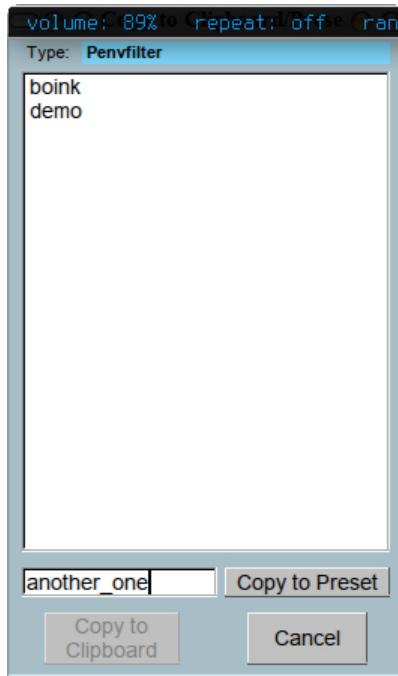


Figure 80: Copy to Clipboard/Presets

1. **Type.** Clipboard type for copying. This field indicates the context (e.g h. "envamplitude") or name of the clipboard to which the data will be copied. If the preset is saved/copied to a file, this field becomes the second part of the preset's file-name.
2. **Clipboard list.** Clipboard list. This itemm is actually a list of preset files available to be selected for this block of *Yoshimi* settings.
3. **Copy to Preset.** Clipboard to preset. Provides a way to specify the preset (and, indirectly, the preset file) to which this data should be copied.

To save to a preset, type the desired name of the setting. This entry will enable this button. When the button is pressed, the preset will be saved to the default preset directory. Be sure to set up a default present directory where ordinary users have write permissions! A good choice for a preset directory is `~/.config/yoshimi/presets`. The file-name of the of the preset will be a non-hidden file such as

```
my_preset.ADnoteParameters.xpz
```

The middle part of this name is shown near the top of the preset dialog, as a cue. There is no way in *Yoshimi* to change this part of the file-name. And don't do it using file system commands! Modify the first part of the file-name to distinguish it from other versions of the preset. Only the type-name will ever be visible in the *Yoshimi* presets **Type** field.

Note that *Yoshimi* ships with a number of non-hidden .xpz files.

4. Copy to Clipboard. Copies the preset to the clipboard.

6.6.2 Clipboard/Preset Paste

Observe figure 81 "Paste from Clipboard" on page 102. It shows an example of the pasting dialog for the clipboard.

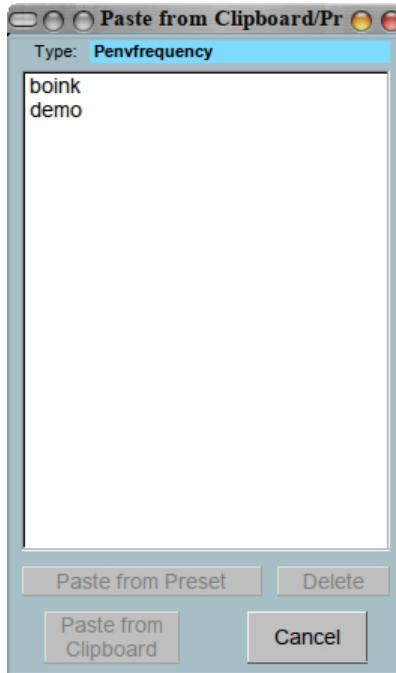


Figure 81: Paste from Clipboard/Presets

1. Add point
2. Type
3. Clipboard list
4. Paste from Preset
5. Paste from Clipboard

1. **Type.** Clipboard type for pasting. This field indicates the context (e.g h. "envamplitude") or name of the clipboard to which the data will be copied.
2. **Clipboard list.** Clipboard list.
3. **Paste from Preset.** Paste from preset. Provides a way to specify the preset to which this data should be copied.
4. **Paste from Clipboard.** Clipboard to preset.

7 Top Panel

The *Yoshimi* top panel provides quick access to some major features of the application. The top panel is shown in figure 2 "Yoshimi Main Screen, 1.4.1" on page 19.

Here are the major elements of the top panel.

1. **Stop!**
2. **Panel**
3. **VirKbd**
4. **Key Shift**
5. **Detune**
6. **Reset Detune**
7. **Volume**

1. **Stop!.** Stop! This button causes *Yoshimi* to "Cease all sound immediately!"

2. **Panel.** This button brings up a panel that shows a "mixer" view of all of the parts that have been created in the current state of *Yoshimi*.

For the details of this panel, see section 7.1 "Mixer Panel Window" on page 104.

3. **VirKbd.** This button brings up the virtual keyboard, which is a way to enter MIDI information without a real MIDI keyboard. It also provides a way to use the computer keyboard for faster playing. See section 7.2 "Virtual Keyboard" on page 106.

4. **Key Shift.** Master Key Shift. This is the key-shift (transpose) that applies to all parts, in units of semitones. In recent versions of *Yoshimi*, this range has been extended. Also note that the master key shift can be set via the user-interface, the command-line, or (we suspect) by MIDI NRPN commands.

Values: -36 to 36, 0*

5. **Detune.** Detune. Provides a global fine detune functionality. The fine detune mapping to the knob values shown below is -64 to 63 cents.

Values: 0 to 127, 64* (float)

6. **Reset, Detune.** Reset detune. Resets the overall detuning functionality of *Yoshimi* off. Resets the global fine detune to 0.

7. **Volume.** Volume, Master Volume. Controls the overall volume of all sounds generated by *Yoshimi*.

Values: 0 to 127, 90*

7.1 Mixer Panel Window

The *Mixer Panel* button opens the mixer panel window, sometimes called the "Mixer" window. The mixer panel window provides a global view of the most important adjustable parameters of all of the defined parts. There are two views, a 2x8 view and a 2x16 view. See [figure 82 "Yoshimi Part Panel"](#) on page [105](#), which shows the 2x8 view.

The Panel Window allows one to edit some important part parameters (instrument/volume/panning/etc.) and it acts like a mixer. Also, this window shows VU-meters for each part. To make a part the current part, left-click on its **Edit** button. To edit an instrument, right-click on the **Edit** button for that instrument.

When using the JACK audio backend, parts can be individually routed or sent to the main L/R outputs, either by themselves, or working with the main Left and Right outputs at the same time. This is controlled from the panel window, and the settings are saved with all the other parameters.

The individual part outputs will have the part effects, and any **Insertion** effects that are linked to them, but not the **System** effects. Direct part outputs carry the part and insertion effects, but not system ones.

Yoshimi used to register all parts with JACK by default, but that is a bit much now that 64 parts are available, so now *Yoshimi* uses an "on demand" model.

In the mixer panel window one will see a field just above the **Edit** button. This field determines the audio destination on a part-by-part basis, defaulting to just the main L+R pair. The direct part outputs are only exposed on parts that are active, and have the destination set to either **part** or **both**. Once activated, they will remain in place for the entire session, even if the part is later disabled or routed to main only. This is so that other programs won't see links suddenly disappear, although they will become silent. This setting is preserved in *Yoshimi*'s patch sets and will be re-instated when next loaded.

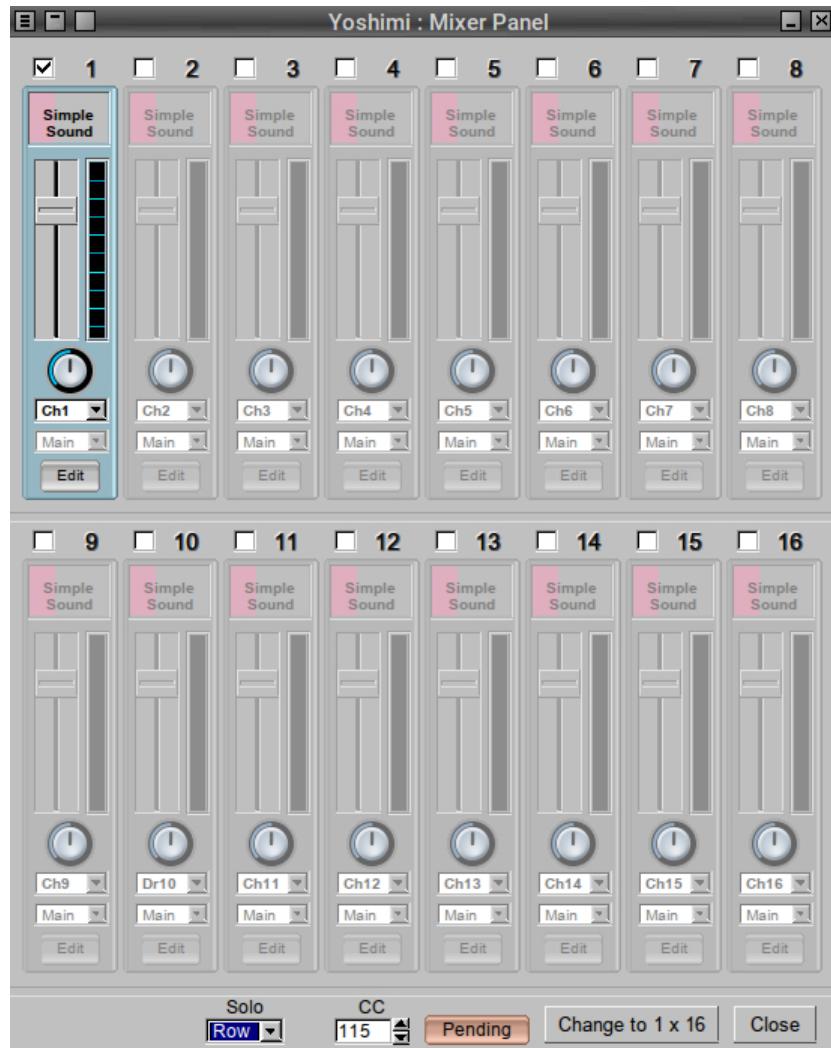


Figure 82: Yoshimi Part Panel, 2x8 View

This dialog has been updated recently; there is now a **Solo** control, described below.

1. Part Summary. Parts View or Summary.

2. Enable part. Enable/Disable the part. The check-box enables/disables the part. When the part is disabled, its controls are greyed out.

Values: Off*, On

3. Part name. Instrument name. Click on this box to change the instrument (it will open up the Edit window).

4. Volume Slider. Volume Bar. Changes the volume of the part.

5. VU-meter display. Shows the level of the part when playing.

6. Panning Knob. Panning Dial-Button. Changes the panning of the part.

Values: 0 (left) to 64* (center) to 127 (right)

7. Channel. Receive from MIDI channel. Changes the MIDI channel assigned to the part.

Values: Ch1*, Ch2, ..., Ch16

8. Main. Set Audio Destination. Sets the audio for this part to be routed to the main audio output, to the audio specified by the part setup, or to both outputs. This option requires that *Yoshimi* use JACK audio. If running ALSA, this option is disabled (greyed out). The part's audio destination (JACK) is saved with the parameter sets, and so is the number of available parts. (*ZynAddSubFX* will still load these files, but it ignores any settings it doesn't recognise. If one re-saves in *ZynAddSubFX*, the settings will be lost.)

Values: **Main, Part, or Both**

9. Edit. The Edit button provides two function Left mouse button: Part select. Right mouse button: Instrument edit. This setup is a bit unintuitive, but the tooltips make it clear which click one might want to use.

10. Solo. There are two commands that change the way *Yoshimi* responds to incoming MIDI, so that only one of a group of instruments will see note-on events, but all of the group will see note-off ones. These commands are both in the **Mixer Panel**.

Values: **Off*, Row, Col, Loop**

The **Solo** drop-down list enables the feature for either **Row** or **Column** mode, and also makes the CC spin-box visible.

One uses this spin-box to set which incoming CC changes the part that gets new notes. The value this CC sends performs the actual change, instantly and silently. Most importantly it leaves any existing notes sounding through a note off release and the effects tail.

In **Row** mode the whole of the first 16 parts are ostensibly receiving on channel 1. This mode is most useful if one wants to play live through a piece with multiple instrument changes while playing. It works best with a foot switch that internally stores a channel number and increments/decrements it with every press, then sends it.

Although this uses all of the first 16 parts, one can set the number of parts to 32, so that one can use the 17+ row for normal 1 through 16 channels. Also, if one has **vector control** set up, **Solo** intelligently recognises this fact, and, for each vector it finds, it will switch in/out the whole vector column appropriately.

For running **Solo** in **Column** mode, one needs to have 32 or (preferably) 64 parts set; with this setup, one can have up to 4 parts switched per channel, and independently of each other. However, this works more like vector control in that you have to switch in groups of 16. For example, to control the channel 4 column one would send 4, 20, 36, 52 to select the wanted part. This usage is more appropriate for post recording MIDI automation.

For both of these modes, if one has a programmable MIDI controller, one can set it up to activate a specific part, or the increment/decrement which part in the set is active.

TODO. Describe loop **Solo** mode!!!

11. Parts Layout. Changes the layout of the panel to the other layout, either **Change to 2 x 8** or **Change to 1 x 16**.

12. Close. Close the window.

7.2 Virtual Keyboard

This section describes the detailed usage of the *Yoshimi* virtual keyboard. The virtual keyboard lets one play notes using the keyboard/mouse. There is no MIDI requirement.

Using the keyboard: The keyboard is split into two "octaves" (in fact it is more than 1 octave). It may happen that the keys will not trigger any note-on. This is because another widget than the keyboard itself is selected. In order to continue playing using the keyboard, click with the mouse on some keys on the virtual keyboard.

Using the mouse: One can use the mouse too, to play. If one presses the shift key while pressing the mouse button, the keys will be not released when the mouse button is released. If one presses the **Stop!** or "Panic" button from the *ZynAddSubFX/Yoshimi* main window, all keys will be released.



Figure 83: Yoshimi Virtual Keyboard

7.2.1 Virtual Keyboard, Basics

1. **Pwh**
2. **R**
3. **Midi Channel**
4. **Velocity**
5. **Velocity**
6. **Octave**
7. **"qwer.." Oct**
8. **"zxcv.." Oct**
9. **Controller**
10. **Cval**
11. **Close**

13. Pwh. Pitch bend knob. Pitch wheel. Press the **R** button to reset it.

14. R. Reset Pitch Bend.

15. Midi Channel. MIDI Channel. Sets the MIDI channel for the virtual keyboard.

Values: 1* to 16

16. Velocity. Velocity of Notes. Sets the note-on velocity for the virtual keyboard.

Values: 1 to 127, 100*

17. Velocity. Velocity Randomness.

Values: 0* to 127

18. Octave. Transposes all of the virtual keyboard notes by the given number of octaves.

Values: 1, 2*, 3, 4, 5

19. "qwer.." Oct. q2w3e4r5t6y Octave. Transposes the upper keys ("qwerty"); the range of these keys is from C-4 to A-5 (replace the '5' with the octave).

20. "qwer.." Oct. zsxdcfgbh Octave. Transposes the lower keys ("zxcvb"); the range of these keys is from C-3 to E-4 (replace the '4' with the octave).

Values: 1, 2*, 3, 4, 5

21. Controller. Keyboard Controller.

Values: 01:Mod.Wheel, 07:Volume, 10:Panning, 11:Expression, 64:Sustain, 65:Portamento, 71:Filter Q, 74:Filter Freq*, 75:Bandwidth, 76:FM Gain, 77:Res.c.freq, 78:Res.bw.

Sets the controller to be changed according to the **Cval** controller. See section [7.2.3 "Virtual Keyboard, Controllers"](#) on page [108](#).

22. Cval. Controller value. Changes the controller value. This item consists of two parts. The top part shows a tiny number representing the current value of the selected controller. The bottom part is a combination value-bar and slider that one can move up and down with the mouse, to change the controller value. Note that the **Cval** value might not reflect the internal value of the controller when one changes the controller.

Values: 1 to 127, 96*

23. Close. Close button.

7.2.2 Virtual Keyboard, ASCII Mapping

In addition to this virtual keyboard, the QWERTY (or Dvorak, or AZERTY) keyboards can be used to produce notes. The computer keyboard layout is shown in figure [19 "QWERTY Virtual Keyboard Layout"](#) on page [46](#). From lowest octave to highest, the colors are blue, then green, then red. The "white" keys are the light colors, and the "black" keys are the deeper colors. The range of the keys on the "zxcvb..." row is C3 to E4. The range of the keys on the "qwerty..." row is C4 to A5. These octave ranges can be adjusted.

The computer keyboard will produce notes only when the virtual keyboard is active. Also note that we replaced the monopoly symbol with the monopolist symbol. On X11 systems, this key is known as the "Super" key.

7.2.3 Virtual Keyboard, Controllers

This section (will give) a brief overview of the controller's that this window supports.

1. **01: Mod. Wheel**
2. **07: Volume**
3. **10: Panning**
4. **11: Expression**
5. **64: Sustain**
6. **65: Portamento**
7. **71: Filter Q**
8. **74: Filter Freq.**
9. **75: Bandwidth**
10. **76: FM Gain**
11. **77: Res. c. freq**
12. **78: Res. bw.**

The following figure shows the corresponding drop-down list of controller values, each preceded by its MIDI control number, re 1.



Figure 84: Virtual Keyboard Controllers

One question worth answering is if these controls, when changed, emit MIDI messages to change the control, versus them simply affecting the current playback.

1. **Mod. Wheel.** Sets the MIDI modulation value. This control will only have an effect on certain instruments. (It has no effect on the "Simple Sound", for example).
2. **Volume.** Controls the overall volume of the instrument being played by the virtual keyboard.
3. **Panning.** Controls the left-right location of the sounds played by the virtual keyboard.
4. **Expression.** Controls the expression. This probably can have different effects depending on the instrument. For example, with the "Simple Sound", this control is a lot like volume.
5. **Sustain.** Controls the sustain duration. This works even with the "Simple Sound". Using it makes even this virtual keyboard capable of some "virtuoso" expression.
6. **Portamento.** Controls the time of transition from one pitch to another. Using it makes even this virtual keyboard capable of some "virtuoso" expression.
7. **Filter Q.** Controls the sharpness of the filters used in an instrument. Generally requires a complex instrument to take effect. For example, try this control with the "Weird Pad" instrument in the "Fantasy" bank.
8. **Filter Freq.** Controls the center frequency of the filters used in an instrument. Generally requires a complex instrument to take effect. For example, try this control with the "Weird Pad" instrument in the "Fantasy" bank.
9. **Bandwidth.** Controls the frequency bandwidth of the filters used in an instrument.
10. **FM Gain.** TODO. Haven't found a sound that exercises this control. Haven't looked all that hard yet.
11. **Res. c. freq.** TODO. Not sure how this differs from **Filter Freq.**. Haven't found a sound that exercises this control. Haven't looked all that hard yet.
12. **Res. bw.** TODO. Not sure how this differs from **Bandwidth**. Haven't found a sound that exercises this control. Haven't looked all that hard yet.

8 Effects

The *Yoshimi* Effects panel provides a number of special effects that can be applied to parts. Effects are, generally, blackboxes that transform audio signals in a specified way. More exactly, the only input data

for an effect in *ZynAddSubFX* is an array of samples, which is read on line. The output is the transformed array of samples.

As described, effects have no information about anything else. For example, key presses are not recognized. Therefore, pressing a key does not initiate the LFO. Phase knobs will always be relative to a global LFO, which is only dependent on the system time.

Wetness determines the mix of the results of the effect and its input. This mix is made at the effects output. If an effect is wet, it means that nothing of the input signal is bypassing the effect. If it is dry, then the effect has no effect.

The Effects panel is shown in figure 2 ”[Yoshimi Main Screen, 1.4.1](#)” on page 19.

Note that these effects have been incorporated into a separate guitar-effects project called *Rakkarrak* [11].

There are two types of effects: System effects and Insertion effects. The System effects apply to all parts and allows one to set the amount of effect that applies to each part. Also, it is possible to send the output of one system effect to another system effect. In the user interface this is shown as ”source -<destination”. For example: The **0 -<1** knob controls how much of the system effect 0 is sent to system effect 1.

Insertion effects are described in section [8.1.2 ”Effects / Panel Types / Insertion”](#) on page 114.

8.1 Effects / Panel Types

There are three variations of Effects sub-panels:

- **System Effects.**
- **Insertion Effects.**
- **Part/Instrument Effects.**

Here are the major elements of the main effects panel, which shows the System and Insertion effects tabs.

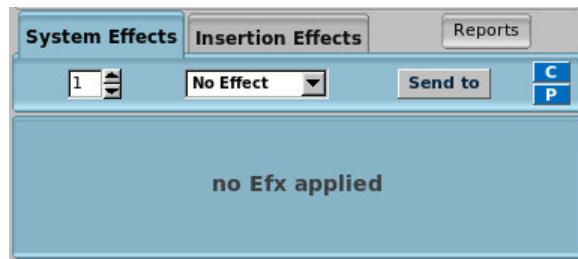


Figure 85: System Effects Dialog

1. **System Effects Tab**
2. **Effect Number**
3. **Effect Name**
4. **Send to**
5. **C**
6. **P**
7. **Effects Panel**
8. **Insertion Effects Tab**
9. **Reports**

1. System Effects Tab. System Effects Tab. The items in this tab are described in the next few paragraphs.

2. Effect Number. Effect Number. Up to 8 effects can be supported at one time by one part.

3. Effect Name. Effect Name.

Values: No Effect*, Reverb, Echo, Chorus, Phaser, AlienWah, Distortion, EQ, DynFilter



Figure 86: Effects Names

4. Send to. Effects Send To. Each knob controls how much of the system effect indicated by the left number is sent to the system effect indicated by the right number.

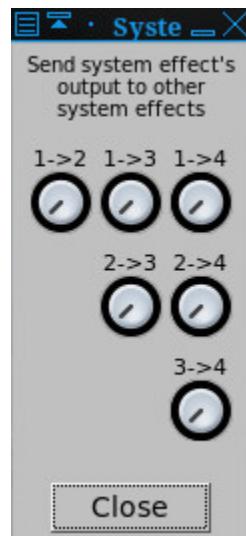


Figure 87: Effects, Send To

5. C. Copy-to-clipboard Dialog. We need to learn more about how this dialog gets populated.

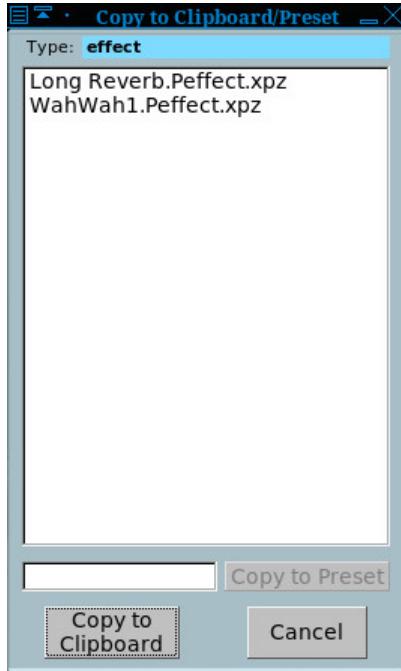


Figure 88: Effects / Copy To Clipboard

Note that, in recent versions of *Yoshimi*, the Type label at the top is not "effect", but "Peffect". What does this mean?

6. P. Paste-from-clipboard Dialog. We need to learn more about how this dialog gets populated.

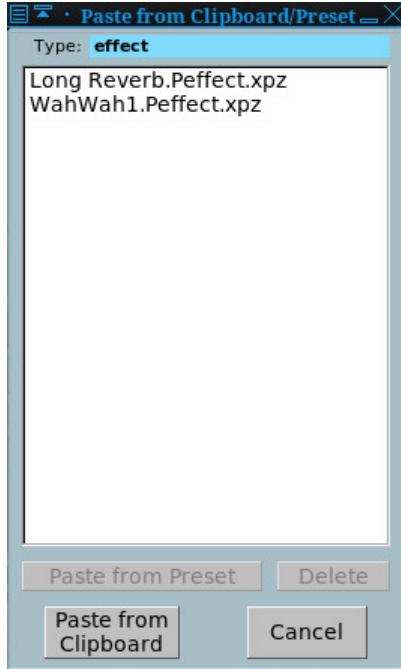


Figure 89: Effects / Paste From Clipboard

7. Effects Panel. Effects Panel. This area is filled by the controls for the selected effect.

8. Insertion Effects Tab. Insertion Effects Tab. The items in this tab are described below, in the [8.1.2](#) sub-section.

9. Reports. Effects Reports.



Figure 90: Effects / Reports

The next sub-sections show the variations on the effects panels, using the DynFilter effect as the subject effects panel.

8.1.1 Effects / Panel Types / System

The first variation appears when you enable an effect in the **System Effects** panel of the main Yoshimi dialog. It contains the standard controls for the given effect, plus the following interface items.



Figure 91: Sample System Effects Dialog

1. Effect number
2. Effect selection
3. Effect Filter
4. C
5. P

8.1.2 Effects / Panel Types / Insertion

The second effects variation appears when you enable an effect in the **Insertion Effects** panel of the main **Yoshimi** dialog. It contains the standard controls for the given effect, plus the following interface items.



Figure 92: Sample Insertions Effects Dialog

1. Effect number
2. Effect selection
3. To
4. C
5. P

The insertion effects apply to one part or to the master output. One may use more than one insertion effect for one part or the master output. If one uses more than one effect, the effects with smaller indexes will be applied first (eg. first insertion effect 0 occurs, then effect 1, and so on). If the part selected for insertion effect is "-1" then the effect will be *disabled*; if the part is "-2" the effect will be applied to Master Out.

1. To. Send the Effect To.

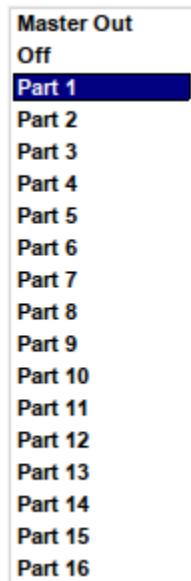


Figure 93: Part Selection Dropdown

8.1.3 Effects / Panel Types / Instrument

There is also a "part" or "instrument" effects window which is accessed by going to the main window, clicking the **Edit** button in the bottom panel to open the edit dialog, and then clicking the **Effects** button there. The part effects window has the same layout as System and Insertion effects; it is now almost identical to Insertion effects.

It contains the standard controls for the given effect, plus the following interface items.

1. Effect number
2. Effect selection
3. To (part-selection-dropdown.png)
4. C
5. P
6. Bypass
7. Close

"To" values:

Values: Master Out, Off, Part 1, Part 2, ..., Part 16



Figure 94: Sample Instrument Effects Dialog

Note the extra **Bypass** check-box, which presumably can be used to bypass this effects box in a given part. Also be aware that some of the effects dialogs have been modified in the latest revisions of *Yoshimi*.

8.2 Effects / None

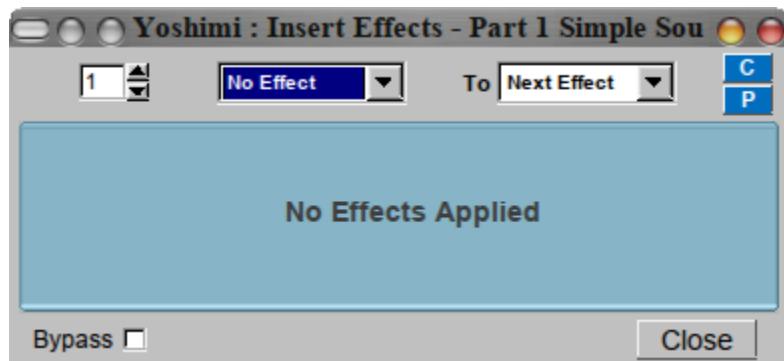


Figure 95: Effects Edit, No Effect

This dialog form is reversed (top and bottom) with the latest *Yoshimi*, and slightly simplified in appearance.

8.3 Effects / DynFilter

A dynamic filter is, as the name says, a filter which changes its parameters dynamically, dependent on the input and current time. In *ZynAddSubFX*, frequency is the only variable parameter. It can be used as an "envelope following filter" (sometimes referenced "Auto Wah" or simply "envelope filter").

8.3.1 Effects / DynFilter / Circuit

Though this filter might look a bit complicated, it is actually easy. We divide the parameters into two classes:

- Filter Parameters are the ones obtained when one clicks on Filter. They give the filter its basic settings.
- Effect Parameters are the other ones that control how the filter changes.

The filter basically works like this: The input signal is passed through a filter which dynamically changes its frequency. The frequency is an additive of:

- The filters base frequency.
- An LFO from the effect parameters.
- The "amplitude" of the input wave.

The amplitude of the input wave is not the current amplitude, but the so called "Root Mean Square (RMS)" value. This means that we build a mean on the current amplitude and the past values. How much the new amplitude takes influence is determined by the Amplitude Smoothness (see below).

RMS value plays an important role in the term *loudness*. A fully distorted signal can sound 20 db louder due to its higher RMS value. This filter takes this into account, depending on the smoothness.

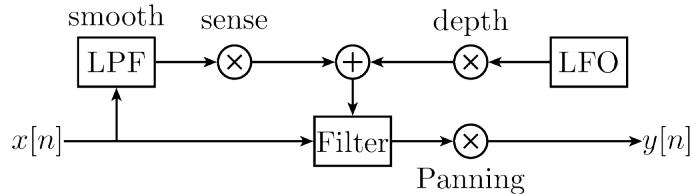


Figure 96: Dynamic Filter Circuit Diagram

8.3.2 Effects / DynFilter / User Interface

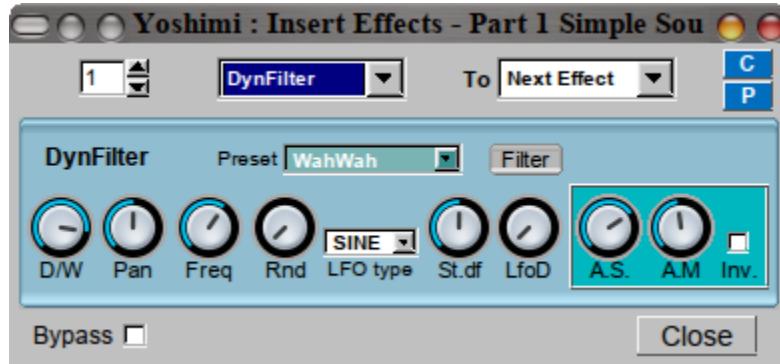


Figure 97: Effects Edit, DynFilter

This figure shows the Part/Instrument variation of the DynFilter sub-panel. The System/Insertion variation has the following elements.

1. **Preset**
2. **Filter**
3. **Vol** (system/insertion) or **D/W** (part/instrument)
4. **Pan**
5. **Freq**
6. **Rnd**
7. **LFO Type**
8. **St.df**
9. **LfoD**
10. **A.S.**
11. **A.M.**
12. **Inv.**

This figure shows an additional section, in the bottom panel of the effect's user-interface. See section [8.10.2 "Effects / Reverb / User Interface"](#) on page [132](#), which describes these elements in more detail. However, it seems that all but the **bypass** control and the **Close** button have been removed from the latest versions of *Yoshimi*.

1. **FX No.** (an unlabelled number "wheel")
2. **bypass** (bottom panel)
3. **EffType** (now unlabelled, obvious from context)
4. **To** (where the effect is sent to)
5. **C**
6. **P**
7. **Close** (bottom panel)

The four controls in the middle of the middle panel (**Freq**, **Rnd**, **LFO Type**, and **St.df**) control the LFO. Let's start with the user-interface elements present in the System/Insertion variation of this effect.

- 1. Preset.** DynFilter Preset.

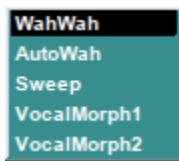


Figure 98: DynFilter Presets

Values: WahWah, AutoWah, Sweep, VocalMorph1, VocalMorph2

2. Filter. DynFilter Filter.

This small button brings up Filter Params stock sub-panel item. This stock user-interface item is shown and described in section [6.2.5 "Filter Parameters User Interface"](#) on page [82](#).

3. Vol. DynFilter Volume.

Values: 0 to 127

If the effect is used as a System effect, then this control appears.

4. D/W. DynFilter Dry/Wet Mix Setting.

Values: 0 to 127

If the effect is used as an Insertion effect, then this control appears. "Dry" means the unprocessed signal and "wet" means the processed signal.

5. Pan. DynFilter Panning.

Values: 0 to 127

After the input signal has passed through the filter, Pan can apply panning.

6. Freq. DynFilter LFO Frequency.

Values: 0 to 127

7. Rnd. DynFilter LFO Randomness.

Values: 0 to 127

8. LFO Type. DynFilter LFO Type.

9. St.df. DynFilter LFO. Left/right channel phase shift.

10. LfoD. DynFilter LFO Depth. This control is one that helps define the mix of the LFO and the amplitude.

11. A.S. DynFilter A.S. This control is one that helps define the mix of the LFO and the amplitude. A.S sets the Amplitude Sensing (i.e. how much influence the amplitude shall have).

12. A.M. DynFilter A.M. One of two knobs let one control the way how the RMS value of the amplitudes is measured. A.M sets the Amplitude Smoothness (this is described above). The higher one sets this value, the more slowly will the filter react.

13. Inv.. DynFilter A.Inv. One of two knobs let one control the way how the RMS value of the amplitudes is measured. A.Inv., if set, negates the (absolute) RMS value. This will lower the filter frequency instead of increasing it. Note that this will not have much effect if the effects input is not very loud.

8.3.3 Effects / DynFilter / NRPN Values

Effects can be controlled via "non-registered parameter numbers", or NRPNs. This section will eventually (we hope) detail the NRPN values supported by the DynFilter effect.

For more information on the concept of NRPNs, see section [2.5.3 "Concepts / MIDI / NRPN"](#) on page [29](#).

8.4 Effects / AlienWah

AlienWah is a nice effect done by Paul Nasca. It resembles a vocal morpher or wahwah a bit, but it is more strange. That's why he called it "AlienWah". The effect is a feedback delay with complex numbers.

The AlienWah effect is a special, dynamic formant filter. Paul Nasca named it AlienWah because it sounded "a bit like wahwah, but more strange". The result of the filter is a sound varying between the vocals "Ahhhhh" (or "Uhhhhh") and "Eeeeeee".

8.4.1 Effects / AlienWah / Circuit

No diagram, just a description of AlienWah.

Hint: Keep in mind that Effects that can be controlled by LFO can also be controlled arbitrarily: Set the LFO depth to zero and manipulate the phase knob (e.g. with NRPNs or maybe via OSC in the future).

The way that the filter moves between the two vocals is mainly described by an LFO. A bit easified, Paul Nasca has stated the formula (for $i2 = -1$ and $R < 1$) as

$$fb = R * (\cos() + i * \sin())$$

$$yn = yn - delay * R * (\cos() + i * \sin()) + xn * (1 - R).$$

The input xn has the real part of the samples from the wavefile and the imaginary part is zero. The output of this effect is the real part of yn . i is the phase.

8.4.2 Effects / AlienWah / User Interface

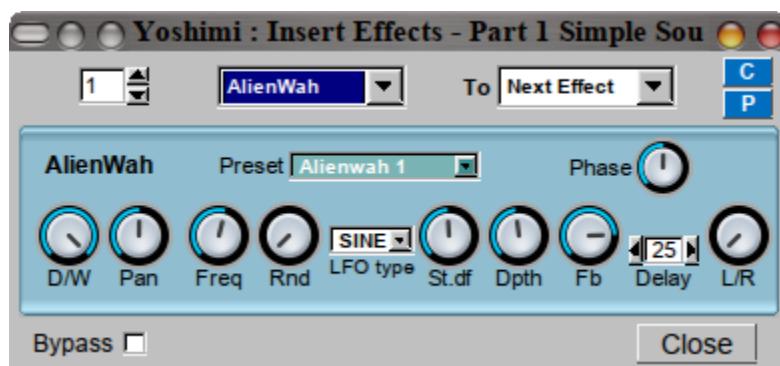


Figure 99: Effects Edit, AlienWah

1. Preset

2. **Phase**
3. **Vol or D/W**
4. **Pan**
5. **Freq**
6. **Rnd**
7. **LFO type**
8. **St.df.**
9. **Dpth**
10. **Fb.**
11. **Delay**
12. **L/R**

1. Preset. AlienWah Preset.

Values: AlienWah 1, AlienWah 2, AlienWah 3, AlienWah 4

2. Phase. The phase of the AlienWah. See in the above formula. This lets one set where the vocal is between "Ahhhhh" and "Eeeeeee".

3. Vol. AlienWah Volume.

Values: 0 to 127

The volume control is present if this effect is used as an insertion effect.

4. D/W. AlienWah Dry/Wet.

Values: 0 to 127

The **Vol** control is replaced by this control if the effect is used as an Insertion effect.

5. Freq. LFO Frequency.

Values: 0 to 127

Determines the LFOs frequency in relative units.

6. Rnd. LFO Amplitude Randomness.

Values: 0 to 127

Part of the LFO definition.

7. LFO type. Set the LFO shape.

Values: SINE, TRI

Part of the LFO definition. Note that the LFO in other contexts has ramps and exponential shapes that are not present here.

8. St.df. AlienWah Left/Right Channel Phase Difference.

Values: 0 to 127

Part of the LFO definition. Sets the phase difference between LFO for left/right channels. **St.df** lets one determine how much left and right LFO are phase shifted. 64.0 means stereo, higher values increase the right LFO relatively to the left one.

9. Dpth. LFO depth.

Values: 0 to 127

Dpth is a multiplier to the LFO. Thus, it determines the LFO's amplitude and its influence.

10. Delay. Amount of delay before the feedback.

Values: 1 to 100

If this value is low, the sound is turned more into a "wah-wah"-effect.

11. Fb. AlienWah Feedback.

Values: 0 to 127

TODO: What is the effect of the AlienWah feedback setting?

12. L/R. Determines how the left/right channels are routed to output:

- *Leftmost/0*. Left to left and right to right.
- *Middle/64*. Left+right to mono.
- *Rightmost/127*. Left to right, and right to left.

L/R applies crossover at the end of every stage. This is currently not implemented for the Analog Phaser.

13. Subtract. The output is inversed (inverted?)

8.4.3 Effects / AlienWah / NRPN Values

Effects can be controlled via "non-registered parameter numbers", or NRPNs. This section details the value supported by the AlienWah effect.

8.5 Effects / Chorus

In a chorus, many people sing together. Even if each of them sings at exactly the same frequency, all their voices usually sound different. We say they have a different timbre. Timbre is the way we perceive sound and makes us differ between different music instruments. This is, physically, achieved by varying both the amplitude envelope and the frequency spectrum. Multiple sounds with slightly different timbres make a sound more shimmering, or powerful. This is called the chorus effect.

The chorus effect can be achieved by multiple people singing together. In a concert, there are many instruments, resulting in the same effect. When making electronic music, we only have an input wave and need to generate these different timbres by ourselves. ZynAddSubFX therefore simply plays the sound, pitch modulated by an LFO, and adds this to the original sound. This explains the diagram below: The multiple pitches are generated by a delayed version of the input. This version is being pitched by an LFO. More detailed, this pitch is generated by varying the reading speed of the delayed sound; the variation amount is controlled by an LFO.

Related effects to Chorus are Flangers. Flangers can be described as Chorus with very short LFO delay and little LFO depth. One can imagine a flanger as two copies of a sound playing at almost the same time. This leads to interference, which can be clearly heard. It is popular to apply flangers to guitars, giving them more "character".

8.5.1 Effects / Chorus / Circuit

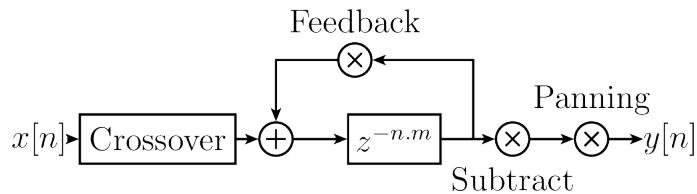


Figure 100: Chorus Circuit Diagram

First, crossover is applied.

The Freq, Rnd, LFO Type, St.df, Depth knobs control the LFO for the pitch. If the depth is set to zero, the pitch will not be changed at all.

Delay is the time that the delayed sound is delayed "on average". Note that the delay also depends on the current pitch.

After the correct element of the sound buffer is found using the LFO, the Fb knob lets one set how loud it shall be played. This is mostly redundant to the D/W knob, but we have not applied panning and subtraction yet.

Next, the signal can be negated. If the Subtract Checkbox is activated, the amplitude is multiplied by -1.

Finally, Pan lets one apply panning.

8.5.2 Effects / Chorus / User Interface

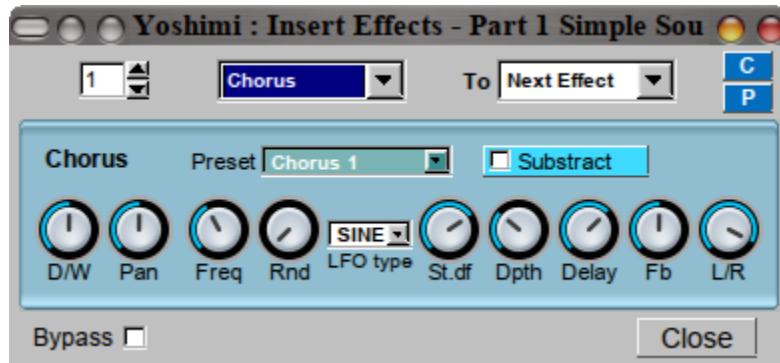


Figure 101: Effects Edit, Chorus

1. Freq
2. Rnd
3. LFO type
4. St.df.
5. Dpth
6. Delay
7. Fb.
8. L/R

9. **Subtract** (still misspelled as "Substract")
1. **Freq.** Chorus LFO Frequency.
2. **Rnd.** Chorus LFO randomness.
3. **LFO type.** Set the LFO shape.
4. **St.df.** The phase difference between LFO for left/right channels .
5. **Dpth.** Chorus LFO depth.
6. **Delay.** Delay of the chorus. If one uses low delays and LFO depths, this will result in a flanger effect.
7. **Fb.** Chorus Feedback.
8. **L/R.** How the left/right channels are routed to output:
 1. leftmost. Left to left and right to right.
 2. middle. Left+right to mono.
 3. rightmost. Left to right, and right to left.
9. **Subtract.** The Chorus output is inversed (inverted?)

8.5.3 Effects / Chorus / NRPN Values

Effects can be controlled via "non-registered parameter numbers", or NRPNs. This section details the value supported by the Chorus effect.

8.6 Effects / Distortion

Distortion means, in general, altering a signal. Natural instruments usually produce sine-like waves. A wave is transformed in an unnatural way when distortion is used. The most distorted waves are usually pulse waves. It is typical for distortion to add overtones to a sound. Distortion often increases the power and the loudness of a signal, while the dB level is not increased. This is an important topic in the Loudness War.

As distortion increases loudness, distorted music can cause ear damage at lower volume levels. Thus, one might want to use it carefully. Distortion can happen in many situations when working with audio. Often, this is not wanted. In classical music, for example, distortion does not occur naturally. However, distortion can also be a wanted effect. It is typical for Rock guitars, but also present in electronic music, mostly in Dubstep and DrumNBass.

The basic components of distortion are mainly

- A preamplifier.
- The waveshaping function.
- Filters.

Preamplification changes the volume before the wave is shaped, and is indeed the amount of distortion. For example, if one clips a signal, the louder the input gets, the more distortion one will get. This can have different meanings for different types of distortions, as described below.

The filters are practical. A reason for using them afterwards is that distortion can lead to waves with undesired high frequency parts. Those can be filtered out using the LPF. A reason for using filters before

applying is to achieve multiband distortion. ZynAddSubFX has no "real" multiband distortion by now, however.

The topic of types of distortion is discussed in the Oscillator Section.

Note that one can use the Oscillator editor in order to find out what the distortion effect does. Also note that while the Oscillator editors distortion is limited to some oscillators one can produce in the Oscillator editor, the distortion effect can be used on every wave that one can generate with ZynAddSubFX.

8.6.1 Effects / Distortion / Circuit

We explain the functionality in a diagram and list the components below.

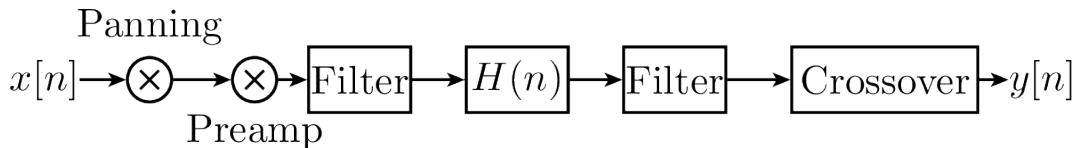


Figure 102: Distortion Circuit Diagram

Negation is the first thing to happen. If the Neg Checkbox is activated, the amplitude is multiplied by -1.

Panning is applied. Note, however, that one must activate the Stereo Checkbox, labelled St, before.

Pre-amplification is done next. The amount can be changed using the Drive nob. Indeed, this is the amount of distortion. For example, if one clips a signal, the louder the input gets, the more distortion one will get. This can have different meanings for different types of distortion, as described above.

HPF and LPF are filters with 2 poles. Whether they are used before or after the waveshape, depends on the checkbox labeled PF.

The next step is the wave shape. This defines how the wave is actually modified. The Type ComboBox lets one define how. We will discuss some types below.

After the wave shape, we scale the level again. This is called output amplification. One can change the value using the Level knob.

Crossover is the last step. This is controlled by the knob LR Mix and means that afterwards, a percentage of the left side is applied to the right side, and, synchronously, the other way round. It is a kind of interpolation between left and right. If one sets the LR Mix to 0.0, one will always have a stereo output.

8.6.2 Effects / Distortion / User Interface

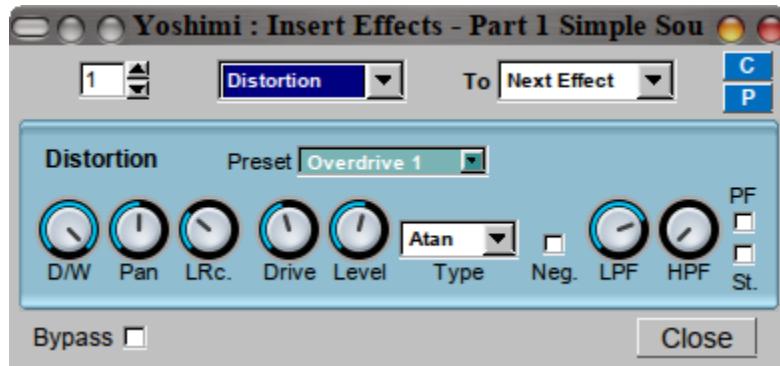


Figure 103: Effects Edit, Distortion

1. **Drive**
2. **Level**
3. **Type**
4. **Neg.**
5. **LPF**
6. **HPF**
7. **St.**

- 1. Drive.** Set the amount of distortion.
- 2. Level.** Amplify or reduce the signal after distortion.
- 3. Type.** Set the function of the distortion (like arctangent, sine).
- 4. Neg.** Negates the amplitude (invert the signal).
- 5. LPF.** Low Pass Filter.
- 6. HPF.** High Pass Filter.
- 7. St.** Set the distortion mode (stereo or mono, checked is stereo).

8.6.3 Effects / Distortion / NRPN Values

Effects can be controlled via "non-registered parameter numbers", or NRPNs. This section details the value supported by the Distortion effect.

8.7 Effects / Echo

The echo effect, also known as delay effect, simulates the natural reflection of a sound. The listener can hear the sound multiple times, usually decreasing in volume. Echos can be useful to fill empty parts of songs with.

8.7.1 Effects / Echo / Circuit

The good circuit diagram is shown in an old printout we have, but the current version of the Echo description at <http://zynaddsubfx.sourceforge.net/Doc/> shows a junk file. So Paul Nasca's description will have to suffice.

In ZynAddSubFX, the echo is basically implemented as the addition of the current sound and a delayed version of it. The delay is implemented as in the picture below. First, we add the delayed signal to the effect input. Then, they pass an LP1. This shall simulate the effect of dampening, which means that low and especially high frequencies get lost earlier over distance than middle frequencies do. Next, the sound is delayed, and then it will be output and added to the input.

The exact formula in the source code for the dampening effect is as follows:

$$Y(t) := (1 - d)X(t) + dY(t - 1)$$

where t be the time index for the input buffer, d be the dampening amount and X,Y be the input, respective the output of the dampening. This solves to

$$Y(z) = Z(Y(t)) = (1 - d)X(z) + dY(z)z - 1H(z) := Y(z)X(z) = 1 - d1 - dz - 1$$

which is used in $Y(z) = H(z)X(z)$. So $H(z)$ is indeed a filter, and by looking at it, we see that it is an LP1. Note that infinite looping for $d=1$ is impossible.

8.7.2 Effects / Echo / User Interface



Figure 104: Effects Edit, Echo

TODO (yoshimi): Pan lets one apply panning of the input.

1. **Delay**
2. **LRdl.**
3. **LRc.**
4. **Fb.**
5. **Damp**

- 1. Delay.** The delay time of one echo.
- 2. LRdl.** Left-Right-Delay. The delay between left/right channels. If it is set to the middle, then both sides are delayed equally. If not, then the left echo comes earlier and the right echo comes (the same amount) later than the average echo; or the other way round. Set the knob to 0 to hear on the right first.
- 3. LRC.** Echo Crossover. The "crossing" between left/right channels.
- 4. Fb.** Echo feedback. Feedback describes how much of the delay is added back to the input. Set Fb. to the maximum to hear an infinite echo, or to the minimum to just hear a single repeat.
- 5. Damp.** Echo damping. How high frequencies are damped in the Echo effect. The Damp value lets the LP1 reject higher frequencies earlier if increased.

8.7.3 Effects / Echo / NRPN Values

An equalizer is a filter effect that applies different volume to different frequencies of the input signal. This can, for example, be used to "filter out" unwanted frequencies. ZynAddSubFXs implementations follow the "Cookbook formulae for audio EQ" by Robert Bristow-Johnson. (NEED A REFERENCE)

Effects can be controlled via "non-registered parameter numbers", or NRPNs. This section details the value supported by the Echo effect. TODO.

8.8 Effects / EQ

EQ is a parametric equalizer. On the equalizer graph there are 3 white vertical bars for 100Hz, 1kHz, 10kHz.

8.8.1 Effects / EQ / Circuit

8.8.2 Effects / EQ / User Interface

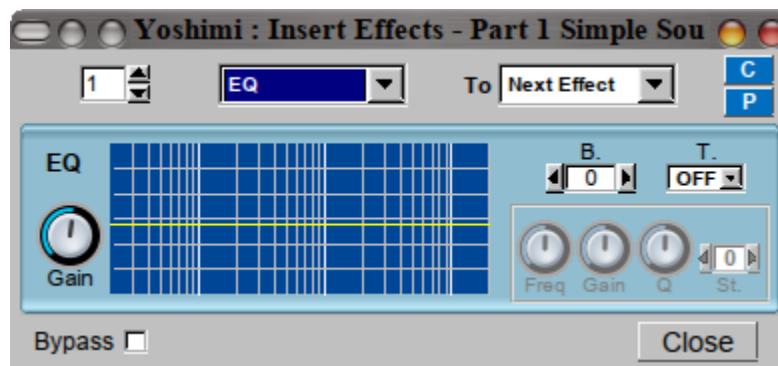


Figure 105: Effects Edit, EQ

We describe all parts of the GUI here. The term passband (or often just "band") refers to the amount of frequencies which are not significantly attenuated by the filter.

1. Gain
2. B

- 3. **T**
- 4. **Freq**
- 5. **Gain**
- 6. **Q**
- 7. **St**

Global:

- 1. Gain.** Amplifies or reduce the signal that passes through EQ.
- 2. B.** Set the current frequency band (or filter). B lets one choose the passband number. Multiple passbands define one filter. This is important if one wants multiple filters to be called after each other. Note that filters are commutative.

Bands:

- 3. T.** Set the type of the filter.
- 4. Freq.** The frequency of the filter. Freq describes the frequencies where the filter has its poles. For some filters, this is called the "cutoff" frequency. Note, however, that a bandpass filter has two cutoff frequencies.
- 5. Gain.** The gain of the filter. Gain is only active for some filters and sets the amount of a special peak these filters have. Note that for those filters, using the predefined gain makes them effectless.
- 6. Q.** The Q (resonance, or bandwidth) of the filter. Resonance lets one describe a peak at the given frequency for filters with 2 poles. This can be compared to real physical objects that have more gain at their resonance frequency.
- 7. St.** Number of additional times the filter will be applied (in order to do very steep roll-off - eg. 48 dB/octave). St. lets one define multiple filter stages. This is equivalent to having multiple copies of the same filter in sequence.

8.8.3 Effects / EQ / NRPN Values

Effects can be controlled via "non-registered parameter numbers", or NRPNs. This section details the value supported by the EQ effect.

TODO.

8.9 Effects / Phaser

The Phaser is a special dynamic filter. The result is a sweeping sound, which is often used on instruments with a large frequency band, like guitars or strings. This makes it typical for genres like rock or funk, where it is often modulated with a pedal, but also for giving strings a warm, relaxing character.

8.9.1 Effects / Phaser / Circuit

No circuit diagram, just a picture of the results of the phaser effect in the form of a spectrogram.

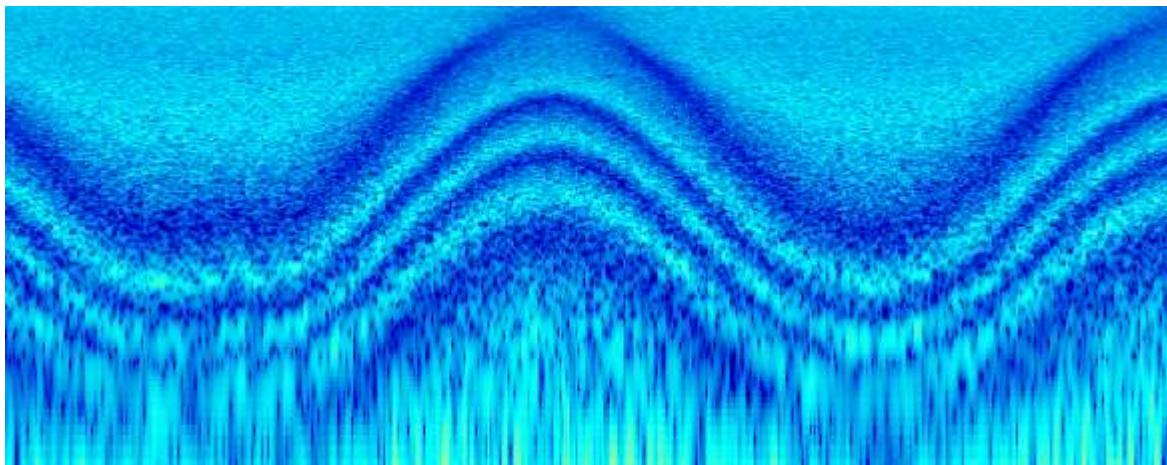


Figure 106: Phaser Circuit Spectrogram

The audio signal is split into two paths. One path remains unchanged. The other one is sent to a delay line. The delay time (the so-called phase) is made dependent on the frequency. Therefore, an all-pass filter is applied to the signal, which preserves the amplitude, but determines the delay time. In the end, both paths are added.

The spectrogram describes how this works on white noise. Light blue indicates that the frequency is not present at the current time, and dark blue indicates the opposite. The dark blue peaks appear if the delay time is very short, because then, the second path almost equals the first one, which results in duplication of the signal. If the delay line is very long, then it is – in the case of white noise – totally at random whether the delayed signal currently duplicates the unchanged path, or whether it cancels it out to zero. This random effect results in white noise between the clear blue structures.

ZynAddSubFX offers different types of phasers:

- **Analog and "normal" phasers.** Analog phasers are more complicated. They sound punchier, while normal phasers sound more fluently. However, analog filters usually need more filter stages to reach a characteristic sound.
- **Sine and triangle filters.** Note that an analog triangle filter with many poles is a barber pole filter and can be used to generate Shepard Tones, i.e. tones that seem to increase or decrease with time, but do not really.
- **The LFO function can be squared.** This converts the triangle wave into a hyper sine wave. The sine squared is simply a faster sine wave.

For the normal phaser, figure 107 "Effects Edit, Phaser" on page 130, below, shows the controls referred to in this list of steps.

1. First, the LFO is generated. There are 4 controls (**Freq**, **Rnd**, **LFO type**, **St.df**) that define the LFO.
2. **Phase** and **Depth** are applied afterwards in the usual way. For the analog phaser (see the **Analog** check-box), **Phase** is not implemented yet.
3. If **hyper** is set, then the LFO function is squared.
4. Next, the input is used.
5. The **Analog** setting decides whether the phaser is analog or "normal".
6. **Pan** applies panning to the original input in every loop.

7. Next, barber-pole phasing is applied (**Analog** only).
8. **Fb** applies feedback. The last sound buffer element is (after phasing) multiplied by this value and then added to the current one. For the normal filter, the value is added before, and, for analog, after the first phasing stage.
9. Next, based on the setting of **Stages**, phasing stages are applied. The **dist** control sets the amount of distortion when applying the phasing stages. This setting has only effect for analog phasers.
10. The feedback is applied next, for analog filtering.
11. In the end, the **Subtract** option inverts the signal, multiplying it by -1.

8.9.2 Effects / Phaser / User Interface

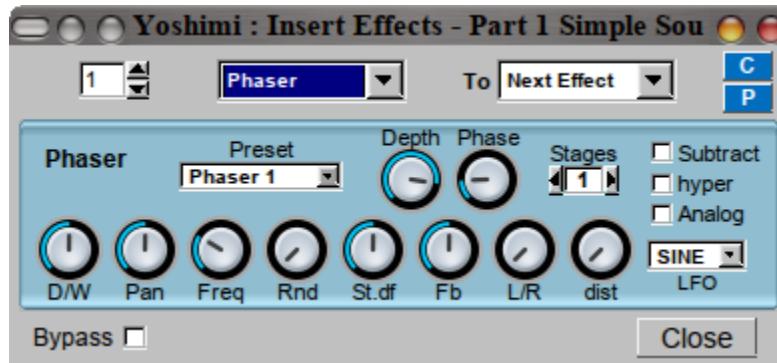


Figure 107: Effects Edit, Phaser

1. **Preset.**
2. **Depth**
3. **Phase**
4. **Stages**
5. **Subtract**
6. **hyper**
7. **Analog**
8. **D/W**
9. **Pan**
10. **Freq**
11. **Rnd**
12. **St.df**
13. **Fb**
14. **L/R**
15. **dist**
16. **LFO**

The extra fields that are shown if the effect is an insertion effect are not shown. They are still need to be described.

8. Preset. Phaser Presets.

Values: Phaser 1, ...

9. Depth. Phaser Depth. Phaser LFO Depth?

Values: TODO

10. Phase. Phaser Phase.

Values: TODO

11. Stages. Phaser Stages.

Values: TODO

12. Subtract. Phaser Subtract.

Values: Off*, On

13. hyper. Phaser Hyper.

Values: Off*, On

14. Analog. Phaser Analog.

Values: Off*, On

15. D/W. Phaser Dry/Wet.

16. Pan. Phaser Panning.

17. Freq. Phaser Freq.

18. Rnd. Phaser Randomness.

19. St.df. The phase difference between LFO for left/right channels.

20. Fb. Phaser Feedback.

21. L/R. L/R. How the left/right channels are routed to output:

1. leftmost. Left to left and right to right.
2. middle. Left+right to mono.
3. rightmost. Left to right, and right to left.

22. dist. Phaser Distortion? TODO

23. LFO. Phaser LFO Type.

8.9.3 Effects / Phaser / NRPN Values

Effects can be controlled via "non-registered parameter numbers", or NRPNs. This section details the value supported by the Phaser effect.

8.10 Effects / Reverb

A Reverberation actually expresses the effect of many echoes being played at the same time. This can happen in an enclosed room, where the sound can be reflected in different angles. Also, in nature, thunders approximate reverbs, because the sound is reflected in many different ways, arriving at the listener at different times.

In music, reverbs are popular in many ways. Reverbs with large room size can be used to emulate sounds like in live concerts. This is useful for voices, pads, and hand claps. A small room size can simulate the sound board of string instruments, like guitars or pianos.

8.10.1 Effects / Reverb / Circuit

As mentioned, a reverb consists of permanent echo. The reverb in ZynAddSubFX is more complex than the echo. After the delaying, comb filters and then allpass filters are being applied. These make the resulting sound more realistic. The parameters for these filters depend on the roomsize. For details, consider the information about Freeverb.

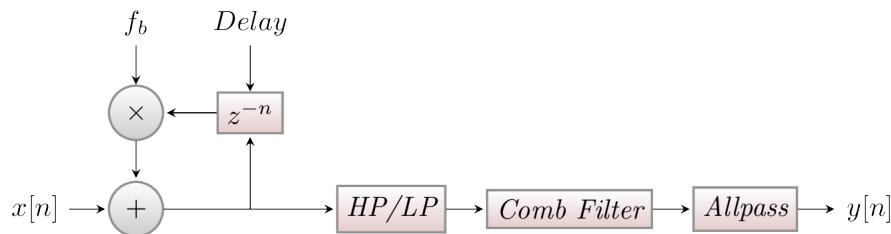


Figure 108: Reverb Circuit Diagram

8.10.2 Effects / Reverb / User Interface

The user-interface for the Reverb effect depends on whether it is used as a System effect or an Insertion effect. Observr figure 109 "Effects Edit, Reverb" on page 132, where the Insertion mode is shown. In the System mode, only the light-blue portion of the user-interface appears.

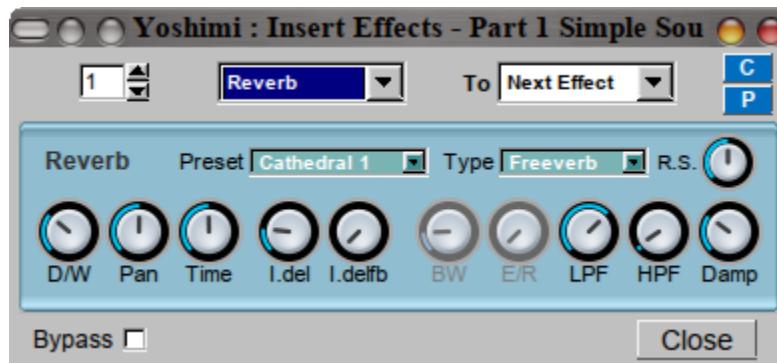


Figure 109: Effects Edit, Reverb

1. Preset
2. Type
3. R.S.
4. D/W
5. Pan
6. Time
7. I.del
8. I.delfb
9. BW
10. E/R
11. LPF
12. HPF
13. Damp

There is a fourth type we have screen captures for, but we can't seem to navigate to them now! Are these now out-of-date screen captures?

1. **FX No.**
2. **bypass**
3. **EffType**
4. **Send To**
5. **C**
6. **P**
7. **Close**

- 1. Preset.** Reverb Preset.



Figure 110: Reverb Preset Dropdown

Values: Cathedral 1, Cathedral 2, Cathedral 3, Half 1, Half 2, Room 1, Room 2, Basement, Tunnel, Echoed 1, Echoed 2, Very Long 1, Very Long 2

- 2. Type.** Reverb Type. The combobox lets one select a reverb type.

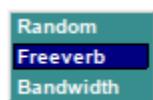


Figure 111: Reverb Type Dropdown

- Freeverb is a preset. It was proposed by Jezar at Dreampoint.
- Bandwidth has the same parameters for the comb and allpass filters, but it applies a unison before the LPF/HPF. The unisons bandwidth can be set using BW.
- Random chooses a random layout for comb and allpass each time the type or the roomsize is being changed.

Values: Random, Freeverb, Bandwidth

- 3. R.S.** Reverb Room Size. The room size defines parameters only for the comb and allpass filters.

- 4. D/W.** Reverb Dry/Wet Setting. This setting controls much of the original signal is mixed with the reverb effect.

- 5. Pan.** Reverb Panning. Pan lets one apply panning. This is the last process to happen.

6. Time. Reverb Time. Set the duration of late reverb. Time controls how long the whole reverb shall take, including how slow the volume is decreased.

7. I.del. Reverb Initial Delay. The initial delay (I.del) is the time which the sounds need at least to return to the user.

8. I.delfb. Reverb Initial Delay Feedback. Sets the initial delay feedback. The initial delay feedback (I.delfb) says how much of the delayed sound is added to the input. It is not recommended to use this setting together with low initial delays).

9. BW. Reverb Bandwidth.

10. E/R. Reverb E/R. Echo Reflection? TODO!

11. LPF. Reverb Lowpass Filter. This filter is applied before the comb filters.

12. HPF. Reverb Highpass Filter. This filter is applied before the comb filters.

13. Damp. Reverb Damp. Damp determines how high frequencies are damped during the reverberation. The dampening control (Damp) currently only allows to damp low frequencies. Its parameters are used by the comb and allpass filters.

14. FX No. Reverb FX Number.

Values: 1 to 8?

15. bypass. Reverb FX Bypass.

Values: Off*, On

16. EffType. Reverb Effect Type.

Values: Reverb, EQ, Echo, etc. TODO

17. Send To. Reverb Send To.

Values: Next Effect, ... TODO

18. C. Reverb Copy.

19. P. Reverb Paste.

20. Close. Close Window.

8.10.3 Effects / Reverb / NRPN Values

Effects can be controlled via "non-registered parameter numbers", or NRPNs. This section details the values supported by the Reverb effect.

TODO: detail the values supported by the Reverb effect.

9 Bottom Panel

9.1 Bottom Panel Controls

The Yoshimi bottom panel provides quick access to some major features of the application. The bottom panel is shown in figure 2 "Yoshimi Main Screen, 1.4.1" on page 19.

Here are the major elements of the bottom panel.

1. Part

- 2. **of**
- 3. **Instrument Name**
- 4. **Edit** (Instrument Edit Button)
- 5. **Midi**
- 6. **Mode**
- 7. **Enabled**
- 8. **Portamento**
- 9. **Velocity Sens**
- 10. **Velocity Offset**
- 11. **Pan**
- 12. **Pan Reset Button**
- 13. **Volume**
- 14. **Controllers**
- 15. **Minimum Note**
- 16. **Maximum Note**
- 17. **m**
- 18. **R**
- 19. **M**
- 20. **Key Shift**
- 21. **Key Limit**
- 22. **System Effect Sends 1**
- 23. **System Effect Sends 2**
- 24. **System Effect Sends 3**
- 25. **System Effect Sends 4**
- 26. **Sound Meter**

1. Part. Part Number.

Values: 1 to 16; 1 to 32; 1 to 64

Show and set current part. The maximum number of values depends on the **Part of** selection.

2. of. Maximum Number of Parts.

Values: 16*, 32, 64

Yoshimi now has up to 64 parts in blocks of 16. One can now decide how many one wants to have available using this user-interface item. By default these are wrapped around the normal MIDI channels, so that parts 1, 17, 33, and 49 all respond to channel 1 messages. This was originally implemented for Vector Control, working with up to four sounds on a channel (similar to the Yamaha SY hardware series).

However, these additional parts have other less obvious uses. One of these is getting far more than 16 completely independent tracks addressed by just the 16 channels. Most tunes run with instruments having a relatively narrow pitch range, and this is what we can make use of.

As an example, in *Yoshimi*'s main window select 64 parts, then on part 1 set (say) 'Steel Bass' and maximum note as 52 (E). Next select part 17 and enable it (easiest to use the mixer panel for this) set 'Tunnel Piano', the *minimum* note as 53 and maximum as 71 (B). Finally, enable part 33, set 'Rushes', and set its minimum note as 72, but key shift down an octave. With a 61 note keyboard that gives one quite a useful working range, on just one channel.

However, the idea really comes into its own with a sequencer like Rosegarden where one can record multiple parts over the full MIDI range and track them to the same channel. Also, in Rosegarden the

parts can be separately named, and identified as 'Bass' and 'Treble' in the notation editor. This setup makes it very convenient for those wanting a more formal musical layout.

So, with very little effort, one can now have 48 tracks playing at once! Ummm, one does need a decent processor though :) Yes, one could run more instances of Yoshimi on different MIDI ports, but where's the fun in that?

Another possibility is obtaining very smooth transitions between different sounds on the same channel. If one uses program change to do this, that part has to be muted, and there is a variable time lag (while the new part is loaded) before one can play any more notes on that channel. However, with 32 and 64 parts one can actually overlap notes with different instruments on a playing channel.

This setup is accomplished by pre-loading the wanted instruments, then switching channel numbers. If (via the direct part NRPN) one adds 16 to a sounding part's channel number, it will then only respond to Note Off events. To bring it back into operation simply restore the original channel number. An example:

1. Enable 32 parts.
2. Load 'Simple Chimes' into part 0 (part 1 in the GUI).
3. Load 'Silver Bell' into part 16 (part 17 in the GUI).
4. In your sequencer, via direct part NRPN set part 16 to channel 16. This will now be 'whited out' in the GUI.
5. Record some notes to channel 0 (1 in human-readable terms).
6. In the sequencer, just before the first note that one wants to sound as 'Silver Bell', insert two direct part NRPNs, with one to set part 0 to channel 16, and the other to set part 16 to channel 0.

Now, when played through, the last 'Simple Chimes' note will have its full release and reverb tail, blending into the first 'Silver Bell' note. To go back to using 'Simple Chimes' just reverse the NRPNs. The only time this gets complicated is if the new note is exactly the same pitch as the old one, in which case the NRPNs need to be between the old note-off and the new note-on.

By default, all the upper parts (numbers greater than 16) are mapped to the same MIDI channel numbers as the lowest ones, but have independent voice and parameter settings. They cannot normally receive independent note or control messages. However, vector control will intelligently work with however many one has set, as will all the NRPN direct part controls. See section [16.2 "Vector / Vector Control"](#) on page [194](#).

This item is a fairly new feature of *Yoshimi* (as of version 1.3.5).

3. Instrument Name. Instrument Name. Left-click to open the Bank window. Right-click to change the name of the current instrument. If one changes the name of the instrument, be sure to select **Menu / Instrument / Save Instrument** to preserve that change.

The name now has color-coding to indicate the instrument's use of ADDsynth, SUBsynth, or PADsynth. One can see the "red" color for ADDsynth in the figure for the bottom panel. "Blue" would indicate SUBsynth, and "green" would indicate PADsynth.

4. Edit. Instrument Edit button. This button brings up the instrument-edit dialog shown in figure [113 "Part Edit \(Instrument\) Dialog"](#) on page [141](#).

This dialog provides a very broad overview of the instrument, and provides access to far more detailed dialogs to edit the instrument. This dialog is explained in detail in section [9.3 "Bottom Panel Instrument Edit"](#) on page [141](#).

5. Midi. MIDI Channel.

Values: 1 to 16

6. Mode. Mode. Poly. Sets the mode (polyphonic/monophonic/legato). In polyphonic mode, multiple simultaneous notes are supported. (How many at maximum?). In monophonic mode, only one note is supported. In legato mode, the sound flows smoothly from note to note without any breaks.

Values: Poly, Mono, Legato

7. Enabled. Enable the part. If the Part is disabled it doesn't use CPU time.

Values: Off*, On

8. Portamento. Enable/disable the portamento. One can set the duration and other parameters by opening the Controllers window.

Values: Off*, On

9. Velocity Sens. Velocity Sensing Function.

Values: 0 to 127, 64*

10. Velocity Offset. Velocity Offset.

Values: 0 to 127, 64*

11. Pan. Pan.

Values: 0 to 127, 64*

12. Pan (reset). Reset Pan to Middle (64).

13. Volume. Instrument Volume.

Values: 0 to 127, 96*

The default volume for ADD parts (overall) and SUB parts is 96; the default volume for SUB parts is 90; the ADD voice volume is 100; and effects volumes vary heavily with the effect.

14. Minimum Note. Minimum note the part receives.

Values: 0* to 127

15. Maximum Note. Maximum note the part receives.

Values: 0 to 127*

16. m. Minimum Note Capture Button.

Set minimum note to last note played.

17. R. Minimum and Maximum Note Reset Button.

Reset the minimum key to 0 and the maximum key to 127.

18. M. Maximum Note Capture Button. Sets the maximum note to the last pressed key.

19. Key Shift. Key Shift. This value is like the master **Key Shift** in the top panel, but it applies only to the current part active in the bottom panel. In recent versions of *Yoshimi*, it has been extended to a larger semitone range. Also note that the key shift can be set via the user-interface, the command-line, or by MIDI NRPN commands. With NRPN, this part shift can be set by direct part control or by channel number.

Values: -36 to 36, 0*

20. Key Limit. Maximum keys to be allocated for this part.

Values: 0 to 60, 20*

21. System Effect Sends 1, 2, 3, and 4.

TODO: Describe how these sends work.

Values: 0 to 127*

22. Sound Meter. VU Meter. Sound Meter.

This discussion of "Audio Output and Levels" comes from [Output Levels.txt](#).

At the bottom of the main window there is a pair of horizontal grids representing a bargraph type display. The upper one is for the left hand channel and the lower one for the right hand one. The grid divisions each represent 1 dB, and the brighter divisions are therefore 5 dB. The thicker bright divisions therefore being 10 dB. The overall scale range is -48 dB to 0 dB.

As the output level rises pale blue strips will light up in these grids. These fast responding bars are the peak levels and should never be allowed to go above 0 dB, otherwise the output is likely to be clipped and distorted. There is also a pair of boxes on the end of these grids which will show the highest peak level seen. If clipping has happened the box background will change from black to red. To clear the clip and peak level indication, click on this area.

As well as the peak level, the display shows a much slower responding RMS level, as a yellow line on top of the blue bar. This gives an indication of the apparent acoustic power.

If one opens the panel window one will see vertical bargraphs for each individual part. On these, the faint bars are 5dB steps and the bright ones 10dB. The peak level isn't shown numerically, but if one exceeds 0dB a thick red line will appear at the top of the bargraph. This is also cleared from the box in the main window.

9.1.0.1 Tip: Using the VU Meter

The VU meter topic is very interesting, because one of the problems is a tendency to overdrive it by way of sustain pedal. At the last test, it showed up in the output before it showed up in the VU meter, so the VU meter will help a lot in analysis.

One way to avoid overdrive is to keep polyphony to 20 on each patch (two or three patches per *Yoshimi* instance, with two or three *Yoshimi* simultaneous instances depending on the patch). Another item which helps a lot is compression (for example, the Calf multiband compressor is amazingly good).

9.2 Bottom Panel / Controllers



Figure 112: Controllers Dialog

1. Exp MWh

2. **ModWh**
3. **Exp BW**
4. **BwDepth**
5. **PanWdth**
6. **FltQ**
7. **FitCut**
8. **Vol Rng**
9. **PWheelB.Rng**

10. **Expr**
11. **FMamp**
12. **Vol**
13. **Sustain**
14. **Resonance** (section)
15. **PortaMento** (section)
16. **Reset all controllers**
17. **Close**

1. Exp MWh. Exponential Modulation Wheel. Changes the modulation scale to exponential.

Values: Off*, On

2. ModWh. Modulation Wheel Depth.

Values: 0 to 127, 80*

3. Exp BW. Exponential Bandwidth Controller. Changes the bandwidth scale to exponential.

Values: Off*, On

4. BwDepth. Bandwidth Depth.

Values: 0 to 127, 64*

5. Exp BW. Exponential Bandwidth. Changes the bandwidth scale to exponential.

Values: 0 to 127, 64*

6. PanDpth. Panning Depth.

Values: 0 to 64*

7. FltQ. Filter Q (resonance) Depth.

Values: 0 to 127, 64*

8. FitCut. Filter Cutoff Frequency Depth.

Values: 0 to 127, 64*

9. Vol Rng. Volume Range.

Values: 64 to 127, 64*

10. PWheelB.Rng. Pitch Wheel Bend Range (cents). 100 cents = 1 halftone.

Values: -6400 to 6400, 200*

11. Expr. Expression Enable. Enable/disable expression.

Values: Off, On*

12. FMamp. FM Amplitude Enable. Enable/disable receiving Modulation Amplitude controller (76).

Values: Off, On*

13. Vol. Volume Enable.

Values: Off, On*

Enable/disable receiving volume controller. Sensitivity to MIDI volume change (CC7) is now variable in 'Controllers' in the same way as pan width etc. The numeric range is 64 to 127; the default at 96 gives the same sensitivity as before at -12dB relative to the GUI controls. 127 gives 0dB and 64 gives -26dB

14. Sustain. Sustain Pedal Enable. Enable/disable sustain pedal.

Values: Off, On*

15. Reset all controllers. Reset All Controllers.

16. Close. Close Window.

9.2.1 Bottom Panel / Controllers / Resonance

1. CFdepth. Resonance Center Frequency Depth, Center Frequency Controller Depth.

Values: 0 to 127, 64*

2. BWdepth. Resonance Bandwidth Depth, Resonance Bandwidth Controller Depth.

Values: 0 to 127, 64*

9.2.2 Bottom Panel / Controllers / Portamento

1. Rcv. Portamento Receive, Receive Portamento Controllers. Determines if the part receives Portamento On/Off (65) controller.

Values: Off, On*

2. Proprt. Portamento Proportional, Enable Proportional Portamento (over fixed portamento).

Values: Off*, On

3. time. Portamento time. The duration of the portamento.

Values: 0 to 127, 64*

4. t.dn/up. Portamento Time Stretch (up/down).

Values: 0 to 127, 64*

5. threshx100 cnt. Threshold of the Portamento. The minimum or maximum difference of notes in order to do the portamento (x 100 cents). It represents the minimum or the maximum number of halftones (or hundred cents) required to start the portamento. The difference is computed between the last note and current note. The threshold refers to the frequencies and *not* to MIDI notes (one should consider this if one uses microtonal scales).

Values: 0 to 127, 3*

6. th.type. Threshold Type (min/max). Checked means that the portamento activates when the difference of frequencies is above the threshold ("thresh"); not checked is for below the threshold.

Values: Off, On*

7. Propt. Proportional Portamento. If set, the portamento is proportional to ratio of frequencies.

Values: Off, On*

8. Prp.Rate. Distance required to double change from nonproportional portamento time. The ratio needed to double the time of portamento.

Values: 0 to 127, 80*, requires **Proprt.** = On

9. Prp.Depth. The difference from nonproportional portamento.

Values: 0 to 127, 90*, requires **Proprt.** = On

9.3 Bottom Panel Instrument Edit

The main instrument-editing ("part edit") dialog is relatively simple, and provides for editing information that identifies the instrument, and buttons to access the more complex dialogs of the ADDsynth, SUBsynth, PADsynth, Kit Edit, and Effects components.

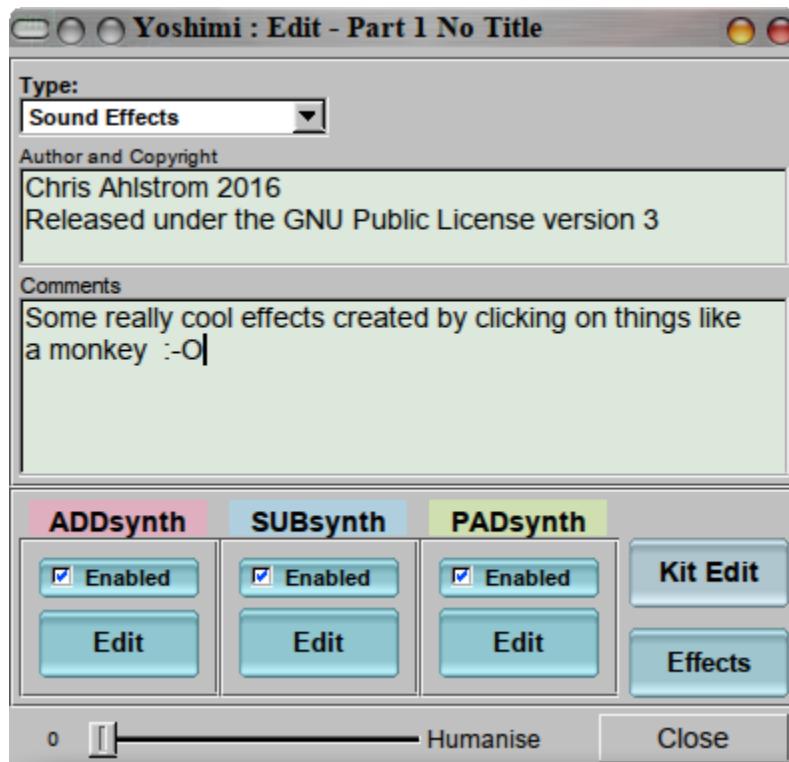


Figure 113: Part Edit (Instrument) Dialog

This dialog provides a very broad overview of the instrument, and provides access to far more detailed dialogs to edit the instrument. This dialog is called up by the **Edit** button on the bottom panel of the main *Yoshimi* main screen.

1. **Type**
2. **Author and Copyright**
3. **Comments**
4. **ADDsynth**
 1. **Enabled**
 2. **Edit**
5. **SUBsynth**

1. Enabled
2. Edit
6. PADsynth
 1. Enabled
 2. Edit
7. Kit Edit
8. Effects
9. Rnd. Det., now a Humanise slider.
10. Close

The ADDsynth, SUBsynth, PADsynth, Kit Edit, and Effects dialogs are detailed in separated sections, as they are all very complex dialogs with many sub-dialogs.

1. Type. Instrument Type. Instrument Category.

This dropdown dialog allows one to tag the type of instrument, to indicate what category of instruments it fits into. The following figure shows the types.

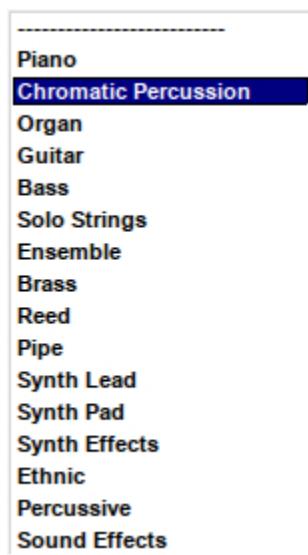


Figure 114: Instrument Type Drop-down List

Values: Piano, Chromatic Percussion, Organ, Guitar, Bass, Solo Strings, Ensemble, Brass, Reed, Pipe, Synth Lead, Synth Pad, Synth Effects, Ethnic, Percussive, Sound Effects

2. Author and Copyright. This field provides space for identifying the author, copyright, and license for the part.

3. Comments. Allows free-form comments and notes to be entered.

4. ADDsynth.

1. Enabled. Enables this synth type to be used in the part/instrument. When enabled, its marker color, red, is shown.
2. Edit. Brings up the editing dialog presented in figure 115 "ADDsynth Edit/Global Dialog" on page 144. There one will find a full discussion of that dialog.

5. SUBsynth.

1. **Enabled.** Enables this synth type to be used in the part/instrument. When enabled, its marker color, blue, is shown.
2. **Edit.** Brings up the editing dialog presented in figure 150 "SUBsynth Edit Dialog" on page 177. There one will find a full discussion of that dialog.

6. PADsynth.

1. **Enabled.** Enables this synth type to be used in the part/instrument. When enabled, its marker color, green, is shown.
 2. **Edit.** Brings up the editing dialog presented in figure 128 "PADsynth Edit Dialog" on page 162. There one will find a full discussion of that dialog.
- 7. Kit Edit.** Brings up the editing dialog presented in figure 154 "Kit Edit Dialog" on page 182. There one will find a full discussion of that dialog.
- 8. Effects.** Brings up the editing dialog presented in figure 95 "Effects Edit, No Effect" on page 115. There one will find a full discussion of that dialog.

9. Humanise (Rnd. Det.). Small Random Detune, Humanise. Sets the random detune value of the whole *part* in cents. In the most recent versions of *Yoshimi*, this item has been replaced by a **Humanise** slider. This value is an experimental feature. It lends some complexity or piquancy to the part.

Values: 0* to 50

10. Close. Closes the Edit window.

10 ADDsynth

The *Yoshimi* ADDsynth (also spelled "ADsynth") dialog is a complex dialog for creating an instrument. This is the most complex, most advanced and most sophisticated part of the synthesizer and allows one to edit the parameters that apply to all the voices of ADDsynth.

ADDsynth, a primarily additive synthesis engine, is one of the three major synthesis engines available in *Yoshimi/ZynAddSubFX*. The basic concept of this engine is the summation of a collection of voices, each of which consists of oscillators.

"ADDsynth" (sometimes spelled "ADsynth") or "ADnote" is a complex engine which makes sounds by adding a number of voices. Each one has filters, envelopes, LFOs, morphing, modulation, resonance, etc. Each voice includes a very powerful waveform generator with up to 128 sine/non-sine harmonics. One can use Fourier synthesis, or if one doesn't like it, one can use wave-shaping/filtering of functions. This engine includes anti-aliasing. Modulation includes ring modulation, phase modulation, and more. The modulators can have any shape. [25]

The sum of the voices are passed through filters and amplification to produce the final sound. This could lead one to think that ADDsynth is just a bunch of minor post-processing, and at this level much of the sound generation is hidden.

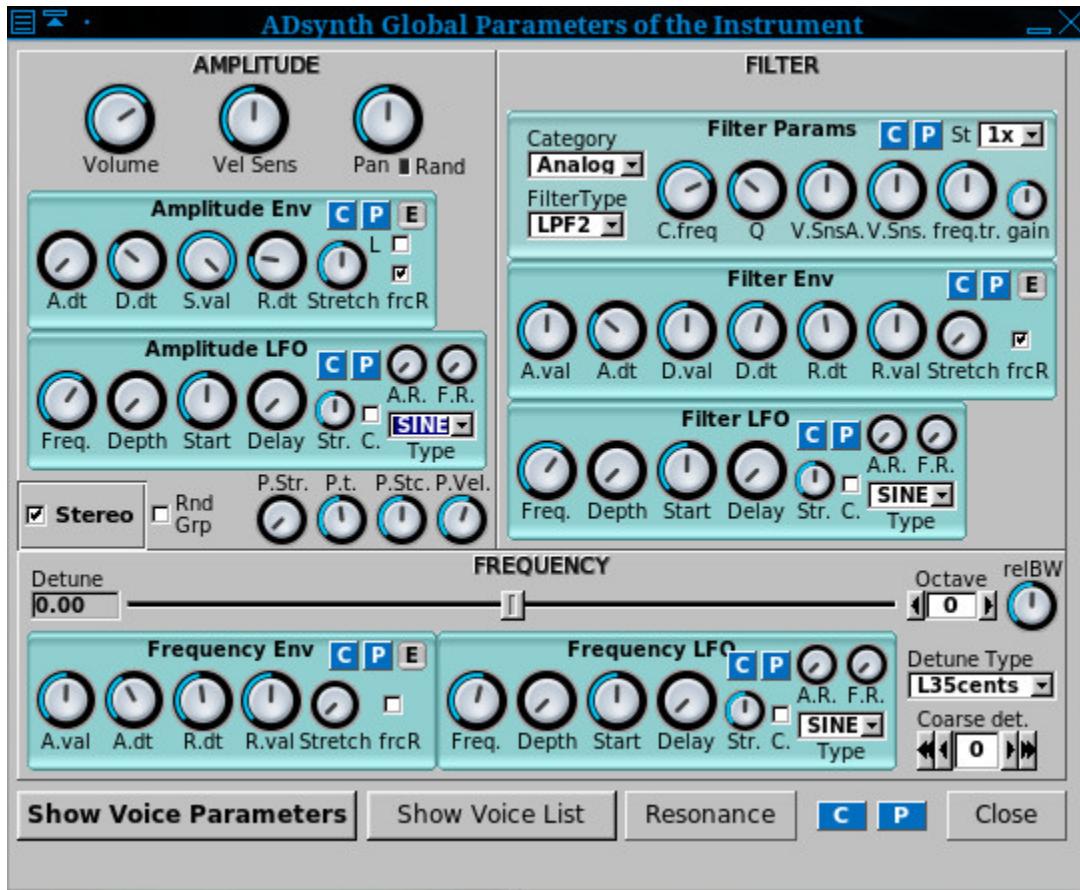


Figure 115: ADDsynth Edit/Global Dialog

The major sections of this dialog are listed:

1. **AMPLITUDE** (stock section)
2. **FILTER** (stock section)
3. **FREQUENCY** (stock section)
4. **Show Voice Parameters** (section)
5. **Show Voice List** (section)
6. **Resonance** (stock section)
7. **C**
8. **P**
9. **Close**

This complex dialog is best described section by section. Many of the sub-sections are stock sub-panels described elsewhere in this document. References to those sections are included.

One thing to note is that the small **Red** reset button next to the **Pan** knob is no longer present. Instead, one can use a right-click on this knob to reset it to its home position and value.

10.1 ADDsynth / AMPLITUDE

1. **Volume**
2. **Vel Sens**

3. **Pan**
4. **Rand**
5. **Reset (panning)** (red button)
6. **Amplitude Env** The Amplitude Env panel is described in detail in section [6.5.1 "Amplitude Envelope Sub-Panel"](#) on page [93](#).
7. **Amplitude LFO** The Amplitude LFO panel is described in detail in section [6.4.5 "LFO User Interface Panels"](#) on page [89](#).
8. **Stereo**
9. **Rnd Grp**
10. **P.Str.**
11. **P.t**
12. **P.Stc.**
13. **P.Vel.**

Note the two sub-panels, mentioned above, that are described elsewhere. They will not be discussed in detail below.

1. Volume. ADDsynth Volume. Sets the overall/relative volume of the instrument.

Values: 1 to 127, 64*

2. Vel Sens. ADDsynth Velocity Sensing function. Velocity sensing is simply an exponential transformation from the notes velocity to some parameter change. Observe figure [116 "Velocity Sensing Function"](#) on page [145](#). It shows how the velocity sensing controls affects the translation of a parameter over the whole range of possible note velocities. Turn the knob rightmost/maximum to disable this function.

Values: 1 to 127, 64*

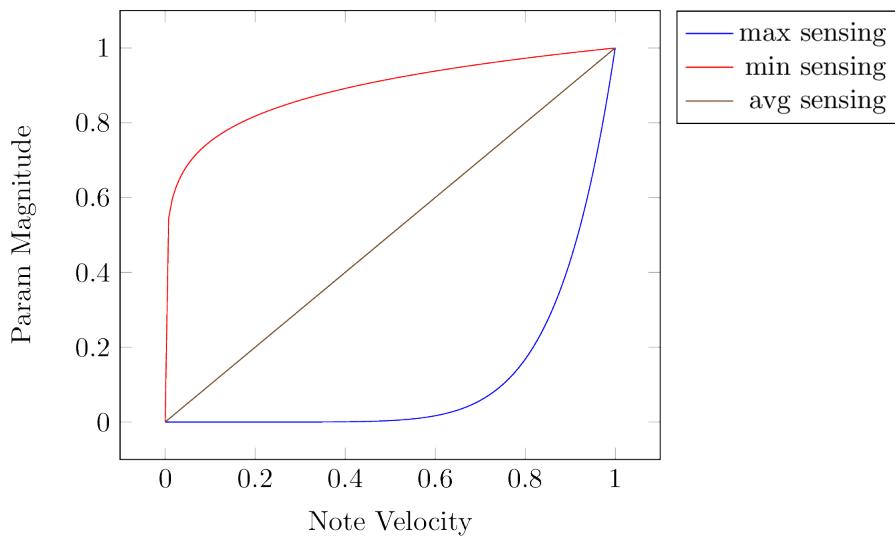


Figure 116: Velocity Sensing Function

3. Pan. ADDsynth Global Panning. Dialing the knob to leftmost or zero gives random panning.

Values: 0, 1 to 127, 64*

4. Rand. ADDsynth Random Panning Indicator. A red fill-in color provides an indicator for the activation of random panning in this control.

5. Reset (panning). ADDsynth Reset Panning (red button). Clicking this red button changes the panning value to 64 (centered).

Next, we skip the **Amplitude Env** and **Amplitude LFO** panels, which are described elsewhere, as noted above.

6. Stereo. ADDsynth Stereo. Stereo can be enabled. When disabled, all the voices will also have panning disabled.

Values: Off, On*

7. Rnd Grp. ADDsynth Random Group. How the harmonic amplitude is applied to voices that use the same oscillator. We need to get a more detailed explanation of what this setting means.

Values: Off*, On

8. P.Str. ADDsynth Punch Strength. The punch strength of a note in ADDsynth is a constant amplification to the output at the start of the note, with its length determined by the punch time and stretch and the amplitude being determined by the punch strength and velocity sensing. The **relBW** control in the frequency panel is effectively a multiplier for detuning all voices within an ADnote.

Values: 0* to 127

9. P.t. ADDsynth Punch Time (duration). Sets the punch effect duration (from 0.1 ms to 100 ms on an A note, 440Hz).

Values: 0 to 127, 64*

10. P.Stc. ADDsynth Punch Stretch. Sets the punch effect stretch according to frequency. On lower-frequency notes, punch stretch makes the punch effect last longer.

Values: 0 to 127, 64*

11. P.Vel. ADDsynth Punch Velocity Sensing. The higher this value, the higher the effect of velocity on the punch of the note.

Values: 0 to 127, 72*

10.2 ADDsynth / FILTER

The ADDsynth FILTER block consists solely of sub-panels described in detail in the sections noted below. The sub-panels of the FILTER section are:

1. Filter Params
2. Filter Env
3. Filter LFO

1. Filter Params. ADDsynth Filter Parameters. The Filter Params panel is described in detail in section [6.2.5 "Filter Parameters User Interface"](#) on page [82](#).

2. Filter Env. ADDsynth Filter Envelope. The Filter Env panel is described in detail in section [6.5.5 "Envelope Settings for Filter"](#) on page [97](#).

3. Filter LFO. The Filter LFO panel is described in detail in section [6.4.5 "LFO User Interface Panels"](#) on page [89](#).

10.3 ADDsynth / FREQUENCY

1. **Detune**
2. **FREQUENCY slider**
3. **Octave**
4. **RelBW**
5. **Frequency Env.** A stock sub-panel described in section [6.5.4 "Envelope Settings, Frequency"](#) on page [96](#).
6. **Frequency LFO** A stock sub-panel described in section [6.4.7 "Frequency LFO Sub-panel"](#) on page [91](#).
7. **Detune Type**
8. **Coarse det.**

1. Detune. ADDsynth Detune Value. This display box shows the value of the detune as selected by the frequency slider described below.

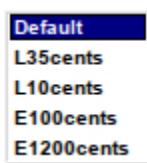


Figure 117: ADDsynth Frequency Detune Type

This value defines the number of cents that define the range of the **FREQUENCY** slider, that is 35 cents, 10 cents, 100 cents (one semitone), or 1200 cents (1 octave), below and above the main frequency. The default is 35 cents. The 1200-cents setting provides a whole octave of detuning in either direction.

The "L" probably stands for "linear", and the "E" for "exponential", to describe how the detune slider acts.

Values: Default*, L35cents, L10cents, E100cents, E1200cents

2. FREQUENCY slider. ADDsynth Fine Detune (cents), a slider control. While the detune type dropdown and the octave selection provide a coarse selection of detune, the slider allows for a finer selection of detune, up to roughly one-third of a semitone.

Values: -35.00 to 35.00, -10.00 to 10.00, -100.00 to 100.00, -1200.00 to 1200.00

3. Octave. ADDSynth Octave. The octave setting changes the frequency by octaves.

Values: -8 to 7, 0*

4. RelBW. ADDSynth Relative Bandwidth. Bandwidth: how the relative fine detune of the voice is changed.

Values: 0 to 127, 64*

5. Frequency Env. ADDsynth Frequency Envelope. The Frequency Env panel is described in detail in section [6.5.4 "Envelope Settings, Frequency"](#) on page [96](#).

6. Frequency LFO. The Frequency LFO panel is described in detail in section [6.4.5 "LFO User Interface Panels"](#) on page [89](#)

7. Detune Type. Frequency Detune Type. This setting provides a coarse detuning. We would welcome an explanation of exactly is meant by the numbers and the "E" versus "L" designation.

Values: L35cents, L10cents, E100cents, E1200cents

8. Coarse det. Coarse Detune, "C.detune". The one-arrow buttons change the value by one. The two-arrow buttons change the value by ten. Again, we need a way to explain the interactions of the slider, the octave setting, the detune type, and the coarse detune settings.

Values: -64 to 63, 0*

9. Show Voice Parameters. ADDsynth Show Voice Parameters. This button brings up the "voice parameters" dialog discussed in the next section.

10.4 ADDsynth / Voice Parameters

Again, this dialog is built from some stock sections and stock sub-panels, plus additional elements.

Each *Yoshimi* ADDsynth instrument consists of up to 8 voices. This dialog provides a way to define each of the 8 voices in great detail. By default, an ADDsynth instrument consists of one voice, voice 1.

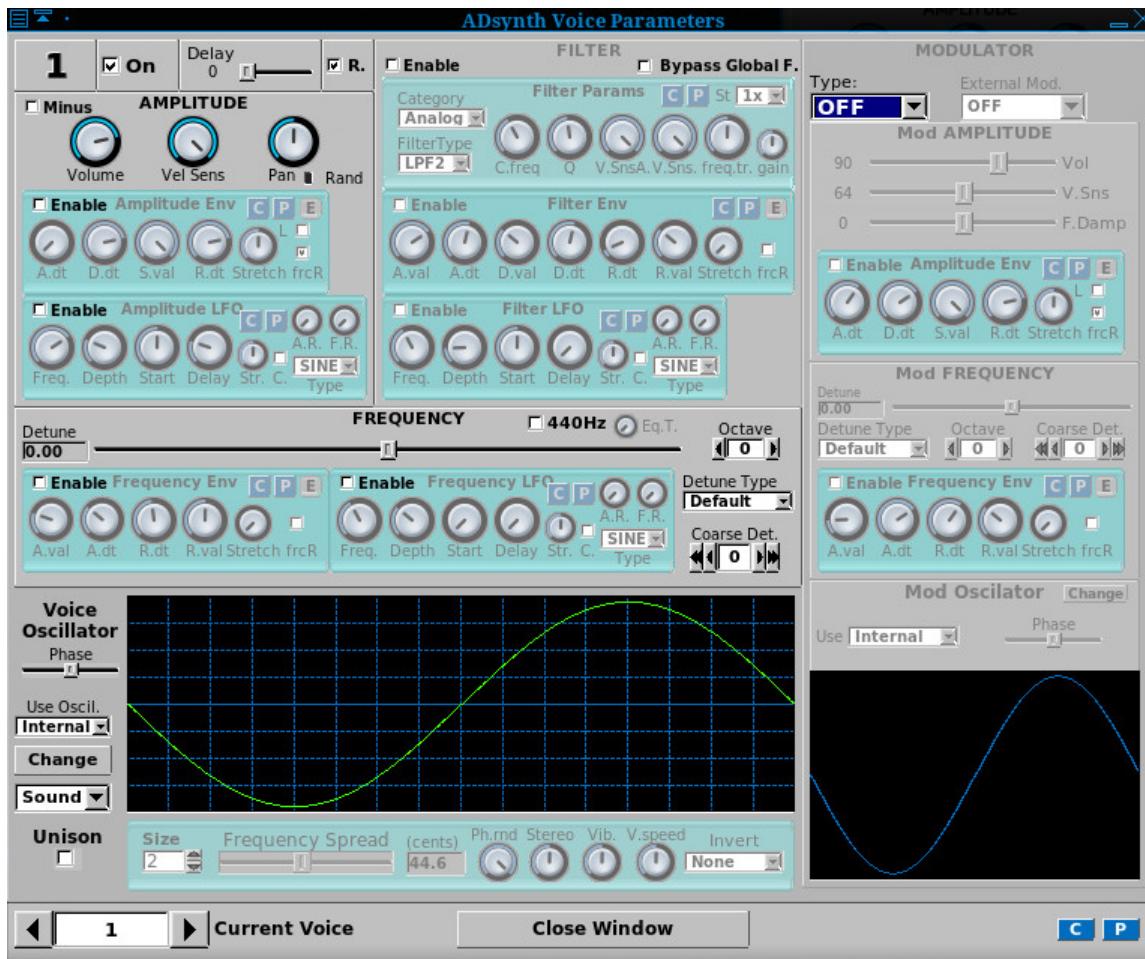


Figure 118: ADDsynth Voice Parameters Dialog

Again, note that the small **Red** reset button next to the **Pan** knob is no longer present, replaced a right-click on this knob to reset it.

This dialog consists of a few extra settings, plus a number of stock dialog sections. Take some time to compare figure 115 "ADDsynth Edit/Global Dialog" on page 144, which covers the overall instrument, with figure 118 "ADDsynth Voice Parameters Dialog" on page 148, which covers each of the voices. The stock sections in the former cover the whole instrument as one, while the very similar stock sections in the latter cover only the voice they configure. Obviously, the combinations of settings are essentially endless.

Each voice can be amplitude-controlled, filter-controlled, and frequency-controlled. Each voice can also be modulated by an internal modulator. Another property of the voice is that one can tell *Yoshimi* to modulate a given voice with any of the voices that are numbered less than that voice.

1. **Voice Number**
2. **On**
3. **Delay**
4. **R.**
5. **AMPLITUDE** (see the stock-panel section below)
6. **FILTER** (see the stock-panel section below)
7. **MODULATOR** (see the stock-panel section below)
8. **FREQUENCY** (see the stock-panel section below)

1. Voice Number. ADDsynth Voice Number. This display element shows the voice number represented by the settings in this dialog. Each *Yoshimi* part/instrument can consist of up to eight voices. The voice being worked on can be selected using the **Current Voice** selector.

Values: **1*** to 8

2. On. ADDsynth Voice On/Off. Enables this voice in the part/instrument.

Values: **Off**, **On**

3. Delay. ADDsynth Voice Delay. We still need to determine what the units of the delay are.

Bug: The tooltip for this setting says "Volume".

Values: **0*** to 127

4. R. ADDsynth Voice Resonance On/Off. The rest of the GUI elements (AMPLITUDE, FILTER, MODULATOR, FREQUENCY, and Voice Oscillator) are more detailed, and discussed in the sections that follow.

Values: **Off**, **On***

10.4.1 ADDsynth / Voice Parameters / AMPLITUDE

This section of the voice parameters dialog also includes a couple of stock sub-panels that have an additional "Enable" control.

1. **Minus**
2. **Volume**
3. **Vel Sens**
4. **Pan**
5. **Pan randomness indicator**
6. **Pan reset** (red button)
7. **Amplitude Env, Stock + Enable**
8. **Amplitude LFO, Stock + Enable**

1. Minus. ADDsynth Amplitude Minus. This setting enables the inversion of the volume control action. It enables negative values for the volume control of the voice.

Values: **Off***, **On**

2. Volume. ADDsynth Voice Volume. Sets the (relative) volume of this voice in the part/instrument.

Values: **0 to 127, 90?**

3. Vel Sens. ADDsynth Voice velocity-sensing function; setting to rightmost/max disables this function.

Values: **0 to 127***

4. Pan. ADDsynth Voice panning; setting to leftmost/0 gives random panning.

Values: **0 to 127, 64***

5. Pan randomness indicator. ADDsynth Voice random panning On/Off. Fills in red to indicate that random panning is in force.

6. Pan reset (red button). ADDsynth Center Panning. Clicking this small red button resets the panning to center.

7. Amplitude Env, Stock + Enable. ADDsynth Amplitude Envelope Sub-panel. See section [6.5.1 "Amplitude Envelope Sub-Panel"](#) on page [93](#). Additionally, the **Enable** checkbox allows the enabling of this component.

8. Amplitude LFO, Stock + Enable. ADDsynth Amplitude LFO Sub-panel. See section [6.4.5 "LFO User Interface Panels"](#) on page [89](#). Additionally, the **Enable** checkbox allows the enabling of this component.

10.4.2 ADDsynth / Voice Parameters / FILTER

This section of the voice parameters dialog also includes a couple of stock sub-panels that have an additional "Enable" control.

1. **Enable**
2. **Bypass Global F.**
3. **Filter Params, Stock**
4. **Filter Env, Stock + Enable**
5. **Filter LFO, Stock + Enable**

1. Enable. ADDsynth Voice Enable Filter. This value enables the whole FILTER dialog section.

Values: **Off*, On**

2. Bypass Global F. ADDsynth Voice Bypass Global Filter. The voice signal bypasses the global filter.

Values: **Off*, On**

We need to make sure there is a discussion of the global filter.

3. Filter Params, Stock. See section [6.2.5 "Filter Parameters User Interface"](#) on page [82](#).

4. Filter Env, Stock + Enable. See section [6.5.5 "Envelope Settings for Filter"](#) on page [97](#).

5. Filter LFO, Stock + Enable. See section [6.4.6 "Filter LFO Sub-panel"](#) on page [90](#).

10.4.3 ADDsynth / Voice Parameters / MODULATOR

1. **Type:**
2. **External Mod.**
3. **Mod AMPLITUDE**
4. **Mod FREQUENCY**
5. **Mod Oscillator**

1. **Type:** ADDsynth Modulator Type.



Figure 119: Voice Modulator Type

1. **OFF.** This setting turns off the modulator.
2. **MORPH** The morph modulator works by combining the output of two oscillators into one, with the amplitude envelope translating between one waveform and the other.
3. **RING** The ring modulator is useful for making bell-like sounds and some weird effects. The ring modulator works by multiplying two waveforms together, producing a signal that possesses the sum and difference of the frequencies present in the waveforms. The ins-and-outs of the ring modulator are explained in detail in paragraph [10.4.3.1 "Tip: Using the Ring Modulator"](#) on page [152](#).
4. **PM** The PM (pulse modulation) modulator works by using a modulator envelope to change the pulse width of a pulse waveform. Generally, set **F.Damp** to zero, so that the modulation amount doesn't depend on the note number.
5. **FM** The (frequency modulation) morph modulator works by modulating the frequency. Examples can be heard in the "Ethereal" and "Steel Wire" instruments.
6. **PITCH** The pitch modulator works by... we're not sure... is this pitch shifting?

Values: OFF, MORPH, RING, PM, FM, PITCH

2. External Mod.

External Oscillator. This feature allows one of the voices (of the up to 8 allowed in a single ADDsynth instrument) to be used as a modulator or external oscillator for another voice in the instrument. This option specifies to use the oscillator of another voice, or -1 for the *internal* oscillator.

The parameters must be lower than the voice index; one cannot use the oscillator from a voice with a bigger index (e.g. one can't use the oscillator of voice 8 for voice 4). This is very useful because, if one uses many voices with the same oscillator settings, one can use only one oscillator and select other voices to use this, and if one changes a parameter of this oscillator, all voices using this oscillator will be affected.

External Modulator. Use another voice as a modulator instead of the modulator of the internal voice. One can make a modulation "stack". The modulator of the voice is disabled.

External. Uses the oscillator as the modulator of another voice. It behaves like **Ext. Oscil**, except that it works on the *modulator*. Please notice the difference between this parameter and **Ext. Mod.** See below.

Values: OFF*, Other voice numbers?

3. Mod AMPLITUDE. Modulator Amplitude.

1. **Vol** Volume. Values: 0 to 127, 90*
2. **V.Sns** Velocity Sensing Function; set to rightmost/max to disable. Values: 0 to 127, 64*
3. **F.Damp** Modulator Damp at higher frequency. How the modulator intensity is lowered according to lower/higher note frequencies. Values: 0 to 127, 90*
4. **Amplitude Env, Stock + Enable** See section [6.5.1 "Amplitude Envelope Sub-Panel"](#) on page [93](#).
- 4. Mod FREQUENCY.** Modulator Frequency.
 1. **Detune slider** Fine Detune (cents). Values: -35.00 to 35.00, 0*
 2. **Detune Type** Fine Detune (cents). Values: L35cents, L10cents, E100cents, E1200cents See figure [117 "ADDsynth Frequency Detune Type"](#) on page [147](#).
 3. **Octave** Octave. Values: -8 to 7, 0*
 4. **Coarse Det.** Coarse Detune. Values: -64 to 63, 0*
 5. **Filter Env, Stock + Enable** See section [6.5.5 "Envelope Settings for Filter"](#) on page [97](#).
- 5. Mod Oscillator.** Modulator Oscillator.

Bug: The word "oscillator" is misspelled in the application.

1. **Change** ADDsynth Oscillator Editor.
2. **Use** Oscillator to Use. See the paragraph below. Values: Internal*, Other oscillators?
3. **Phase** Oscillator Phase. Values: 0 to 360 (0 to 2PI)
4. **Waveform graph** Waveform graph.

As far as we can tell, one has the choice between **Internal**, which in this case means a completely independent modulator oscillator per voice (extra change button), or **External**, which refers to the modulation oscillators one has already defined for the voices with a lower index. This means one can make one modulation oscillator for voice 1, and reuse it in voices 2 and 3. This is the same system used for the normal oscillators.

10.4.3.1 Tip: Using the Ring Modulator

This section is derived from one of the short text files in the *Yoshimi* source-code bundle ([[17](#)] or [[18](#)]). It notes that "Some people have been confused about how to use an 'external' Mod Oscillator", and provides usage notes that we will elaborate on here. Here is the way to use the ring modulator:

1. Open the ADDsynth editing window. Then open **Show Voice Parameters**.
2. For **Type**, select the **RING** value. This selection will activate the **Mod Oscillator**.
3. In the **Mod Oscillator**, click on **Change** to open the **ADDsynth Oscillator Editor**.
4. Set the wave-shape to **Triangle**.
5. Switch to voice number 2 and enable it.
6. Again, for **Type**, select the **RING** value. However, feel free to select one of the other modulators, if one wishes.
7. One can now use **Internal** for voice 2, or select **ext.m 1**, to use the first voice as internal modulator.
8. Change the internal voice to, for example, **Square**.
9. Do the same setup for voice 3. One will find that one can use its **Internal** or either of the two previous ones.

Now the joker in the pack is that one can disable both the previous voices but *still* use their Mod Oscillators.

In a newsgroup ([\[12\]](#)), the following note is found.

Say I want the A tone ring-modulated by 880Hz. A is 440 Hz, the ring modulation setting lets me choose the modulation frequency relative to the frequency of the tone. So I choose octave 1 and let the detune at zero. If I move the detune, it'll shift the modulation frequency a bit, which will make a disharmonic effect.

Wet/dry setting is controlled by volume in "modulation amplitude". The modulation frequency can further be multiplied or several modulations can be simulated by changing the oscillator waveform.

One huge letdown is that it is only available for Adsynth. PadSynth does not seem to have ring modulation option, so the coolest sounds stay out of question for massive lead tones. :-)

We have provided a more useful "tutorial" on using the ring modulator in the *Yoshimi Cookbook* [3] document.

10.4.4 ADDsynth / Voice Parameters / FREQUENCY

This frequency section is almost a stock part. It is similar to the ADDsynth Edit's **FREQUENCY** section.

1. **Detune**
2. **FREQUENCY slider**
3. **440Hz**
4. **Eq.T**
5. **Octave**
6. **Detune Type**
7. **Coarse det**
8. **Frequency Env, Stock + Enable**
9. **Frequency LFO, Stock + Enable**
10. **Voice Oscillator**

1. Detune. Voice Parameters Detune. Shows the value selected by the frequency slider.

2. FREQUENCY slider. Frequency Slider. Provides fine detune, in cents. Note that 35 cents is roughly one-third of a semitone.

Values: -35.00 to 35.00, 0*

3. 440Hz. 440 Hz Selection. Fixes the voice base frequency to 440 Hz. One can adjust this with the detune settings. No matter what key is played on the keyboard, this voice will emit only 440 Hz. This is useful for defining a constant frequency to use as a modulator for the other voices in the part. For example, one can define voice 1 to be a tone, then define voice 2 to be 440 Hz. The two voices will mix, but only voice 1 will change frequencies as different keys are played.

Values: Off*, On

4. Eq.T. Equal Temperament? This item is enabled only if the **440Hz** check-box is enabled. It determines how the frequency varies according to the keyboard. If set to its leftmost (0) value, then the frequency is fixed.

Values: 0 to 127?

5. Octave. Voice Parameters Octave.

Values: -8 to 7, 0*

6. Detune Type. Detune Type.

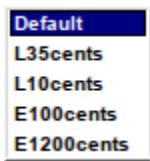


Figure 120: Frequency Detune Type

Values: Default*, L35cents, L10cents, E100cents, E1200cents

7. Coarse det. Coarse Detune. Is this setting in units of semitones?

Values: -64 to 63, 0*

8. Frequency Env, Stock + Enable. Frequency Envelope. See section [6.5.4 "Envelope Settings, Frequency"](#) on page [96](#).

9. Frequency LFO, Stock + Enable. Frequency LFO. See section [6.4.7 "Frequency LFO Sub-panel"](#) on page [91](#).

10. Voice Oscillator. Voice Parameters Oscillator. See the next section.

10.4.5 ADDsynth / Voice Parameters / Voice Oscillator

The ADDsynth Voice Oscillator panel is tucked in the lower left side of the ADDSynth Voice Parameters editor.

1. Phase
2. Use
3. Waveform graph
4. Change
5. Sound
6. Unison
7. Current Voice
8. C
9. P
10. Close Window

1. Phase. Voice Oscillator Phase.

Values: 0 to 360 (0 to 2π)

2. Use Oscil. Use Oscillator. If the **Current Voice** is set to a value greater than 1, meaning that one is editing additional voices, then this dropdown item also includes the values of all oscillators less than this one, marked as "External". For example, if one is currently editing current voice 3, then the dropdown list includes **Internal**, **Ext. 1**, and **Ext. 2**.

Values: Internal*, Other oscillators

3. Waveform graph. Waveform Graph. Shows a period of the currently configured oscillator.

4. Change. ADDSynth Voice Oscillator Change. This button brings up the ADDsynth Oscillator Editor dialog. This dialog is described elsewhere.

5. Sound. ADDSynth Oscillator Type (sound/noise). Sound/Noise choice. Select the mode of the oscillator (sound versus white noise).



Figure 121: Voice Oscillator Choices

Values: Sound*, Noise (white), Noise (pink)

If white **Noise** is selected, then the waveform graph simply announces "White Noise". Also, the **Unison** control is disabled.



Figure 122: White Noise in ADDSynth Voice

If white **Noise** is selected, then the waveform graph simply announces "Pink Noise". Also, the **Unison** control is disabled.



Figure 123: Pink Noise in ADDSynth Voice

6. Unison. Unison is useful in creating the chorus like sound of many simultaneous oscillators.

Values: Off*, On

Enabling this item causes the Unison-related items to become enabled (they are discussed next, starting with **Size** and **Frequency Spread**).

1. **Size**
2. **Frequency Spread**
3. **Ph.rnd**
4. **Stereo**
5. **Vibrato**
6. **V.speed**
7. **Invert**

1. Unison Size. Sets the number of unison sub-voices.

Values: 2* to 50

2. Unison Frequency Spread. Frequency spread of the unison (cents).

Values: 0 to 200, 44.6*

3. Phase Randomness. Unison Phase Randomness.

Values: 0 to 127*

4. Stereo Spread. Unison Stereo Spread.

Values: 0 to 127, 64*

5. Unison Vibrato. Unison Vibrato.

Values: 0 to 127, 64*

6. Vibrato Speed. Unison Vibrato Average Speed.

Values: 0 to 127, 64*

7. Phase Invert. Unison Phase Invert. Values: None*, Random, 50%, 33%, 25%, 20%

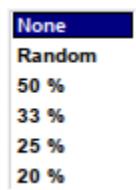


Figure 124: Unison Phase Invert Dropdown

Finally, at the bottom of the ADDsynth Voice Part dialog, we find the last few controls.

1. Current Voice. Current Voice.

Values: 1* to 8

2. C. Copy D note parameters ("DnoteParameters").

3. P. Paste D note parameters ("DnoteParameters").

4. Close Window. Close.

10.5 ADDsynth / Voice List

The ADDsynth Voices List shows a summary of voices 1 to 8, and allows some overall control of them, almost like a simple mixer. It is brought on-screen via the **Show Voice List** button of the ADDsynth global part editor.



Figure 125: ADDsynth Voices List

1. No. (1 to 8)
2. Waveform
3. Vol
4. Pan
5. R.
6. Detune
7. Vib. Depth
8. Hide Voice List

1. No. (1 to 8). Voice List Number. This check-box enables or disables a given voice in the current part.

Values: Off, On

2. Waveform Icon. Waveform Icon. The waveform icon shows a rough rendering of the actual shape of the voice waveform, or the letter N if the voice is constructed from white noise. Note that this picture isn't updated, if the voice is edited, until the voice list is closed and reopened.

3. Vol. Voice Volume. This slider controls the relative volume of a given voice in the current part.

Values: 0 to 127, 100*

4. Pan. Voice Panning (0/leftmost is Random). This slider controls the panning of a given voice in the current part.

Values: 0 to 127, 64*

5. R. Resonance On/Off. Enable/disable the resonance effect of a voice. Note that the resonance is configured in by the Resonance dialog brought up by the **Resonance** button at the bottom of the ADDsynth main dialog. The resonance dialog has its own Enable button, as well. These seem to be independent settings.

Values: Off, On*

6. Detune Value. This read-only text-box shows the current value of detune as selected by its slider.

7. Detune. Fine Detune (cents).

Values: -35 to 35, 0*

8. Vib. Depth. Frequency LFO Amount/Depth. This setting can be very useful because, with the detune settings, one can create very good sounding instruments.

Values: 0 to 127, 40*

9. Hide Voice List. Hide Voice List. A Close button, really, and that is what it is in the latest version of *Yoshimi*.

10.6 ADDsynth / Oscillator

Pressing the ambiguously-named **Change** button in the ADDsynth voice-editor dialog brings up a very complex dialog for modifying the harmonics of the voice.

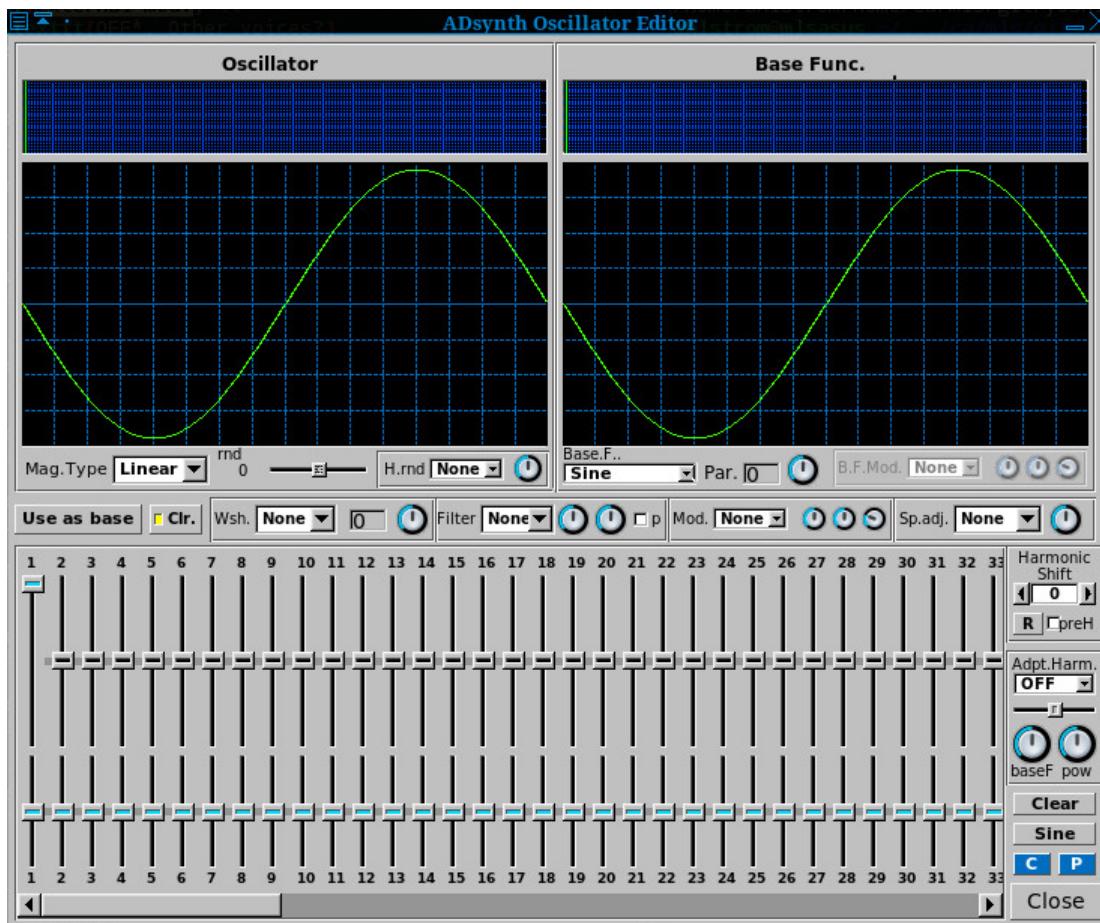


Figure 126: ADDsynth Oscillator Editor

This item is nearly identical to the PADsynth harmonic editor depicted in figure 141 "Harmonic Content Editor" on page 169, except for the items noted below. Obviously, it is a topic unto itself!

1. **Oscillator Spectrum Graph**
2. **Oscillator Waveform Graph**
3. **Mag.Type**
4. **rnd** (ADDsynth Oscillator Editor only)
5. **H.rnd** (ADDsynth Oscillator Editor only)
6. **H.rnd knob** (ADDsynth Oscillator Editor only)

1. Oscillator Spectrum Graph. Oscillator Spectrum Graph. This graph shows the spectrum of the oscillator as a series of vertical lines, a kind of frequency histogram.

2. Oscillator Waveform Graph. Oscillator Waveform Graph. This graph shows the temporal waveform of the oscillator.

3. Mag.Type. Oscillator Magnitude Type. Sets how the magnitudes from the user interface behave. See the values below.

4. rnd. rnd. Sets the randomness of the oscillator output. There are 2 types of randomness provided. The first type of randomness is *group randomness*, where the oscillator starts at random positions within the waveform, and the second type of randomness is *phase randomness*, which is settable from -64 (the maximum) to -1 (the minimum), the oscillator is phase distorted, and each harmonic is from 1 (the maximum) to 63 (the minimum). A setting of zero (0) is no randomness. One can use this parameter to make warm sounds like analogue synthesizers.

5. H.rnd. Harmonic Amplitude Randomness. Adjusts how the randomness is employed. Not sure how this works, so, for now, experiment!

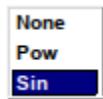


Figure 127: ADDsynth Oscillator Harmonic Randomness Selections

Values: None, Pow, and Sin

6. H.rnd knob. Harmonic Amplitude Randomness Knob. This knob provides the oscillator's spectrum-adjust parameter.

Values: 0 to 127, 64*

10.7 ADDsynth / Resonance

This dialog, shared in common with the PADsynth editor, is a stock user-interface element described in section [6.3 "Stock Resonance Settings" on page 84](#).

11 PADsynth

The *Yoshimi* PADsynth dialog is a complex dialog for creating a pad instrument, "PADsynth" or "PAD-note" is engine that makes very beautiful pads and other instruments. (These instruments can be exported for use with other programs too).

The PADsynth dialog consists of two major tabs, **Harmonic Structure** and **EnvelopesLFOs**. Each of these tabs is complex, so the discussion will break the tabs down by sub-sections.

11.1 PADsynth / Algorithm

The complexity of the PADsynth dialog merely reflects the complexity of the PADsynth algorithms.

11.1.1 PADsynth / Algorithm / General

The PADsynth algorithm generates very beautiful sounds, even if its idea is much simpler than other algorithms. It generates a perfectly looped wave-table sample which can be used in instruments. It easily generates sounds of ensembles, choirs, metallic sounds (bells) and many other types of sound. Paul Nasca wanted to make this algorithm known, and everyone is welcome to learn and use this algorithm into one's projects or products (non-commercial or commercial).

Quote [25]:

You will not be disappointed by this algorithm.

I hope that this algorithm will be implemented in many software/hardware synthesizers. Use it, spread it, write about it, create beautiful instruments with it. If your synthesizer uses plenty of samples, you can use this algorithm to generate many ready-to-use samples.

This algorithm, this page, the images, the implementations from this page, the audio examples, the parameter files from this page are released under Public Domain by Nasca Octavian Paul. e-mail: zynaddsubfx AT yahoo DOT com

In order to understand how this algorithm works, one needs to be familiar with howto think about musical instruments. Please read an introduction for the description of the meaning and the importance of bandwidth of each harmonic and randomness.

This algorithm generates some large wave-tables that can be played at different speeds to get the desired sound. This algorithm describes only how these wave-tables are generated. The result is a perfectly looped wave-table. Unlike other synthesis methods, which use the Inverse Fast Fourier Transform, this one does not use overlap/add methods and there is only one IFFT for the whole sample.

The basic steps are:

1. Make a very large array that represents the amplitude spectrum of the sound (all default values are zero).
2. Generate the distribution of each harmonic in the frequency spectrum and add it to the array.
3. Put random phases to each frequency of the spectrum.
4. Do a single Inverse Fourier Transform of the whole spectrum. There is no need of any overlapping windows, because there is only one single IFFT for the whole sample.

The output is a sample which can be used as a wave-table.

11.1.2 PADsynth / Algorithm / Harmonic Bandwidth

We consider one harmonic (overtone) as being composed of many frequencies. These sine components of one harmonic are spread over a certain band of frequencies. Higher harmonics have a wider bandwidth. In natural choirs/ensembles the bandwidth is proportional to the frequency of the harmonic.

The harmonics become wider and wider, until a certain frequency, where they may merge into a noise band (as in the full spectrum image from above shows). This is a normal thing and we recommend to not avoid this by limiting the bandwidth of the harmonics.

This describes the function of the spread of the harmonic. Here are some examples of how they can be spread:

1. A special case is where there is only a single sine component inside the harmonic In this case, the harmonic and the "sine component" are the same thing.
2. Detuned. In this case there are two sine components which are detuned.
3. Evenly spread inside the harmonic (all components have the same amplitude)

4. Normal (Gaussian) distribution. The sine components amplitude are bell-shaped. The largest amplitude is in the center of the band. This distribution gives the most natural sounds (it simulates a very, very large ensemble).

Of course, one can use many other profiles of the harmonic. *ZynAddSubFX*'s PADsynth module offers many ways to generate the harmonic profile. Also, it's very important that the harmonic must have the same amplitude, regardless of the profile functions/parameters and the bandwidth. For many more details of this algorithm, see Paul Nasca's document [25].

11.1.2.1 Tip: Using the PADsynth

Keep in mind that the resulting wave-tables are perfectly looped. There are some sound-generation ideas to keep in mind:

1. When using the wave-tables for instruments, on each Note On, start from a random position and not from the start. This avoids hearing the same sound on each keystroke.
2. One can use the same wave-table for generating stereo sounds, by playing the same wave-table at different positions for left and right. The best method is to create a difference between left and right of N/2.
3. Generate different wave-tables for different pitches and use the one that is closest to the desired pitch.
4. Upsample or downsample the amplitude array of the harmonic before running the algorithm, according to the fundamental frequency. In this case we need to set a parameter "base_frequency" which represents the frequency where the array is left unchanged.

Example: We have $A_orig[] = 1, 2, 1, 3, 0, 0, 1, 0$ and base_frequency is equal to 440 Hz. Here are some cases:

$A[]$ for 440 Hz: is the same as $A_orig[]$

$A[]$ for 220 Hz: is the $A_orig[]$ upsampled by factor of 2

so: $A[] = 1, 1, 1.5, 2, 1.5, 1, 2, 3, 1.5, 0, 0, 0, 0.5, 1, 0.5, 0$

(the original A_orig amplitudes are shown as bold)

$A[]$ for 880 Hz: the $A_orig[]$ is downsampled by a factor of 2

so: $A[] = 1.5, 2, 0, 0.5$

$A[]$ for F Hz: the $A_orig[]$ is scaled by a factor of 440/F.

Even if this idea is very simple, the resulting sounds are very natural, because it keeps the spectrum constant according to the frequency of the harmonic and not to the number of the harmonics. This follows from the document where Paul Nasca describes some principles regarding synthesis.

11.2 PADsynth / Harmonic Structure

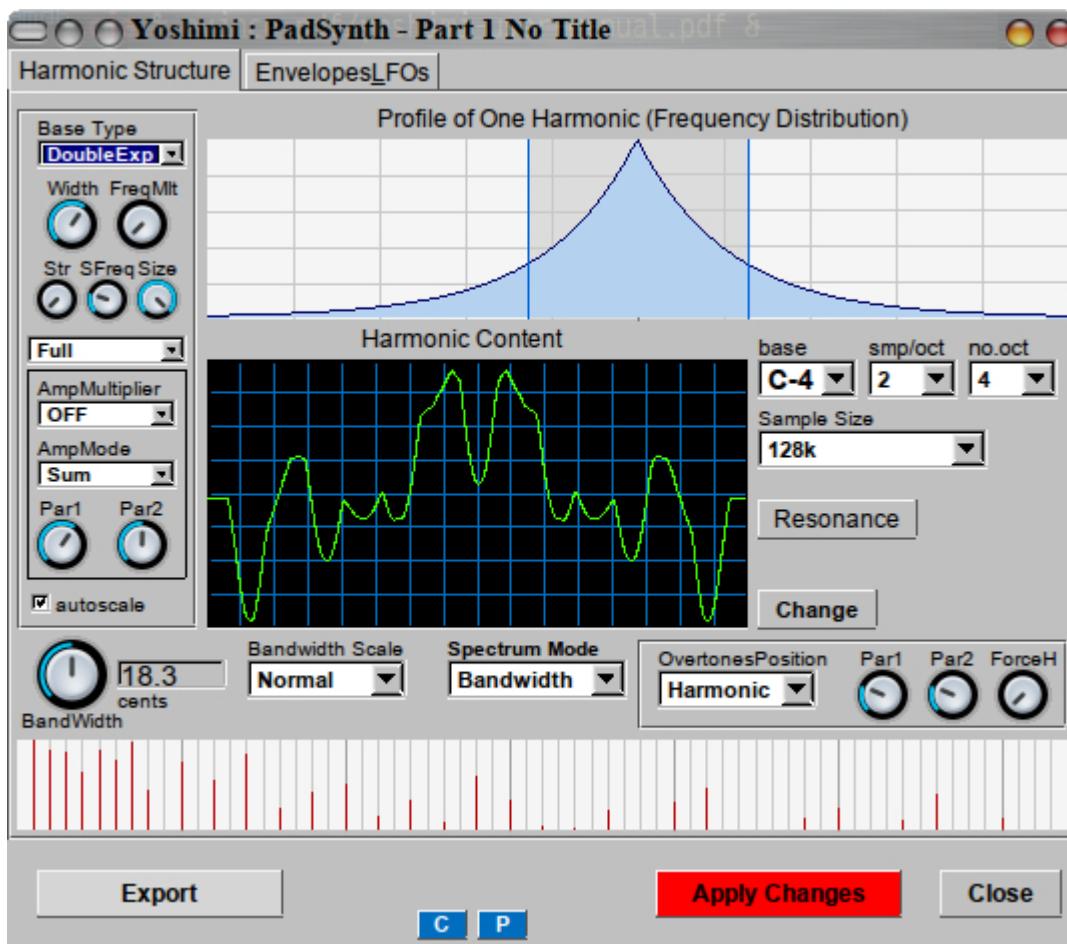


Figure 128: PADsynth Edit Dialog

Note how, in the newer versions of *Yoshimi*, the part number and part name are part of the window caption. There are a lot of parameter sections to keep track of, and to describe.

1. Basics (section)
2. Harmonic (section)
3. Resonance (section)
4. Change (section)
5. Bandwidth and Position (section)
6. Export (section)
7. C
8. P
9. Apply Changes
10. Close

Some of these elements have their own sections devoted to them, below.

11.2.1 PADsynth / Harmonic Structure / Basics

1. **BaseType**
2. **Width**
3. **FreqMlt**
4. **Str**
5. **SFreq**
6. **Size**
7. **Full/Upper/Lower**
8. **AmpMultiplier**
9. **AmpMode**
10. **Par1**
11. **Par2**

1. BaseType. Base Type of Harmonic.



Figure 129: Base Type of Harmonic

Values: Gauss*, Square, DoubleExp

2. Width. Width of Harmonic. The lowest value yields a very thin **Profile of One Harmonic (Frequency Distribution)** waveform, pretty close to a Dirac delta function (in this case, pretty close to a sine wave). The highest value yields a broadband spectrum, almost a flat spectrum, but it has a hump around the center frequency.

Values: 0 to 127

3. FreqMlt. Frequency Multiplier. Increasing this value causes more and more repetitions of the harmonic spectrum frequency distribution to appear. A value of 127 yields 32 repetitions of the spectrum.

Values: 0 to 127

4. Str. Stretch. Not quite sure what this one does. Increasing it adds harmonics to the spectrum and alters the distribution of their levels.

Values: 0 to 127

5. SFreq. Harmonic Sfreq. Not quite sure what this one does. Increasing it tightens up the spread of harmonics.

Values: 0 to 127

6. Size. Harmonic Size. Increasing this value preserves the shape of the spectrum, but widens it.

Values: 0 to 127

7. Full/Upper/Lower. Harmonic Sidebands. These menu entries select the full spectrum, or filter in only the upper sidebands of the spectrum, or the lower sidebands.

Values: 0 to 127



Figure 130: PADsynth Full/Upper/Lower Harmonics

Values: Full*, Upper Half, Lower Half

- 8. AmpMultiplier.** Amplitude Multiplier. These values spread out the frequency components in various ways.



Figure 131: PADsynth Amplitude Multiplier

Values: OFF*, Gauss, Sine, Flat

- 9. AmpMode.** Amplitude Mode.

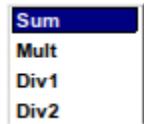


Figure 132: PADsynth Amplitude Mode

Values: Sum*, Mult, Div1, Div2

- 10. Par1.** Harmonic Parameter 1. Increasing this parameter narrows the width of the central spectral component.

Values: 0 to 127

- 11. Par2.** Harmonic Parameter 2. Varying this parameter changes the relative amplitude of the central spectral component and the sidebands.

Values: 0 to 127

11.2.2 PADsynth / Harmonic Structure / Harmonic

1. Profile of One Harmonic
2. Harmonic Content Window
3. base
4. smp/oct
5. no.oct
6. Sample Size
7. Resonance (section)
8. Change (section)

1. Profile of One Harmonic. Profile of One Harmonic (Frequency Distribution).

2. Harmonic Content Window. Harmonic Content Window.

3. base.



Figure 133: Harmonic Base Dropdown

Values: C-2, G-2, C-3, G-3, C-4*, G-4, C-5, G-5, G-6

4. smp/oct. Harmonic Samples Per Octave.

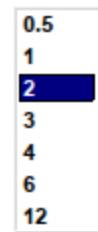


Figure 134: Harmonic Samples Per Octave

5. no.oct. Number of Octaves of Harmonic.

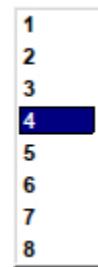


Figure 135: Harmonic Number of Octaves

Values: 1, 2, 3, 4*, 5, 6, 7, 8

6. Sample Size. Harmonic Sample Size.

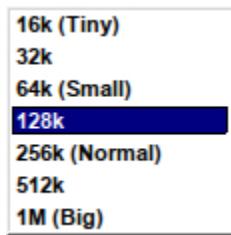


Figure 136: Harmonic Sample Size Dropdown

Values: 16k (Tiny), 32k, 64k (Small), 128k*, 256k (Normal), 512k, 1M (Big)

11.2.3 PADsynth / Harmonic Structure / Bandwidth and Position

1. **BandWidth**
2. **cents**
3. **Bandwidth Scale**
4. **Spectrum Mode**
5. **OvertonesPosition**
6. **Par1**
7. **Par2**
8. **ForceH**
9. **Harmonics Plot**

1. BandWidth. Harmonics Bandwidth.

Values: 0 to 127

2. cents. Bandwidth Reading (cents).

3. Bandwidth Scale. Bandwidth Scale.

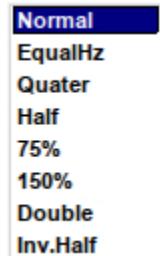


Figure 137: Harmonics Bandwidth Scale.

Values: Normal, EqualHz, Quater, Half, 75%, 150%, Double, Inv. Half

4. Spectrum Mode. Harmonics Spectrum Mode.



Figure 138: PADsynth Harmonics Spectrum Mode

Values: **Bandwidth***, **Discrete**, **Continuous**

5. OvertonesPosition. Overtones Position.



Figure 139: PADsynth Overtones Position

Values: **Harmonic***, **ShiftU**, **ShiftL**, **PowerU**, **PowerL**, **Sine**, **Power**

6. Par1. PADSynth Bandwidth Parameters 1. If the **Overtones Position** drop-down is set to something other than **Harmonic**, then this knob changes the harmonic lines shown in the spectrum view just below this item. It is best to play with this setting and observe and hear the changes it makes.

7. Par2. PADSynth Bandwidth Parameters 2. If the **Overtones Position** drop-down is set to something other than **Harmonic**, then this knob changes the harmonic lines shown in the spectrum view (**Harmonics Plot**) just below this item. It is best to play with this setting and observe and hear the changes it makes.

8. ForceH. PADSynth Bandwidth ForceH. If the **Overtones Position** drop-down is set to something other than **Harmonic**, then this knob changes the harmonic lines shown in the spectrum view just below this item. It is best to play with this setting and observe and hear the changes it makes.

9. Harmonics Plot. PADSynth Harmonics Plot. Shows the position and amplitude of each of the harmonic lines that the settings will generate.

11.2.4 PADsynth / Harmonic Structure / Export

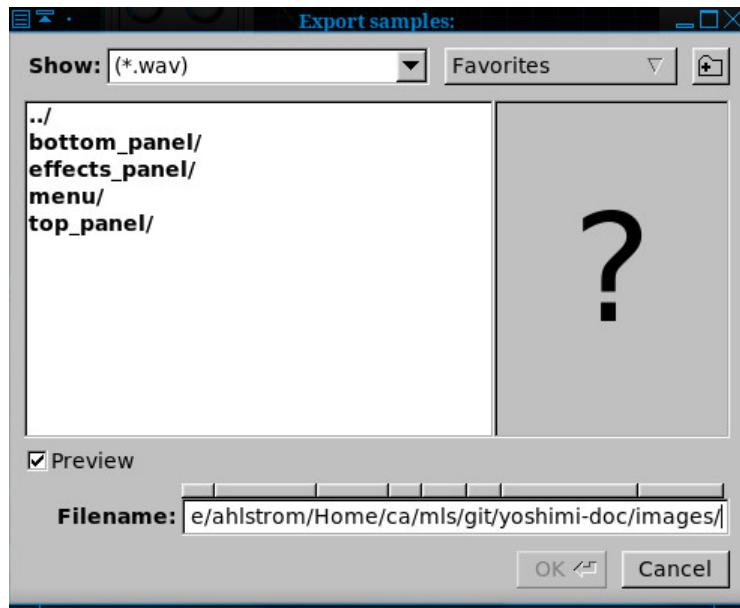


Figure 140: Harmonics Structure Export Dialog

This export dialog is a file dialog similar to other file dialogs in *Yoshimi*.

11.2.5 PADsynth / Harmonic Structure / Resonance

This dialog, shared in common with the ADDsynth editor, is a stock user-interface element described in section [6.3 "Stock Resonance Settings"](#) on page [84](#).

11.2.6 PADsynth / Harmonic Structure / Change

The ambiguously-named **Change** button brings up the Harmonic Content editor, which is another complex dialog. Like figure [126 "ADDsynth Oscillator Editor"](#) on page [158](#), it allows one to create an essentially unlimited number of oscillators.

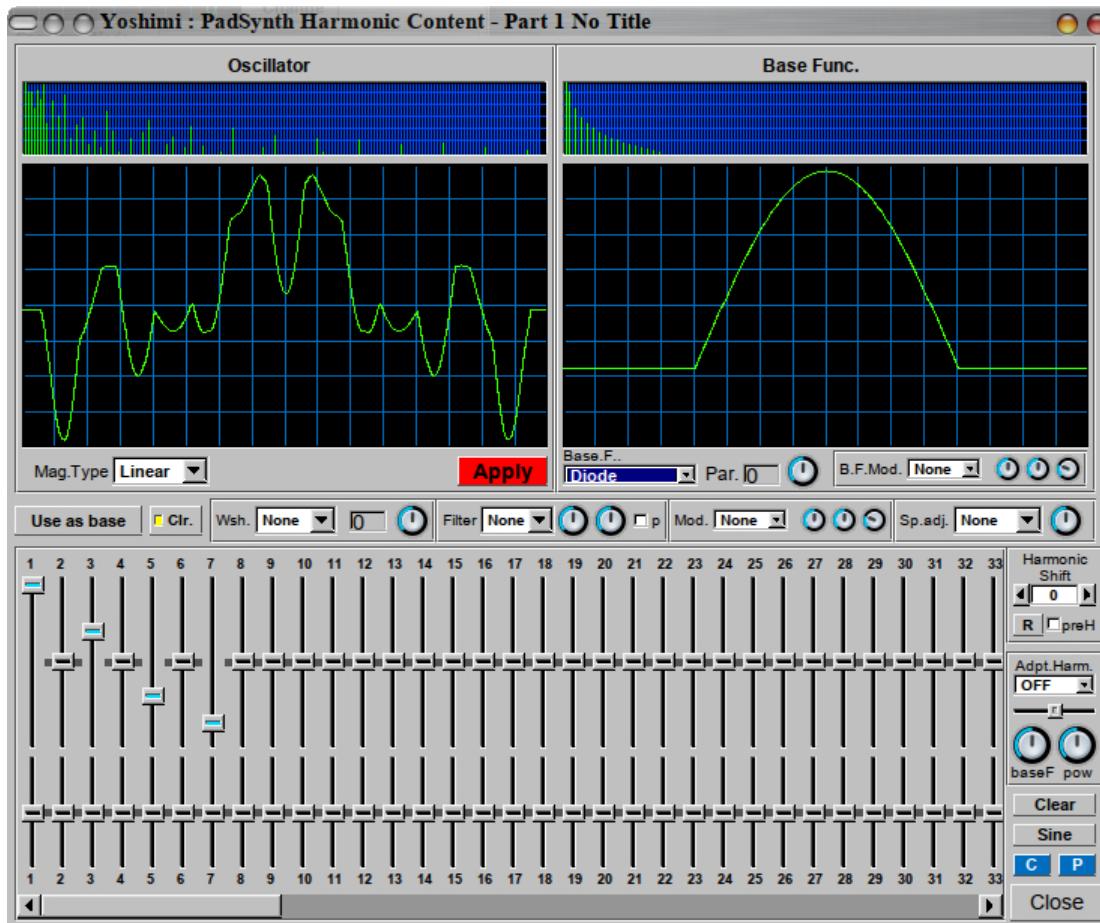


Figure 141: Harmonic Content Editor

This dialog is complex enough that it makes sense to break it down into sub-sections.

1. **Oscillator** (section)
2. **Base Function** (section)
3. **Middle** (section)
4. **Harmonic** (section)

11.2.6.1 PADsynth / Harmonic Structure / Change / Oscillator

1. **Oscillator Spectrum Graph**
2. **Oscillator Waveform Graph**
3. **Mag.Type**
4. **Apply**

1. Oscillator Spectrum Graph. Oscillator Spectrum Graph. This graph shows the spectrum of the oscillator as a series of vertical lines, a kind of frequency histogram.

2. Oscillator Waveform Graph. Oscillator Waveform Graph. This graph shows the temporal waveform of the oscillator.

3. Mag.Type. Oscillator Magnitude Type. Sets how the magnitudes from the user interface behave. See the values below.

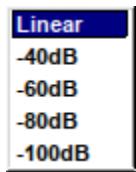


Figure 142: PADsynth Harmonic Content Mag Type

Values: Linear*, -40dB, -60db, -80dB, -100dB

4. Apply. PADsynth Harmonic Content Editor Apply Button.

11.2.6.2 PADsynth / Harmonic Structure / Change / Base Function

1. **Base Func. Spectrum Graph**
 2. **Base Func. Waveform Graph**
 3. **Base F..**
 4. **Par. Value**
 5. **Par. Wheel**
 6. **B.F.Mod.**
 7. **Wheel 1**
 8. **Wheel 2**
 9. **Wheel 3**
- 1. Base Func. Spectrum Graph.** Harmonic Base Function Spectrum Graph.
- 2. Base Func. Waveform Graph.** Harmonic Base Function Waveform Graph.
- 3. Base F.** Harmonic Base Function. Sets what function to use as the harmonics base function. One can use any base function as harmonics.

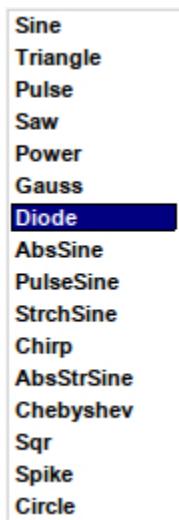


Figure 143: PADsynth Harmonic Content Base Function

Values: Sine*, Triangle, Pulse, Saw, Power, Gauss, Diode, AbsSine, PulseSine, StrchSine, Chirp, AbsStrSine, Chebyshev, Sqr, Spike, Circle

4. Par. Value. PADsynth Parameter Value.

5. Par. Wheel. PADsynth Parameter Wheel. Change the parameter of the base function.

6. B.F.Mod. PADSynth Base Frequency Mod. This item is very similar to the Harmonic Editor Modulation (**Mod.**) setting.

Values: **None***, **Rev**, **Sine**, **Pow**

7. Wheel 1. PADsynth Wheel 1. With the **B.F.Mod.** selection set to something other than **None**, this modifies one (unknown at this time) parameter of the modulation selection.

8. Wheel 2. PADsynth Wheel 2. With the **B.F.Mod.** selection set to something other than **None**, this modifies one (unknown at this time) parameter of the modulation selection.

9. Wheel 3. PADsynth Wheel 3. With the **B.F.Mod.** selection set to something other than **None**, this modifies one (unknown at this time) parameter of the modulation selection.

11.2.6.3 PADsynth / Harmonic Structure / Change / Middle

1. **Use as base**
2. **Clr.**
3. **Wsh.**
4. **Wsh Value**
5. **Wsh Wheel**
6. **Filter**
7. **Filter Wheel 1**
8. **Filter Wheel 2**
9. **Filter p**
10. **Mod.**
11. **Mod. Wheel 1**
12. **Mod. Wheel 2**
13. **Mod. Wheel 3**
14. **Sp.adj.**
15. **Sp.adj. Wheel**

1. Use as base. Use as Base. Convert the oscillator output to a base function. Changing the Base function or its parameter will erase the converted base function.

2. Clr. Clear. Clear the settings and make the oscillator equal to a base function. If this is cleared, one can click the **Use as base** button to make multiple conversions to base functions.

3. Wsh. Harmonic Editor Wave-shaping, "W.sh".

Wave shaping function that applies to the oscillator. It has one parameter that fine-tunes the wave-shaping function.

4. Wsh Value. Harmonic Editor Wave-shaping Value.



Figure 144: PADsynth Harmonic Content Editor Wave-Shaping Function

Values: **None***, **Atan**, **Asym1**, **Pow**, **Sine**, **Qnts**, **Zigzag**, **Lmt**, **LmtU**, **LmtL**, **ILmt**, **Clip**, **Asym2**, **Pow2**, **Sgm**

The type of wave-shaping distortion has much influence on how the overtones are being placed. Sometimes, one gets a "fat" bass, and sometimes, high frequencies are added, making the sound "crystal clear".

Atan & Sigmoid. This is the default setting. It is an easy way to apply loudness to a wave without getting undesired high overtones. Thus, it can be used both for making instruments that sound like "real" ones, but also for electronic music. The transformation turns, roughly said, every amplitude into a square amplitude. Thus, sine, power, pulse and triangle turn into a usual square wave, while a saw turns into a phased square wave. A chirp wave turns into a kind of phase modulated square wave.

Quants ("Qnts") Quantization adds high overtones early. It can be seen as an unnatural effect, which is often used for electronic music. The transformation is a bit similar to building the lower sum of a wave, mathematically said. This means that the transformation effect turns an "endless high" sampled wave into only a few samples. The more distortion one applies, the fewer samples will be used. Indeed, this is equivalent to say that more input amplification is used. To see this, here is a small sample of code, where "ws" is the (correctly scaled) amount of input amplification, and "n" the number of original samples.

If one turns on quantisation very high, one might be confused that, especially high notes, make no sound. The reason: High frequencies are "forgotten" if one samples with only few samples. Also, the sign of an amplitude can be forgotten. This behaviour might make some quantisations a bit unexpected.

Limiting ("Lmt*" and "Clip") Limiting usually means that for a signal, the amplitude is modified because it exceeds its maximum value. Overdrive, as often used for guitars, is often achieved by limiting: It happens because an amplifier "overdrives" the maximum amplitude it can deliver.

ZynAddSubFX has two types of limiting. Soft limiting, here as Lmt, means that the sound may not exceed a certain value. If the amplitude does so, it will simply be reduced to the limiting value. The overtones are generated in the lower frequencies first.

Hard limiting, is also called clipping and abbreviated Clip. This means that if the maximum is exceeded, instead of being constant at the limiting value, the original signal still has some influence on the output signal. Still, it does not exceed the limiting value. For ZynAddSubFX, a signal exceeding the limiting value will continue to grow "in the negative". This leads to overtones being generated on the full frequency band.

5. Wsh Wheel. Harmonic Editor Wave-shaping Wheel.

- 6. Filter.** Harmonic Editor Filter. Sets the type of the harmonic filter.

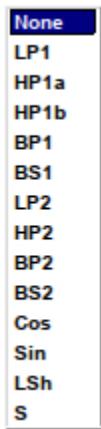


Figure 145: PADsynth Harmonic Content Filter

Values: **None***, LP1, HP1a, HP1b, BP1, BS1, LP2, HP2, BP2, BS2, Cos, Sin, LSh, S

7. Filter Wheel 1. Harmonic Editor Filter, Wheel 1. The knob on the left sets one filter parameter, which is either the cutoff frequency, or, if the filter is a bandpass filter, the lower corner frequency. It is best to play with this knob with various kinds of filters selected from the filter drop-down list.

8. Filter Wheel 2. Harmonic Editor Filter, Wheel 2. The knob on the right sets, if the filter is a bandpass filter, the upper corner frequency. It is best to play with this knob with various kinds of filters selected from the filter drop-down list.

9. Filter p. Harmonic Editor Filter, p. If set, the filter is applied before waveshaping.

10. Mod. Harmonic Editor Modulation.

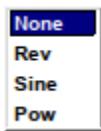


Figure 146: PADsynth Harmonic Content Editor Modulation

Values: **None***, Rev, Sine, Pow

11. Mod. Wheel 1. Harmonic Editor Modulation Wheel 1. With the **Mod.** selection set to something other than **None**, this modifies one (unknown at this time) parameter of the modulation selection.

12. Mod. Wheel 2. Harmonic Editor Modulation Wheel 2. With the **Mod.** selection set to something other than **None**, this modifies one (unknown at this time) parameter of the modulation selection.

13. Mod. Wheel 3. Harmonic Editor Modulation Wheel 3. With the **Mod.** selection set to something other than **None**, this modifies one (unknown at this time) parameter of the modulation selection.

14. Sp.adj. Harmonic Editor Spectrum Adjust. Adjust the spectrum of the waveform.

RMS normalize. Enables the RMS normalization method (recommended); this keeps the same loudness regardless the harmonic content.

Below are the harmonics and their phases. One can use them to add to oscillator harmonics that has the waveform of the base function. Increasing the number of harmonics has virtually no effect on CPU usage. Right click to set a harmonic/phase to the default value.



Figure 147: PADsynth Harmonic Content Editor Spectrum Adjust

Values: **None***, Pow, ThrsD, ThrsU

15. Sp.adj. Wheel. Harmonic Editor Spectrum Adjust Wheel.

11.2.6.4 PADsynth / Harmonic Structure / Change / Harmonic

1. **Harmonics Amplitude**
2. **Harmonics Bandwidth**
3. **Harmonics Scrollbar**
4. **Harmonic Shift**
5. **Harmonic Shift R**
6. **Harmonic Shift preH**
7. **Adpt.Harm.**
8. **Adpt.Harm. Slider**
9. **Adpt.Harm. baseF**
10. **Adpt.Harm. pow**
11. **Clear**
12. **Sine**
13. **C**
14. **P**
15. **Close**

16. Harmonics Amplitude. Harmonics Amplitude. Provides 128 sliders for the amplitude of harmonics.

17. Harmonics Bandwidth. Harmonics Bandwidth. Provides 128 sliders for the bandwidth of harmonics.

18. Harmonics Scrollbar. Harmonics Scrollbar.

19. Harmonic Shift. Harmonics Shift.

20. Harmonic Shift R. Harmonics Shift Reset. Pressing this button resets the **Harmonic Shift** value to zero (0).

21. Harmonic Shift preH. Harmonics Shift preH. If set, applies the harmonic shift before the filtering and waveshaping.

22. Adpt.Harm. Adaptive Harmonics. Changes the type of the adaptive harmonics. (The tooltip spells "adaptive" wrong.)

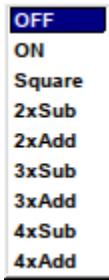


Figure 148: PADsynth Adaptive Harmonic Type

Values: OFF*, ON, Square, 2xSub, 2xAdd, 3xSub, 3xAdd, 4xSub, 4xAdd

23. Adpt.Harm. Slider. Adaptive Harmonics Slider. If something other than OFF or ON is selected, then this slider changes the waveform appearance. Even more informative is the change in the spectrum that is shown. Obviously, this setting is something to play with while listening to the waveform.

24. Adpt.Harm. baseF. Adaptive Harmonics Base Frequency. If something other than OFF is selected, then this knob changes the waveform appearance. Even more informative is the change in the spectrum that is shown. Obviously, this setting is something to play with while listening to the waveform.

25. Adpt.Harm. pow. Adaptive Harmonics Power. If something other than OFF is selected, then this knob changes the waveform appearance. Even more informative is the change in the spectrum that is shown. Obviously, this setting is something to play with while listening to the waveform.

26. Clear. Harmonics Clear. Clears the harmonics settings.

27. Sine. Harmonics Sine. The user is prompted to "Convert to sine?" This seems simply to reset the base function to a sine wave.

28. C. Harmonics Copy.

29. P. Harmonics Paste.

30. Close. Harmonics Close.

11.3 PADsynth / Envelopes and LFOs

This dialog is reached by click on the **Envelopes LFOs** tab of the PADsynth parameters dialog. This tab is next to the **Harmonic Structure** tab.

It consists of nothing but stock user-interface elements that are described elsewhere in this manual.

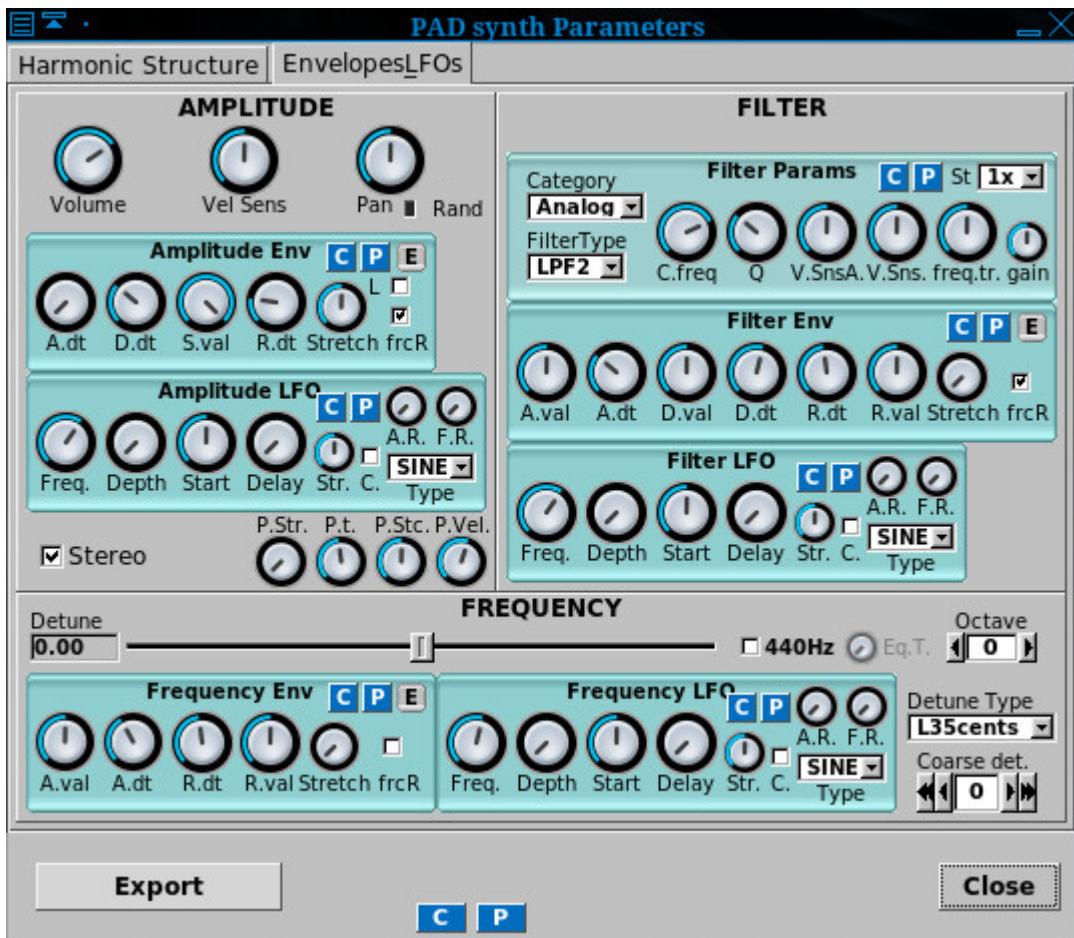


Figure 149: PADSynth Parameters, Envelopes and LFOs

1. AMPLITUDE
2. FILTER (section)
3. FREQUENCY (section)
4. Export
5. C
6. P
7. Close

One thing to note is that the small **Red** reset button next to the **Pan** knob is no longer present. Instead, one can use a right-click on this knob to reset it to its home position and value.

31. AMPLITUDE. See section 10.1 "ADDsynth / AMPLITUDE" on page 144. This stock dialog section provide volume, velocity sensing, panning, an amplitude envelope sub-panel, and an amplitude LFO sub-panel.

32. FILTER. See section 10.2 "ADDsynth / FILTER" on page 146.

33. FREQUENCY. See section 10.3 "ADDsynth / FREQUENCY" on page 147.

34. Export. Very similar to figure 140 "Harmonics Structure Export Dialog" on page 168.

35. C. The stock copy dialog.

36. P. The stock paste dialog.

37. Close. Close.

12 SUBsynth

The *Yoshimi* SUBsynth dialog is yet another complex dialog, this time for creating a subtractive-synthesis instrument, "SUBsynth" or "SUBnote" is a simple engine which makes sounds through subtraction of harmonics from white noise. [25]

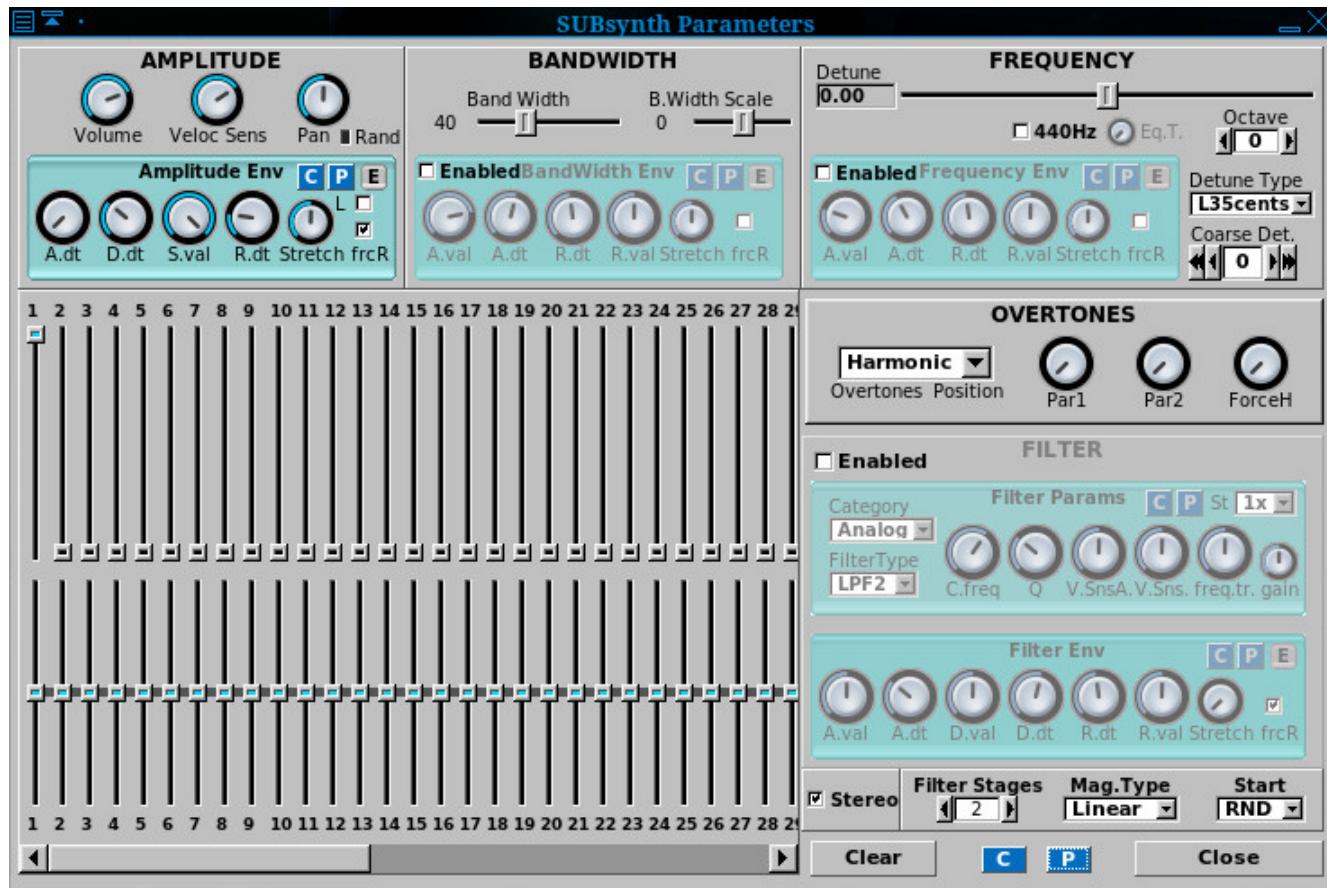


Figure 150: SUBsynth Edit Dialog

One thing to note is that the small **Red** reset button next to the **Pan** knob is no longer present. Instead, one can use a right-click on this knob to reset it to its home position and value.

This dialog, though very complex, consists of a number of stock sections that are described elsewhere in this manual. Some descriptions are repeated here, though.

1. **AMPLITUDE** (section)
2. **BANDWIDTH** (section)
3. **FREQUENCY** (section)
4. **OVERTONES** (section)
5. **FILTER** (section)
6. **Harmonics** (section)
7. **Clear**

8. **C**
9. **P**
10. **Close**

12.1 SUBsynth / AMPLITUDE

1. **Volume**
2. **Vel Sens**
3. **Pan**
4. **Rand**
5. **Reset (panning)** (red button)
6. **Amplitude Env** (stock sub-panel)

1. Volume. SUBsynth Volume.

Values: 1 to 127, 64*

2. Vel Sens. Velocity Sensing function, rightmost/max to disable.

Values: 1 to 127, 64*

3. Pan. Global panning, leftmost/zero gives random panning.

Values: 1 to 127, 64*

4. Rand. Indicator for activation of random panning.

5. Reset (panning). Reset Panning.

6. Amplitude Env. Amplitude Envelope. See section for this stock sub-panel.

12.2 SUBsynth / BANDWIDTH

1. **BandWidth**
2. **B.Width Scale**
3. **Bandwidth Env**

1. BandWidth. SUBsynth Bandwidth. Sets the bandwidth of each harmonic.

Values: 1 to 127, 40*

2. B.Width Scale. SUBsynth Bandwidth Scale. Sets how the bandwidth of each harmonic is increased according to the frequency. The default (0) increases the bandwidth linearly according to the frequency. This setting is kind of a "frequency stretch" parameter.

Values: -64 to 63, 0*

3. Bandwidth Env. SUBsynth Bandwidth.

1. **Enabled**
2. **A.val**
3. **A.dt**
4. **R.dt**
5. **R.val**
6. **Stretch**
7. **frcR**
8. **C**

9. P**10. E**

1. Enabled. Enable the panel.

2. A.val. Attack value. We need to figure out what this means.

Values: 0 to 127, 64*

3. A.dt. Attack duration. Attack time.

Values: 0 to 127, 40*

4. R.dt. Release time.

Values: 0 to 127, 60*

5. R.val. Release Value. Actually present only on the Frequency Env sub-panel.

Values: 0 to 127, 64*

6. Stretch. Bandwidth Stretch. On lower notes make the bandwidth lower.

Values: 0 to 127, 64*

7. frcR. Forced release. If this option is turned on, the release will go to the final value, even if the sustain level is not reached.

Also present in this sub-panel are the usual **Copy** and **Paste** buttons that call up a copy-parameters or paste-parameters dialog, as well as a button to bring up the editor window.

Values: Off, On*

12.3 SUBsynth / FREQUENCY

1. Detune**2. FREQUENCY Slider****3. 440Hz****4. Eq.T****5. Octave****6. Detune Type****7. Coarse Det.****8. Frequency Env**

1. Detune. Frequency Detune Indicator

2. FREQUENCY Slider. Frequency Slider.

Values: -35 to 34.99

3. 440Hz. Frequency 440Hz. Fixes the base frequency to 440Hz. One can adjust it with detune settings.

4. Eq.T. Frequency Equalize Time. Sets how the frequency varies according to the keyboard. Set to the leftmost setting for a fixed frequency.

5. Octave. Frequency Octave. Octave Shift.

6. Detune Type. Frequency Detune Type. Sets the "Detune" and "Coarse Detune" behavior

7. Coarse Det. Frequency Coarse Detune, "C.Detune".

8. Frequency Env. Frequency Envelope Stock Sub-Panel.

1. **Enable**
2. **A.value** or **A.val**
3. **A.dt**
4. **R.dt**
5. **R.val**
6. **Stretch**
7. **frcR**
8. **C**
9. **P**
10. **E**

See section

12.4 SUBsynth / OVERTONES

The harmonics settings controls the harmonic intensities/relative bandwidth. Moving the sliders upwards increases the relative bandwidth. Please note that, if one increases the number of harmonics, the CPU usage increases. Right click to set the parameters to default values.

1. **Overtones Position**
2. **Par1**
3. **Par2**
4. **ForceH**

1. Overtones Position. Subsynth Overtones Position.

Values: **Harmonic**, **ShiftU**, **ShiftL**, **PowerU**, **PowerL**, **Sine**, **Power**, **Shift**

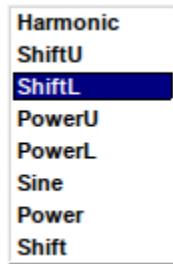


Figure 151: Harmonic Type Dropdown

2. Par1. Subsynth Overtones Par1.

Values: 0 to 127

3. Par2. Subsynth Overtones Par2.

Values: 0 to 127

4. ForceH. Subsynth Overtones ForceH.

Values: 0 to 127

12.5 SUBsynth / FILTER

1. **Enabled**

2. **Filter Params** (stock sub-panel)
3. **Filter Env** (stock sub-panel)
4. **Stereo**
5. **Filter Stages**
6. **Mag. Type**
7. **Start**

1. Enabled. SUBsynth Filter Enabled.

2. Filter Params. Filter Params. See section [6.2.5 "Filter Parameters User Interface"](#) on page [82](#), which describes this stock sub-panel.

3. Filter Env. Filter Params. See section [6.5.5 "Envelope Settings for Filter"](#) on page [97](#), which describes this stock sub-panel.

4. Stereo. SUBsynth Stereo. Make the instrument stereo. The CPU usage goes up about 2 times. This item isn't really a **FILTER** item, it is just located in that same area.

5. Filter Stages. Filter Stages. Filter Order. Sets the number of filter stages applied to white noise. This parameter affects the CPU usage.

Values: 0, 1, 2*, 3, 4, 5

6. Mag. Type. Magnitude Type. Sets the type of magnitude settings (linear versus dB values)

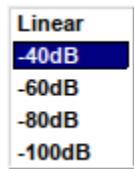


Figure 152: SUBSynth Magnitude Type Dropdown

Values: Linear, -40dB, -60dB, -80dB, -100dB

7. Start. Start Type. How to start the filters.

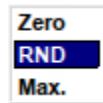


Figure 153: SUBsynth Start Type

Values: Zero, RND, Max.

12.6 SUBsynth / Harmonics

This section consists of 64 sliders to control the amplitude of the narrow noise band at a given harmonic, and 64 sliders to control the bandwidth of each band.

The top row of SUBsynth sliders sets the *relative* amplitude. This use of the word "relative" is an important distinction, as the overall level of the output is normalised; all actual levels will be dependent on whichever is the highest.

The bottom row sets the bandwidth of each harmonic. If one has just the fundamental, and drops the bandwith to the minimum, one gets very nearly a sinewave. Set it to maximum and it is very obviously filtered noise.

13 Kit Edit

The Yoshimi Kit dialog is a dialog for creating a set of drums or layered instruments. It provides a way to use individual voices and synth blocks to create drumlike sounds, or complex layered sounds. Within this window one can create drum kits, layered instruments, or one can combine more instruments into one instrument.

Is this true of *Yoshimi*?:

Item 0 is a special type: it cannot be disabled (but it can be muted), to edit it one must use "ADs edit" or "SUBs edit" from the part window.

| Instrument Kit | | | | | | | | | | |
|----------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|------------------------|---------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|--------------------------|-------|--|--|
| No. | M. | | Min.k | Max.k | ADsynth | SUBsynth | PADsynth | FX.r. | | |
| 1 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | 0 | m R M 1 127 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | OFF | | |
| 2 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | Snare - Stick + Snares | 38 m R M 1 40 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | OFF | | |
| 3 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | Snare-Head+Resonance | 38 m R M 1 40 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | OFF | | |
| 4 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | HiHat closed 2 | 42 m R M 1 42 | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | OFF | | |
| 5 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | HiHat closed long 1 | 44 m R M 1 44 | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | OFF | | |
| 6 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | HiHat open 1 | 46 m R M 1 46 | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | OFF | | |
| 7 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | Crash Cymbal 3 | 49 m R M 1 49 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | OFF | | |
| 8 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | Side Stick | 37 m R M 1 37 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | OFF | | |
| 9 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | Tom | 50 m R M 1 81 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | OFF | | |
| 10 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | Bass Drum 2 | 36 m R M 1 36 | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | OFF | | |
| 11 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | Acoustic Bass Drum | 35 m R M 1 35 | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | OFF | | |
| 12 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | Low Floor Tom | 41 m R M 1 41 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | OFF | | |
| 13 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | High Floor Tom | 43 m R M 1 43 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | OFF | | |
| 14 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | Low Tom | 45 m R M 1 45 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | OFF | | |
| 15 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | Low-Mid Tom | 47 m R M 1 47 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | OFF | | |
| 16 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | Hi-Mid Tom | 48 m R M 1 48 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | OFF | | |

Mode **MULTI**

Drum mode

Close Window

Figure 154: Kit Edit Dialog

1. **Rows 1 to 16.** This dialog contains 16 identical rows containing the following elements, in the order given:
 1. **No.**
 2. **Enable**
 3. **M.**
 4. **Instrument Name**
 5. **Min.k**
 6. **m** (set minimum note)

7. **R** (reset default note range)
8. **M** (set maximum note)
9. **Max.k**
10. **ADsynth**
 1. **Enable**
 2. **edit**
11. **SUBsynth**
 1. **Enable**
 2. **edit**
12. **PADsynth**
 1. **Enable**
 2. **edit**
13. **FX.r**
2. **Mode**
3. **Drum mode**
4. **Close Window**

Some items described in ZynAddSubFX that aren't seen in any diagrams:

1. **Kit Mode.** Enable the kit mode.
2. **Protect the kit.** when loading an instrument, only item 0 will be changed, Other items will remain untouched. This allows one to combine more instruments. If one wants to add more instruments to the kit, one must copy the item 0 to another item, because the item 0 will be replaced. If one loads master settings or clearx the instrument/master setting, the kit is cleared .
3. **Swap/Copy.** Swap two items or copy a item to other item.

1. No. Kit Row Number. Kit Item Number. A simple label to indicate the instrument number in the kit.

2. Enable. Kit Row Enable.

Value: **Off***, **On**

3. M. Kit Row "M". Mute an item of the kit.

4. Instrument Name. Kit Instrument Name.

5. Min.k. Kit Instrument Minimum Key. Sets the minimum key of the item of the kit.

6. m. Sets the minimum note of this instrument to value of the last note pressed.

7. R. Resets the minimum and maximum notes to their default values.

8. M. Sets the maximum note of this instrument to value of the last note pressed.

9. Max.k. Kit Instrument Maximum Key. Sets the maximum key of the item of the kit.

10. ADsynth. Kit ADDsynth. A checkbox is provided to enable/disable this synth component, and an edit button is provided to edit the component.

11. SUBsynth. Kit SUBsynth. A checkbox is provided to enable/disable this synth component, and an edit button is provided to edit the component.

12. PADsynth. Kit PADsynth. A checkbox is provided to enable/disable this synth component, and an edit button is provided to edit the component.

13. FX.r. Kit Effect. Chooses the Part Effect (PartFX) to process the item (OFF means that is unprocessed).

Values: OFF, FX1, FX2, FX3

14. Mode. Kit Mode.

We need a picture to show the full **Mode** menu.

- **Off** means no kit is enabled, so one only has the Add, Sub, and Pad sounds in the Instrument Edit window.
- **Multi** means all the kit items will sound together regardless of their note ranges.
- **Single** means only the lowest numbered item will sound in a given note range. There will be no overlap.
- **Crossfade** is described in detail below.

For example: Item 0 has **Min.k** set to 0 and **Max.k** set to 60, and Item 1 has **Min.k** set to 40 and **Max.k** set to 127.

In **SINGLE** mode, only Item 0 will sound in the note range 0 to 60, and Item 1 will sound in the range 61 to 127.

In **MULTI** mode, only Item 0 will sound in the range 0 to 40, both items will sound from 41 to 60, and only Item 1 will sound from 61 to 127.

Values: OFF*, MULTI, SINGLE.

The part's kit edit **Mode** menu has an extra entry called **Crossfade**. When cross-fade is set, one gets Multi behaviour with overlapping key ranges, but with a very smooth cross-fade between sequential pairs of kit items. This follows the pattern 1+2, 3+4, etc. Each pair will not affect any other kit items.

It doesn't matter which of the pair has the lower range, as long as there is a range overlap. The code is semi-intelligent, and any that are not paired will exhibit normal Multi behaviour. If one item in a pair is not enabled then the other one will exhibit normal Multi behaviour and will not fade at all.

An interesting effect is that if one of the pair is enabled, but muted or has no engines enabled, then the other one still fades through the overlap range, so one can get sounds fading out (or fading in) with increasing pitch!

If one wants a fade to come in then go out again, one needs two sets of pairs, with a hard non-overlapped point in the middle.

```
item 1 - min 0 max 60
item 2 - min 40 max 80 (fades up)
```

```
item 3 - min 81 max 100 (fades down)
item 4 - min 90 max 127
```

This feature is backward-compatible, in that older versions of *Yoshimi* will see it as an ordinary Multi – it uses a new variable stored in the instrument file that is simply ignored by earlier versions.

15. Drum mode. Kit Drum Mode. If drum-mode is set, then microtonal tuning is ignored for this kit, otherwise it could make drum sounds very unpredictable!

16. Close Window. Close.

14 Banks Collection

In this section, we attempt to collect and summarize all of the existing banks for *Yoshimi* and *ZynAddSubFX* that we can find. Many of them are supplied by the two projects.

Between all of the collections, there is a large amount of duplication. There is also semi-duplication, with slight variations on the same basic instrument. Various Linux distributions which package *ZynAddSubFX* and *Yoshimi* might add some banks to their versions of these packages. Thus, there are far more sound settings than we can discuss and categorize.

One thing we're looking for is a good General MIDI (GM) bank for *Yoshimi*. As part of our *Yoshimi Cookbook* [3], we include a basic General MIDI bank for. However, there are number of patches with no good implementation in it.

14.1 Yoshimi Banks

Yoshimi comes with the following banks, which may be found in `/usr/share/yoshimi/banks` as installed by the installer. In this case, it is the Debian installer.

1. **Arpeggios.** Also in *ZynAddSubFX*.
2. **Bass.** Also in *ZynAddSubFX*.
3. **Brass.** Also in *ZynAddSubFX*.
4. **chip.**
5. **Choir_and_Voice** Also in *ZynAddSubFX*, slightly different bank name.
6. **Drums.** Also in *ZynAddSubFX*, but with only one drum kit included.
7. **Dual.** Also in *ZynAddSubFX*.
8. **Fantasy.** Also in *ZynAddSubFX*.
9. **Guitar.** Also in *ZynAddSubFX*.
10. **Misc.** Also in *ZynAddSubFX*.
11. **Noises.** Also in *ZynAddSubFX*.
12. **Organ.** Also in *ZynAddSubFX*.
13. **Pads.** Also in *ZynAddSubFX*.
14. **Plucked.** Also in *ZynAddSubFX*.
15. **Reed_and_Wind.** Also in *ZynAddSubFX*, slightly different bank name.
16. **Rhodes.** Also in *ZynAddSubFX*.
17. **Splited.** Also in *ZynAddSubFX*, slightly different bank name.
18. **Strings.** Also in *ZynAddSubFX*.
19. **Synth.** Also in *ZynAddSubFX*.
20. **SynthPiano.** Also in *ZynAddSubFX*.
21. **The_Mysterious_Bank.** Also in *ZynAddSubFX*, slightly different bank name. *ZynAddSubFx* has three more mysterious banks (see next section).
22. **Will_Godfrey_Collection.**
23. **Will_Godfrey_Companion.**

14.2 Additional ZynAddSubFX Banks

ZynAddSubFX comes with the following banks, which may be found in the source code [28] or installation packages of this project. *ZynAddSubFX* has some of the same banks (as far as we can tell) as *Yoshimi*, but with the following additions:

1. **Companion.**
2. **Cormi_Noise and Cormi_Sound** [4].
3. **Laba170bank.**
4. **olivers-100.** Some very good instruments, including sitar and steel drums.
5. **the_mysterious_bank.**
6. **the_mysterious_bank_2.**
7. **the_mysterious_bank_3.**
8. **the_mysterious_bank_4.**

14.3 Additional Banks

Here are some additional banks we have found, or have built ourselves. It often happens that, later on, a site is no longer available. Or we forget from whence we got the banks. In these cases, the banks are stored in the `contrib/banks` directory of this project.

1. **Alex_J** The site seems to be gone/expired. So one will find these in the "contrib/banks" directory for safekeeping.
2. **Bells** We have no idea where we got this one. Lost track of that information.
3. **C_Ahlstrom** These are mine, but not yet made into a systematic bank. They are included with this document.
4. **Chromatic Percussion** Not sure where we got this at this time.
5. **Drums_DS** Not sure where we got this at this time.
6. **Electric Piano** Not sure where we got this at this time.
7. **Flute** Not sure where we got this at this time.
8. **folderol collection** [6], also found at [24].
9. **Internet Collection** Not sure where we got this at this time.
10. **Leads** Not sure where we got this at this time.
11. **Louigi_Verona_Workshop** The site seems to be gone/expired. So one will find these in the "contrib/banks" directory for safekeeping.
12. **Misc Keys** Not sure where we got this at this time.
13. **mmxgn Collection** [10]
14. **Piano** Not sure where we got this at this time.
15. **RB Zyn Presets** Not sure where we got this at this time.
16. **Vanilla** See [24] for this bank, and for some demonstration files of *ZynAddSubFX* sounds, and some other nice links.
17. **VDX** Not sure where we got this at this time.
18. **x31eq.com** [16]
19. **XAdriano Petrosillo** Not sure where we got this at this time.
20. **Zen Collection** Not sure where we got this at this time.

15 Non-Registered Parameter Numbers

This section comes from the source-code documentation file `Zyn_nrpn.txt` or the *ZynAddSubFx* online manual [25] and the `Using_NRPNS.txt` document that accompanies the *Yoshimi* source code.

Yoshimi implements System and Insertion effects control in a manner compatible with *ZynAddSubFX*. As with all *Yoshimi*'s NRPNs, the controls can be sent on any MIDI channel.

15.1 NRPN / Basics

NRPN stands for "Non Registered Parameters Number". NRPNs can control all System and Insertion effect parameters. Using NRPNs, *Yoshimi* can now directly set some part values regardless of what channel that part is connected to. For example, one may change the reverb time when playing to keyboard, or change the flanger's LFO frequency. The controls can be sent on any MIDI channel (the MIDI channels numbers are ignored).

The parameters are:

- **NRPN MSB** (coarse) (99 or 0x63) sets the system/insertion effects (4 for system effects or 8 for insertion effects). We abbreviate this value as **Nhigh**.
- **NRPN LSB** (fine) (98 or 0x62) sets the number of the effect (first effect is 0). We abbreviate this value as **Nlow**.
- **Data entry MSB** (coarse) (6) sets the parameter number of effect to change (see below). We abbreviate this value as **Dhigh**.
- **Data entry LSB** (fine) (26) sets the parameter of the effect. We abbreviate this value as **Dlow**.

One must send NRPN coarse/fine before sending Data entry coarse/fine. If the effect/parameter doesn't exists or is set to none, then the NRPN is ignored.

It's generally advisable to set NRPN MSB before LSB. However, once MSB has been set one can set a chain of LSBs if they share the same MSB. The data CCs associated with these are 6 for MSB and 38 for LSB. Only when an NRPN has been established can the data values be entered (they will be ignored otherwise). If a supported control is identified, these data values will be stored locally (if needed) so that other NRPNs can be set. Whenever either byte of the NRPN is changed, the data values will be cleared (but stored settings will not be affected). If either NRPN byte is set to 127, all data values are ignored again.

In *Yoshimi* NRPNs are not themselves channel-sensitive, but the final results will often be sent to whichever is the current channel. *Yoshimi* also supports the curious 14-bit NRPNs, but this shouldn't be noticeable to the user. In order to deal with this, and also some variations in the way sequencers present NRPNs generally, if a complete NRPN is set (i.e. **Nhigh**, **Nlow**, **Dhigh**, **Dlow**), then the data bytes can be in either order, but must follow **Nhigh** and **Nlow**.

(In these notes, where practical we also list the 14 bit values in square brackets.)

After this, for running values, once **Dhigh** and **Dlow** have been set if one changes either of these, the other will be assumed. For example, starting with **Dhigh** = 6 and **Dlow** = 20:

Change **Dlow** to 15 and *Yoshimi* will regard this as a command **Dhigh** 6 + **Dlow** 16. Alternatively change **Dhigh** to 2 and *Yoshimi* will regard this as a command **Dhigh** 2 + **Dlow** 20. This can be useful but may have unintended consequences! If in doubt change either of the NRPN bytes and both data bytes will be cleared.

Additionally there is 96 for data increment and 97 for decrement.

Data increment and decrement operation enables one to directly change the data LSB by between 0 and 63. To change the MSB, add 64 to cover the same range. Setting 0 might seem pointless, but it gives an alternative way to make an initial setting if one's sequencer doesn't play nice.

Although data increment and decrement are only active if a valid NRPN has been set, they are otherwise quite independent single CCs. For example:

| Start | Value | Command | value | Result |
|-------|----------|---------|-------|--------|
| LSB | 5 | inc | 20 | 25 |
| MSB | 7 | inc | 68 | 11 |
| LSB | 128(off) | inc | 1 | 1 |
| MSB | 126 | dec | 74 | 116 |
| MSB | 128(off) | dec | 65 | 127 |

A small example (all values in this example are hex):

```
B0 63 08 // Select the insertion effects
B0 62 01 // Select the second effect (remember: the first is 00 and not 01)
B0 06 00 // Select the effect parameter 00
B0 26 7F // Change the parameter of effect to the value 7F (127)
```

WARNING: Changing of some of the effect parameters produces clicks when sounds passes thru these effects. We advise one to change only when the sound volume that passes through the effect is very low (or silence). Some parameters produce clicks when they are changed rapidly.

Here are the effects parameter numbers (for Data entry, coarse). The parameters that produces clicks are written in red and have (AC) after their entry (always clicks). The parameter that produces clicks only when they are changed fast are written in blue and have a (FC) after the entry (Fast Clicks). Most parameters have the range from 0 to 127. When parameters have another range, it is written as "(low...high)".

Here are the basic formats:

1. Send NRPN:
 - MSB = 64 (same as for vectors)
 - LSB = 0
2. Send Data MSB (6); all value ranges start from zero, not 1.
 - 0 : data LSB = part number
 - 1 : data LSB = program number
 - 2 : data LSB = controller number
 - 3 : data LSB = controller value
 - 4 : data LSB = part's channel number (16 to 31 allows only Note Off for this part, while numbers 32 or above disconnects the part from all channel message)
 - 5 : data LSB = part's audio destination, one of 1 = main L&R; 2 = direct L&R; 3 = both; all other values are ignored
 - 7 : data LSB = main volume (not yet implemented)
 - 35 (0x23) : data LSB = controller LSB value (not yet implemented)
 - 39 (0x27) : data LSB = main volume LSB (not yet implemented)
 - 64 (0x40) : data LSB = key shift value (64 = no shift)
 - Other values are currently ignored.

Other values are currently ignored by *Yoshimi*.

15.2 NRPN / Effects Control

15.2.0.1 Reverb

- 00 - Volume or Dry/Wet (FC)
- 01 - Pan (FC)
- 02 - Reverb Time
- 03 - Initial Delay (FC)
- 04 - Initial Delay Feedback
- 05 - reserved
- 06 - reserved
- 07 - Low Pass
- 08 - High Pass
- 09 - High Frequency Damping (64..127) 64=no damping
- 10 - Reverb Type (0..1) 0=Random, 1=Freeverb (AC)
- 11 - Room Size (AC)

15.2.0.2 Echo

- 00 - Volume or Dry/Wet (FC)
- 01 - Pan (FC)
- 02 - Delay (AC)
- 03 - Delay between left and right (AC)
- 04 - Left/Right Crossing (FC)
- 05 - Feedback
- 06 - High Frequency Damp

15.2.0.3 Chorus

- 00 - Volume or Dry/Wet (FC)
- 01 - Pan (FC)
- 02 - LFO Frequency
- 03 - LFO Randomness
- 04 - LFO Type (0..1)
- 05 - LFO Stereo Difference
- 06 - LFO Depth
- 07 - Delay
- 08 - Feedback
- 09 - Left/Right Crossing (FC)
- 10 - reserved
- 11 - Mode (0..1) (0=add, 1=subtract) (AC)

15.2.0.4 Phaser

- 00 - Volume or Dry/Wet (FC)
- 01 - Pan (FC)
- 02 - LFO Frequency
- 03 - LFO Randomness
- 04 - LFO Type (0..1)
- 05 - LFO Stereo Difference

- 06 - LFO Depth
- 07 - Feedback
- 08 - Number of stages (0..11) (AC)
- 09 - Let/Right Crossing (FC)
- 10 - Mode (0..1) (0=add, 1=subtract) (AC)
- 11 - Phase

15.2.0.5 AlienWah

- 00 - Volume or Dry/Wet (FC)
- 01 - Pan (FC)
- 02 - LFO Frequency
- 03 - LFO Randomness
- 04 - LFO Type (0..1)
- 05 - LFO Stereo Difference
- 06 - LFO Depth
- 07 - Feedback
- 08 - Delay (0..100)
- 09 - Left/Right Crossing (FC)
- 10 - Phase

15.2.0.6 Distortion

- 00 - Volume or Dry/Wet (FC)
- 01 - Pan (FC)
- 02 - Left/Right Crossing
- 03 - Drive (FC)
- 04 - Level (FC)
- 05 - Type (0..11)
- 06 - Invert the signal (negate) (0..1)
- 07 - Low Pass
- 08 - High Pass
- 09 - Mode (0..1) (0=mono,1=stereo)

15.2.0.7 EQ

- 00 - Gain (FC)

All other settings of the EQ are shown in a different way. The N represent the band ("B." setting in the UI) and the first band is 0 (and not 1), like it is shown in the UI. Change the "N" with the band one likes. If one wants to change a band that doesn't exist, the NRPN will be ignored.

- 10+N*5 - Change the mode of the filter (0..9) (AC)
- 11+N*5 - Band's filter frequency
- 12+N*5 - Band's filter gain
- 13+N*5 - Band's filter Q (bandwidth or resonance)
- 14+N*5 - reserved

Example of setting the gain on the second band in the EQ module:

- The bands start counting from 0, so the second band is $1 = <N=1$.
- The formula is $12+N*5 = <12+1*5=17$, so the number of effect parameter (for Data entry coarse) is 17.

15.2.0.8 DynFilter

- 0 - Volume
- 1 - Pan
- 2 - LFO Frequency
- 3 - LFO Randomness
- 4 - LFO Type
- 5 - LFO Stereo Difference
- 6 - LFO Depth
- 7 - Filter Amplitude
- 8 - Filter Amplitude Rate Change
- 9 - Invert the signal (negate) (0..1)

Click behaviour of DynFilter has not yet been tested.

15.2.0.9 Yoshimi Extensions

If the Data MSB bit 6 is set (64) then Data LSB sets the effect type instead of a parameter number. This must be set before making a parameter change.

- 0 - Reverb
- 1 - Echo
- 2 - Chorus
- 3 - Phaser
- 4 - AlienWah
- 5 - Distortion
- 6 - EQ
- 7 - DynFilter

For Insert effects, if the Data MSB bit 5 is set (32) then Data LSB sets the destination part number. 127 is off and 126 is the Master Output. A complete example:

- 99 - 8 ~insert effects
- 98 - 3 ~number 4 (as displayed)
- 6 - 32 ~set destination
- 38 - 126 ~Master Out
- 99 - 8 *
- 98 - 3 *
- 6 - 64 ~change effect
- 38 - 4 ~Alienwah
- 99 - 8 *
- 98 - 3 *
- 6 - 0 ~Dry/Wet
- 38 - 30 ~value

Notes (*): these repeats are not needed as far as *Yoshimi* is concerned, but some sequencers get unhappy without them. Change just a parameter on an existing system effect:

- 99 - 4 ~system effects
- 98 - 0 ~the first effect
- 6 - 1 ~Pan
- 38 - 75 ~value

15.3 NRPN / Dynamic System Settings

Almost all dynamic setup (i.e. that doesn't require a restart) can now be done via NRPNs, so a MIDI file can manage *Yoshimi* starting from a pretty random state, and set up important features like Bank and Program Change behavior and the number of available parts.

In parallel with this setup, there is a command to list all of these settings. One can also list the available bank roots, the banks in any root, and instruments in any bank, along with their numeric IDs. These IDs can then be used with normal MIDI CCs to get exactly the instrument you want at any time.

This arrangement looks positively steam-punk, but is actually very easy to use, requiring only a command line interface and any utility that can send MIDI CCs. NRPNs aren't special. They are simply a specific pattern of CCs. *Yoshimi*'s implementation is very forgiving, doesn't mind if you stop halfway through (will just get on with other things while it waits), and will report exactly what it is doing. So ...

... If *Yoshimi* has been started from the command line (but not necessarily in the no-GUI mode), all of the system settings that don't require a restart can now be viewed by sending the appropriate NRPN. Most of them can also be changed in this way.

To access this functionality, set NRPN MSB (CC 99) to 64 and NRPN LSB (CC 98) to 2 (8130).

After that send the following DATA values. Commands with LSB x don't actually use DATA LSB, but one still needs to send it (unless it has already been set by a previous command in this control group).

Table 2: Dynamic System Commands

| DATA MSB | DATA LSB | Setting |
|----------|------------------|---|
| | 2 | LSB key |
| | 7 | LSB volume |
| 64-79 | LSB key | Set channel-based (n-64) key shift |
| 100 | LSB >63 | Send reports to Reports window, otherwise to stderr. |
| 108 | LSB x [13824] | List settings of all vectors. |
| 109 | LSB x [13843] | List the following: Reports destination Current Root path Current Bank CC to control Root path change CC to control Bank change Accept Program change (enabled/disabled) Activate part when program changed (enabled/disabled) CC to control Extended Program change (instruments 128-159) Number of available parts |
| 110 | LSB x [13970] | List all root paths |
| 111 | LSB path [14224] | List all banks in Root ID 'path'; path=127 for current root) |
| 112 | LSB bank [14351] | List all instruments, current root, bank 'bank' (bank = 127 for current bank in current root) |
| 113 | LSB root | Set CC to control Root path change (root>119 disables) |
| 114 | LSB bank | Set CC to control Bank change (bank>119 disables) |
| 115 | LSB >63 | Enable Program change otherwise disable |
| 116 | LSB >63 | Enable activation of part when program changed |
| 117 | LSB extprog | Set CC control Extended program change (extprog>119 disables) |
| 118 | LSB parts | Set number of available parts (parts = 16, 32 or 64) |
| 119 | LSB x [15113] | Save all dynamic settings |

16 Vector Control

This section comes from the source-code documentation file `doc/Vector_Control.txt`. Also see section [6.1.7 ”Automation”](#) on page [78](#), for a discussion of vector automation, and section [5.1.4 ”Menu / Yoshimi / Vectors”](#) on page [39](#), for a discusson of the vector configuration dialog.

Vector load and save also work from the command-line, for a complete vector set, with all mappings, instruments, etc. One can independently decide which channel to load and save from, so one can actually build up a vector set in (say) channel 3, then later decide to use it in channel 7. The vector settings file has the extension `.xvy` standing for `Xml / Vector / Yoshimi`.

16.1 Vector / Basics

Vector control is a way to control more than one part with the controllers. It is a little bit reminiscent of the ”vector” control knob on the Yamaha PSS-790 consumer MIDI synthesizer. Vector control is only possible if one has 32 or 64 parts active. Setup is per MIDI channel, so one can have totally different vector behaviour on, say, channel 1 and channel 5. The term *base channel* refers to the incoming MIDI

channel that a particular vector setup will respond to, and the base channel directly relates to the 1 to 16 range of parts in the mixer panel.

Vector control has been extended so that there are four independent 'features' that each axis can control. One is fixed as *Volume* (if enabled) but the other three can be any valid CC, and can also be reversed. The vector 'sweep' CCs are split out very early in the MIDI chain, and the new CCs created are fed back in before any other processing. The result of this is that once we eventually get MIDI-learn implemented, the control possibilities will expand dramatically.

In vector mode parts will still play together but the vector controls can change their volume, pan, filter cutoff in pairs, controlled by user-defined CCs set up with NRPNs.

One must set the X axis CC before the Y axis, but if one doesn't set the Y axis at all, one can run just a single axis. If one has only 32 parts active, Y settings are ignored. One cannot make any Y axis settings until, at the very least, the X CC has been set, and if one sets that back to zero, the Y axis is again disabled. Setting an X axis control CC will immediately enable the base channel part and the part number + 16, as well as setting *Yoshimi* for 32 parts, if it was less than that. If it was the same, or was set to 64 parts, then nothing changes. Setting the CC will also ensure that both parts are actually responding to that MIDI channel (they might have been set to something else, or even disabled).

Setting a Y axis control CC will immediately enable the part (base channel + 32) and the part number + 48, as well as setting for 64 parts, if it was less than that. If it was the same, again nothing changes, and again the parts are set to the correct MIDI channel.

The instruments that are loaded into the respective parts are always shown, regardless of whether there is a configured vector or not. They are a direct analogue of the main part instrument selector and behave in the same way (i.e. click on them to open the instrument selection window). There are tooltips for these items, along with the base channel and controller.

The features are pretty self descriptive as soon and you click on them. They apply inversely to the *pair* of instruments on each axis. One could have all four if one wanted to, but it would probably sound messy.

Options are pretty obvious, and follow a familiar pattern for load, save, etc. Loading or saving a vector will put the leafname in the bottom text field.

Disabling or clearing vectors will *not* change the number of parts because they may have already been set to increased numbers for some other purpose. Similarly disabling or clearing vectors will *not* clear any instrument patches that have been loaded. Of course making any changes to the parts outside vector control will likely mess them up. It won't do any harm, just be puzzling.

For example: parts 1 and 17 can be set as x1 & x2 (volume only) while parts 33 and 49 can be y1 & y2 (pan only).

Independently of this Parts 2 & 18 could use filter and pan from another CC.

16.2 Vector / Vector Control

Setting up vector control is currently done as follows. In the required channel send:

- NRPN MSB (99) set to 64
- NRPN LSB (98) set to 1 [8192]
- Data MSB (6) set mode:
 - 0 = X sweep CC

- 1 = Y sweep CC
- 2 = enable X features
- 3 = enable Y features
- 4 = x1 instrument (optional)
- 5 = x2 instrument (optional)
- 6 = y1 instrument (optional)
- 7 = y2 instrument (optional)

Setting CC for X enables vector control; any value outside the above list disables it.

Data LSB (38) value to set features:

- 1 = Volume (fixed)
- 2 = Pan (the default)
- 4 = Filter Cutoff (Brightness, it is the default)
- 8 = Mod Wheel (the default)
- 0x12 = 18 = Reversed Pan
- 0x24 = 36 = Reversed Filter Cutoff
- 0x48 = 72 = Reversed Mod Wheel

The feature numbers are chosen so they can be combined. So, 5 would be Volume + Brightness and 19 would be Volume + Reversed Pan.

Setting the sweep CC for the X axis enables vector control. It also sets, but doesn't enable the default X axis features. Setting the sweep CC for the Y axis sets, but doesn't enable the default Y axis features. If one doesn't enable any features, not a lot will happen.

The feature numbers are chosen so they can be combined. So, 5 would be Volume + Brightness and 19 would be Volume + Reversed Pan.

Optional settings. The first part, the number, is the MSB value. The second part is the LSB, the parameter value to set. Note that the instrument IDs are for instruments in the current bank.

- 4 = x1 instrument ID
- 5 = x2 instrument ID
- 6 = y1 instrument ID
- 7 = y2 instrument ID
- 8 = set CC for X feature 2
- 9 = set CC for X feature 4
- 10 = set CC for X feature 8
- 11 = set CC for Y feature 2
- 12 = set CC for Y feature 4
- 13 = set CC for Y feature 8

The IDs are for instruments in the current bank. Any data MSB value outside the above list disables vector control. Sweep CCs and feature CCs are sanity-checked.

An Example. From channel 1, send the following CCs:

| CC | Value |
|----|-------|
| 99 | 64 |
| 98 | 1 |
| 6 | 0 |
| 38 | 14 |
| 98 | 1 * |
| 6 | 1 |
| 38 | 15 |
| 98 | 1 * |
| 6 | 2 |
| 38 | 1 |
| 98 | 1 * |
| 6 | 3 |
| 38 | 2 |

This sequence will set up CC 14 as the X axis incoming controller, and CC 15 as the Y axis incoming controller, with X set to volume control and Y set to pan control.

One can either go on with the NRPNs to set the instruments (this will load and enable instruments from the current bank), or enable and load them by hand. For channel 1 this would be part 1 and 17 for X and part 33 and 49 for Y.

The (*) CCs ensure that the data bytes are reset each time. This is not really necessary for the earlier commands, but should be done if one sets the instruments with NRPNs as well, otherwise one will try to set them twice.

16.3 Vector / Command Line

This section covers material that could be in the command-line section (see section [18 ”The Yoshimi Command Line Interface” on page 202](#)), but is really too detailed to cover there. The examples here, to set up vectors from the command line, are provided by Will.

Assuming we want just a single axis on channel 1 (which is channel 2 in the GUI), first we need to make sure we have enough parts available:

```
yoshimi> set available 32
Available parts set to 32
```

The next command must always be the first command, as everything else depends on it. It's the command that enables vector control. The `x` token denotes the "x axis", and the `cc` token, followed by 14, is the incoming sweep CC (control change) that will vary the features one sets.

```
yoshimi > set vector 1 x cc 14
Vector channel set to 1
```

Note that, according to the list of MIDI CC's at <http://nickfever.com/music/midi-cc-list>, CC 14 is undefined, normally. It is thus available for *Yoshimi* to assign for its own purpose.

There are four vector features currently available:

- **1** is fixed as *volume*.
- **2** is *pan* by default.
- **3** is *brightness* by default.
- **4** is *modulation* by default.

We will select *volume* for this example. Let's enable this feature:

```
yoshimi Vect Ch 1 X > set features 1 enable
Set X features 1 en
```

Next, one needs to set the instruments that will be used. The instruments can only be selected from the instruments in the current bank. Therefore, assuming the current bank is the "Will Godfrey Companion", let's set up two instruments:

```
yoshimi Vect Ch 1 X > set program left 20
Loaded 20 "Bubbles" to Part 1
```

```
yoshimi Vect Ch 1 X > set program right 120
Loaded 120 "Ghost Ensemble" to Part 16
```

The **left** token merely assigns instrument 20 to a "virtual" left side of the X axis, and the **right** token assigns instrument 20 to a "virtual" right side of the X axis.

(Chris asks: How did the part numbers 1 and 16 come about? What are the rules? Why are 32 parts needed, if only 1 to 16 are involved? Why do we need to have 64 parts when we add the Y axis below? Can we set intermediate values between "left" and "right" and "up" and "down" to get some really weird morphs?)

If one now sweeps the controller assigned to CC 14, the sound will morph between these two instruments.

To continue on to using the other axis as well, one needs to have 64 parts available:

```
yoshimi Vect Ch 1 X > /set available 64
Available parts set to 64
```

Note the slash, which lets the user immediately access the topmost command level, where the "available parts" setting can be performed. Then:

```
yoshimi > set vector y cc 15
Vector 1 Y CC set to 15
```

This command sets up the Y axis to be controlled by MIDI CC 15, which is, again, a CC that is normally undefined. We will use *panning* (feature 2) for this vector, which is defined on the Y axis:

```
yoshimi Vect Ch 1 Y > set features 2 enable  
Set Y features 2 en
```

Analogous to the "left" and "right" virtual directions used above for the X axis, the Y axis used the "up" and "down" virtual directions:

```
yoshimi Vect Ch 1 Y > set program down 107  
Loaded 107 "Angel Harp" to Part 32
```

```
yoshimi Vect Ch 1 Y > set program up 78  
Loaded 78 "Brassy Flutter" to Part 48
```

Notice that the directions left, right, up, and down match the directions provided by a traditional joystick. So we have now set up a vector sound where MIDI CC 14 morphs the sound through a continuous linear combination of two different instruments, and MIDI CC 15 morphs the sound between two other instruments. One can then save one's cool vector sound to a file:

```
yoshimi Vect Ch 1 Y > save vector CoolSound  
Saved channel 1 Vector to CoolSound
```

The file extension for the save vector sound file is .xvy, and this extension is added automatically. The final name of the file is CoolSound.xvy.

(Chris asks: *Where is this file saved? Is there a way to modify this location?*)

At any time one can reload this vector sound file from the command-line:

```
yoshimi> load vector channel 0 CoolSound  
Loaded Vector CoolSound to channel 0
```

If there is no channel number provided, then the vector sound will be loaded to the same channel as it was saved from:

```
yoshimi> load vector CoolSound  
Loaded Vector CoolSound to source channel
```

17 MIDI Learn

In this section, we show how to use the new (with 1.5.0) **MIDI Learn** feature of *Yoshimi*.

17.1 MIDI Learn / Basics

TODO

17.2 MIDI Learn / User Interface

Yoshimi ...

To activate MIDI Learn, **Ctrl-right-click** on any user interface control. A pop-up window will detail the control selected.

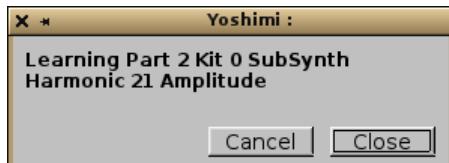


Figure 155: MIDI Learn Prompt Example 1

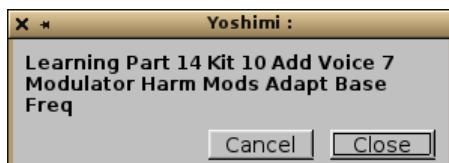


Figure 156: MIDI Learn Prompt Example 2

If a **Yoshimi** control is not MIDI-learnable, a message pop-up will indicate that it is not learnable:



Figure 157: MIDI Learn Prompt Unsupported Example

A message will also appear in the console window/CLI.

After turning on learn, the first physical controller moved, or CC message sent will be locked in, and one will see the user-interface knob or slider move in synchrony with the physical control. The pop-up window will disappear, and the console message **Learned** appears, with a line underneath with exactly what control was caught.



Figure 158: MIDI Learn Dialog

The major items of this dialog are the editor settings available:

1. **Mute**
2. **CC**
3. **Chan**
4. **Min**
5. **Max**
6. **Limit**
7. **Block**
8. **Control Function**
9. **Load**
10. **Save**
11. **Recent**
12. **Clear**

Now use the **Yoshimi** drop-down menu and click on **Midi Learn**, to see a new window displaying the recently-learned controller. Along with a number of settings, it shows text with precise details of this complete action.

Also shown is an **activity** LED that flickers when the associated CC/channel is received.

1. Mute. Mute. Disables the MIDI Learn control specified by the corresponding line of settings.

Values: **Checked**, **Unchecked**

2. CC. CC. Incoming CC. Provides the value of the controller that is learned. For example, a value of 7 indicates that the control value affects the main volume of **Yoshimi**.

Values: **1 to 127, 64***

3. Chan. Chan. Incoming channel number. Note that, in the **MIDI Learn** window, only the channel numbers start from 1. All the other numbers in that window start from 0. This follows the conventions of the **Yoshimi** command-line.

Values: **1 to 16, 1***

4. Min/Max. Min and Max. Provides the minimum and maximum incoming values. If Min is greater than Max, this reverses the control direction.

Values: 1 to 127, 64*

5. Limit. Limit. Limiter versus compression. The Min/Max range can either be in the style of a limiter or a compression.

Values: Checked, Unchecked

6. Block. Block. Specifies blocking of all later actions on the same CC/channel pair (including system ones). NEEDS CLARIFICATION.

Values: Checked, Unchecked

7. Control Function. Control function. Provides text describing what control is affected, or if the part is disabled or not.

One can delete any existing MIDI Learn via **Ctrl-right-click** on the **Control Function** text for that line. One is then presented with a confirmation message giving the line number and the text as a reminder. Adding or deleting lines, or changing either CC or channel numbers, will re-order the lines.

The same CC/controller can be used to change several different internal **Yoshimi** controls. For example, one can have a part's volume being changed while another part is having an effect level changed. (HOW IS THIS EFFECTED?)

8. Load. Load. Loads a set of MIDI Learn values from a file. The extension of the file is ...? If a loaded set refers to **Yoshimi** controls that are disabled, or don't exist, those controls will be ignored. However the Block feature will still be active, unless the line is muted.

9. Save. Save. A complete list of MIDI Learn values can be saved by clicking on the Save button; one then sees the usual file-chooser window.

10. Recent. Recent. This button is used for loading a set of MIDI Learn values from the recent history.

11. Clear. Clear. This button clears the entire learned list.

17.3 MIDI Learn / Tutorial

This mini-tutorial is courtesy of Will.

Say one has a foot pedal that outputs CC values on the standard volume, CC 7. Now this is per channel, so only instruments on the first channel will pick it up. This presents a problem if one has automation/backing tracks on other channels and one wants to keep everything together. So here is what to do:

While holding down **Ctrl**, right-click on the **Volume** knob at the top of the main window. A window will open with the message "Learning Main Volume". If one now operates the foot pedal, the window will disappear and one will see that the main volume control is now responding to the foot pedal.

However, this means one is changing both the main volume and the part 0 volume at the same time. So now open the **MIDI learn** window via the **Yoshimi** drop-down menu. One will see that it now has a line detailing the incoming CC and channel, along with other controls and the control function named **Main Volume**. Click on the **Block** check box, and one will see that the part 0 volume control no longer responds.

Now the foot pedal will control *only* the master volume, not the individual part volumes. This setup will survive loading new patch sets, and also a main reset (while still running).

It's quite likely that the foot pedal will go from 0 to 127, when one actually wants a much smaller control range. In that case, one can change the **Min** and **Max** values to (for example) 40 and 90. In this way, the entire range of the pedal control will be reduced linearly to 40-90.

If one sets the **Limit** checkbox, then these values will instead be cutoff points so anything from the pedal between 0 and 40 will be 40, and anything between 90 and 127 will be 90

To temporarily disable this controller line, use the **Mute** checkbox. The entire line will be greyed, and as the **Block** is no longer active normal part volume control will be restored.

A point that is not obvious is that although incoming CCs are per-channel, the actions are per-part, so if one sets controller 94 for part 1 volume and then set it again for part 2 volume, one gets two lines, each controlling just one part but *acting together*. Change the **Min** and **Max** of one of them to 127 and 0 respectively and one will increase in volume while the other reduces.

Volume, pan, and most of the effects are *immediate*, while most of the other controls start on the *next note*. Eventually I want to get LFOs, filters etc. to be immediate, but that's for another release!

18 The Yoshimi Command Line Interface

Applies through version: 1.3.9 May 2016

Yoshimi provides a "no GUI" or "command-line" mode of operation where some aspects of the application can be controlled via textual commands. This mode is useful for blind people, for example. To access this mode, add the **-i** or **--no-gui** command-line option when starting *Yoshimi* on the command-line. But note that, when starting *Yoshimi* on the command-line, the "command-line" mode of operation is available at the same time as the GUI, as well.

One of the main features of recent *Yoshimi* releases is improved non-GUI accessibility. In a command line environment, almost all the 'running' commands are available, but none of the instrument editing ones are... yet! One can decide what MIDI/audio setup is wanted, list and set roots and banks, load instruments into any part, change a part's channel, set main volume and key shift, and set up vector control. A number of first-time defaults have been changed to make this feature easier.

When starting from the command line, an argument can be included for a new root path to be defined to point to a set of banks fetched from elsewhere. This will be given the next free ID. A future upgrade will allow the ID to be set to any valid one when it is created, mirroring the GUI behaviour.

Once running, almost all dynamic setup (i.e. doesn't require a restart) can now be done within the terminal window. There is also extensive control of roots, banks, parts and instruments including the ability to list and set all of these.

Additional controls that are frequently taken for granted in the GUI, but otherwise get forgotten, are *master key shift* and *master volume*. The most important parts of vector control are exposed to the command line.

The command-line mode provides extensive error checking and feedback. Note the change in nomenclature from "Parameters" to "Patch Set", which is visible in the main screen, and also reflected in the command line. The prompt will always show what *command level* one is on, along with relevant information. At the CLI prompt, when effects are being managed, the preset number is also shown on the prompt so you'll typically see something like:

```
yoshimi part 2 FX 1 Rever-7 >
```

One will also get a confirmation message, but, for clarity, those are not included in the examples below. Here is an example session:

Starting from the **yoshimi** prompt:

```
yoshimi> s p 2 pr 107  
yoshimi part 2 >
```

This command sets **part** number 2 to **program** number 107 from the *current* instrument bank. *Yoshimi* is now on part 2 as the current part (indicated by the prompt), and all subsequent commands will relate to this "level". At this level, one can change the current part simply with:

```
yoshimi part 2 > s 4  
yoshimi part 4 >
```

Yoshimi is now on part number 4. Now set an effect:

```
yoshimi part 4 > s ef ty re  
yoshimi part 4 FX 0 rever-0 >
```

This command sets the part's **effect** 0 (implicit) to **type** **reverb**.

Note that many settings parameters are optional, and if you omit them, either a default or last-used value will be assumed. Also, names are truncated to 5 characters so the prompt line doesn't get unmanageably long.

From here you can set a preset for this effect:

```
yoshimi part 4 FX 0 rever > s pre 3
```

Currently, the **presets** are not shown in the prompt, but one will get a confirmation message.

Settings that follow in a direct command "path" through several levels can be made all at once, and one will be left at the appropriate level. Thus, summarizing some of the above commands:

```
s p 4 ef 2 ty re  
yoshimi part 4 FX 2 rever >
```

One cannot combine **type** and **preset** as they are both at the same level. To go back one level, use the "**..**" command:

```
yoshimi part 4 FX 2 rever > ..  
yoshimi part 4 >
```

To go back to the top command level, use the "/" command:

```
yoshimi part 4 > /
yoshimi >
```

These two special level-movement commands can also be put on the front of any other command. Starting where we were before:

```
yoshimi part 4 FX 2 rever > .. s vol 70
yoshimi part 4 >
```

Part 4 volume is now at 70, and *Yoshimi* is once again at the "part level", not the "part FX level". Also note that the space after the ".." is optional.

The help menus and lists are also partially context sensitive. This feature should help avoid clutter and confusion.

As well as an immediate history, *Yoshimi* maintains a single command history file for all instances of *Yoshimi* that records any non-duplicated loads or save. Thus, provided one makes a normal command-line exit, the last commands will be available on the next run of *Yoshimi*.

Originally this section described the currently implemented commands, but as the command set is very much a moving target, it is simpler to just ask one to run *Yoshimi* and type the "?" command.

Commands with "*" in the description need the setup to be saved, and *Yoshimi* restarted to be activated.

Note that *Yoshimi*'s command-line can also load and save states, patchsets, and scales, and can list recent histories. Vector load and save is also supported from the command-line. That's a complete vector set, with all mappings, instruments, etc. One can independently decide which channel to load and save from, so that one can actually build up a vector set in (say) channel 3, then later decide to use it in channel 7. It has the extension .xvy, standing for "Xml/Vector/Yoshimi". It will eventually be integrated with the saved states.

Another small detail is that all of the minimum command-line abbreviations are now Capitalised in the help list.

More features will be added, and the organisation of them may be changed slightly. If any configuration settings are changed, either at the command-line or in the graphical user-interface, one will be given a warning when exiting, with the option to continue running so one can save the changes.

18.1 Command Level

A command level is simply a position in the hierarchy of commands that cover some aspect of *Yoshimi* functionality.

The levels that currently exist are:

- **Top Level**
- **System Effects**
- **Insertion Effects**

- **Part**
- **Part Effects**
- **Vector**

Ones that we're pretty sure will be added are:

- **Scales (microtonal)**
- **Controllers**
- **Addsynth**
- **Addsynth Voice**
- **Subsynth**
- **Padsynth Harmonics**
- **Padsynth Envelopes**

Any level that has a direct numerical content will be changeable simply with "set (n)" once you are at that level. The level will, of course, be indicated by the text in the *Yoshimi* prompt.

For example, one can have 0 to 15 vector channels, so from the *Top* level, the following command will return the default (0 or the last-used number):

```
set vector
s ve
```

Given this level (the *Vector* level), the following commands...

```
set 5
s 5
```

...will then switch to vector channel 5. However, at the start, one could have gone straight there with:

```
set vector 5
s ve 5
```

A more detailed discussion of command-line vector control is presented in section [16.3 "Vector / Command Line"](#) on page [196](#).

18.2 Command Table

When running from the command line, these commands (see [table 3 "Yoshimi Text Commands, Part 1"](#) on page [207](#) and [table 4 "Yoshimi Text Commands, Part 2"](#) on page [208](#)) can be entered after the 'up and running' message. The commands are *not* case-sensitive. The commands can be abbreviated to the first three letters of each command, or, in some cases, just one letter. The commands that are available depend on the current "context" of the command line. There are a group of commands that are always available. These are

- ? or help
- List
- RESet
- EXit

Apart from these basic commands, the command line works on a system of context levels, and normally only the commands relevant to that "level" will be available.

The brief descriptions in the following table can be obtained using the "help" command in the *Yoshimi* command-line mode. More detailed descriptions are given in the section following the table.

The **paths** command no longer exists. Instead we have **add** and **remove**, so instead of **path add** it's **add root**. Also, one can now add and remove banks using the same structure. **paths show** has now been moved into lists as **list roots**. These changes make roots/banks/instruments more consistent.

Table 3: Yoshimi Text Commands, Part 1

| | |
|--------------------------------|---|
| .. | Step back up one command level. |
| / | Step back up to the top command level. |
| add bank [s] | Add a new bank to the current root. |
| add root [s] | Define a new root path and add it to the list. |
| remove bank [s] | Delete the bank from the current root. |
| remove root [s] | De-list the given root path. |
| list banks [n] | List instruments in bank <i>n</i> or the current bank. |
| list effects [n] | List effect types for [n] or for 'all'. |
| list instruments [n] | List all instruments in bank <i>n</i> or current bank. |
| list parts | List number of parts available, and more. |
| list roots | List all available root paths. |
| list setup | Displays the dynamic system settings. |
| list history [s] | Lists recent files (patchsets, scales, and states). |
| list vectors [n] | Lists the settings for enabled vectors, channel <i>n</i> . |
| load instrument [s] | Loads an instrument to the current part from a file. |
| load patchset [s] | Load a complete patch set from the file. |
| load vector [s] | Loads a vector setup from a file. |
| save patchset [s] | Save the patch set to a named file. |
| save instrument [s] | Saves the current part to a named instrument file. |
| save setup | Save the current dynamic system settings. |
| save vector [s] | Saves the current vector setup to a named vector file. |
| set activate [n] | Set part-activate on MIDI program change (0 on, 1 off). |
| set alsa audio [s] * | Sets the name of the audio device to look for. |
| set alsa midi [s] * | Sets the name of the MIDI source to look for. |
| set available [n] | Set the number of available parts (16, 32, 64). |
| set bank [n] | Set current bank to ID <i>n</i> . |
| set ccbank [n] | Set MIDI CC for bank changes (non-0 or -32 disables). |
| set ccroot [n] | Set MIDI CC for root path changes (above 119 disables). |
| set extend [n] | Set MIDI CC for extended program change (above 119 disables). |
| set insert effects [n] | Set insertion effects for editing. |
| set jack midi [s] * | Sets the name of the JACK MIDI source for Yoshimi. |
| set jack server [s] * | Sets the name of the JACK server for Yoshimi. |
| set part [n1] program [n2] | Load instrument <i>n2</i> into part <i>n1</i> . |
| set part [n1] channel [n2] | Set the MIDI channel <i>n2</i> for part <i>n1</i> . |
| set part [n1] destination [n2] | Set audio destination of part <i>n1</i> to main, part, or both. |
| set preferred audio [s] * | Set audio connection type (jack/alsa). |
| set preferred midi [s] * | Set MIDI connection type (jack/alsa). |

Table 4: Yoshimi Text Commands, Part 2

| | |
|---|---|
| <code>set - preset [n]</code> | Set effect preset. |
| <code>set - preset [n]</code> | Set numbered effect preset. |
| <code>set program [n]</code> | Set MIDI program change (0 disables, otherwise enables). |
| <code>set reports [n]</code> | Set report destination (gui, stderr, show, and hide). |
| <code>set root [n]</code> | Set current root path to ID <i>n</i> . |
| <code>set shift [n]</code> | Set master key shift for notes, semitones. |
| <code>set system effects [n]</code> | Set System Effects for editing. |
| <code>set vector [n1] x/y cc [n2]</code> | Sets and enables vector CC. See section below. |
| <code>set vector [n1] x/y features [n2]</code> | Sets channel <i>n1</i> X or Y features to <i>n2</i> . |
| <code>set vector [n1] x/y program [l/r] [n2]</code> | Loads program <i>n2</i> to ch. <i>n1</i> X or Y left or right part. |
| <code>set vector [n1] x/y control [n2] [n3]</code> | Sets <i>n3</i> CC to use for X or Y feature <i>n2</i> (2, 4, 8). |
| <code>set vector [n] [off]</code> | Disables vector control for channel <i>n</i> . |
| <code>set volume [n]</code> | Set the master volume. |
| <code>reset</code> | Return to the start-up conditions, if 'y' selected. |
| <code>stop</code> | Cease all sound immediately! |
| <code>? or help</code> | List all commands. |
| <code>exit</code> | Tidy up and close Yoshimi down, if 'y' selected. |

Entries marked with an asterisk need to be saved, and *Yoshimi* restarted, to activate.

Commands are not case sensitive, and an invalid one will print a reminder. Often one needs only the first letter of a command, as long as it is unambiguous. The examples above show their minimum abbreviations in capitals. However, Yoshimi is quite pedantic, and if you type the command in full it must be exactly correct!

All number ranges start from zero. This is different from the GUI where most (but not all) start from one. So CL part 0 is GUI part 1, but CL bank 0 is GUI bank 0.

More commands will be added, and the organisation of the commands may change slightly.

18.3 Command Descriptions

This section describes the command-line commands in more detail. Obviously, some more needs to be written about some of the commands. Note that all the parameters for the `load` and `save` parameters are strings, and the parameters are compulsory, not optional.

1. `...` Step back up one command context level. This command can immediately precede another command, so that the second command takes place at the context above the current context.

2. `./` Step back up to the top command context level. This command can immediately precede another command, so that the second command takes place at the top context.

3. `add bank [s]`. Define a new bank, *s*, where *s* is a bank name, and add it to the current root.

4. `add root [s]`. Define a new root path, *s*, and add it to the list of root paths.

5. `remove bank [s]`. Delete the bank named *s*, and all its contents, from the current root path.

6. `remove root [s]`. De-list the root path named *s*.

7. `list banks [n]`. List the instruments and IDs in bank *n* or the current bank/root.

- 8. list effects [n].** List effect types for [n]. If the parameter is the word *all*, then list every effect and all its presets along with the preset number.
- 9. list history [s].** Displays the recently-used files, including patchsets, scales, and states. If no parameter is given, then this command lists all three files in sequence.
- 10. list instruments [n].** List all instruments and IDs in bank *n* or the current bank/root.
- 11. list parts.** Lists the number of parts available and parts with instruments currently installed along with any enabled with the default sound. Also shows their audio destination: *M* = main L/R, *P* = part L/R, *B* = both, and *-* = disabled or unavailable. This way one can tell if an instrument patch is installed even if it is not currently usable. To avoid unnecessary list length, the default "Simple Sound" is not shown unless it is enabled.
- 12. list roots.** Displays all defined root paths.
- 13. list setup.** Displays the current dynamic system settings.
- 14. list vector [n].** Lists the settings for vector on channel *n*.
- 15. load instrument [s].** Loads an instrument into the current part from the named file. The file-name parameter *s* is mandatory.
- 16. load patchset [s].** Load a complete patch set from a named file, *s*.
- 17. load vector [s].** Loads an vector setup from the named file. The file-name parameter *s* is mandatory.
- 18. save patchset [s].** Saves the current patchset to the file named *s*.
- 19. save instrument [s].** Saves the instrument of the current part to the named file. The file-name parameter *s* is mandatory.
- 20. save setup.** Save the current dynamic system settings. These settings get saved to the state file (we think).
- 21. save vector [s].** Saves the vector setup to the named file. The file-name parameter *s* is mandatory.
- 22. set activate [n].** Set part-activate on MIDI program change. *n*=0 disables this feature, and 1 or any non-zero value enables this feature. This feature applies to command line program change as well.
- 23. set alsa audio [s].** Sets the name of the audio hardware device ALSA looks for. Requires a restart of *Yoshimi*.
- 24. set alsa midi [s].** Sets the name of the MIDI source ALSA looks for. Requires a restart of *Yoshimi*.
- 25. set available [n].** Set the number of available parts (16, 32, 64). Note that 32 and 64 are supported in the newest versions of *Yoshimi*. Also note that a single two-part vector setup (the **X** vector) requires 32 parts, while the dual two-part vector setup (both **X** and **Y**) requires 64 parts.
- 26. set bank [n].** Set current bank to ID *n*.
- 27. set ccbank [n].** Set the MIDI CC for bank changes (anything other than 0 or 32 disables MIDI CC).
- 28. set ccroot [n].** Set the MIDI CC for root path changes (values above 119 disable this feature).
- 29. set extend [n].** Set CC value for extended program change (values above 119 disables this feature).
- 30. set insert effects [n].** Set insertion effects for editing. What are the possible values of *n*?

- 31. set jack midi [s].** Sets the name of the JACK MIDI source for Yoshimi. Requires a restart of Yoshimi.
- 32. set jack server [s].** Sets the name of the JACK server Yoshimi tries to connect to. Requires a restart of Yoshimi.
- 33. set part [n1] program [n2].** Load instrument *n2* into part *n1*. Example: `set part 4 program 130`
- 34. set part [n1] channel [n2].** Set the MIDI channel *n2* for part *n1*. If the channel number is greater than 15, no further MIDI messages will be accepted by that part.
- 35. set part [n1] destination [n2].** Set the audio destination of part *n1* to main (1), part (2), both (3). Also enables the part if not already enabled.
- 36. set preferred audio [s].** Set the audio connection type. The parameter should be either "jack" or "alsa".
- 37. set preferred midi [s].** Set the MIDI connection type. The parameter should be either "jack" or "alsa".
- 38. set - preset [n].** et effect preset. Set numbered effect preset.
- 39. set program [n].** Set MIDI program change (0 disables, anything else enables).
- 40. set reports [n].** Sets the report destination or where messages are displayed, and, to some extent, which messages are displayed. Here are the variations on this command that are supported:

- `set reports gui` or `s r g`. All reports are sent to the GUI console window.
- `set reports stderr` or `s r s`. All reports are sent to stderr.
- `set reports show` or `s r sh`. All messages are displayed.
- `set reports hide` or `s r h`. Non fatal low-level messages are discarded.
- `set reports (any other word or nothing at all)` or `s r (other)`. This sets the default condition of sending reports to the CLI and displaying all of them.

- 41. set root [n].** Set current root path to ID *n*.
- 42. set shift [n].** Set the master key shift for following notes in semitones (+- octave, 64 for no shift).
- 43. set system effects [n].** Set System Effects for editing.
- 44. set vector [n1] x/y cc [n2].** CC *n2* is used for channel *n1* X or Y axis sweep. For X, this also enables vector control for the channel.

The individual features are now numbered 1-4 and can be `enabled` or `reversed` (any other word disables the feature). "Reversed" means that, instead of the X left rising in value with increasing CC value, it decreases. X right does the opposite of course.

Feature 1 is always fixed as 7 (volume) and is not reversible. Features 2 to 4 can also have the outgoing CC changed to any valid one. The vector is just about the only command-line entry that starts from 1.

The original system where bits were ORred together was done to make NRPN control as efficient as possible. That hasn't changed, but log messages refer to the command-line numbering.

A more detailed discussion of command-line vector control is presented in section [16.3 "Vector / Command Line"](#) on page [196](#).

- 45. set vector [n1] x/y features [n2].** Sets channel *n1* X or Y features to *n2*.

46. set vector [n1] x/y program [l/r] [n2]. Loads program *n2* to channel *n1* X or Y *left* or *right* part.

47. set vector [n1] x/y control [n2] [n3]. Sets *n3* CC to use for X or Y feature *n2* (2, 4, 8). *n3* is the CC to be used for feature number *n2* on X vector channel *n1*. The x is a sort of hidden parameter as the code uses an offset dependent on whether it is x or y. Also *n1* can be omitted in which case it will use the last defined channel number. Using alternate words and numbers gives a great deal of flexibility like this.

48. set vector [n] [off]. Disables vector control for channel *n*.

49. set volume [n]. Set the master volume.

50. reset. Return to the start-up conditions, if 'y' selected.

51. stop. Cease all sound immediately!

52. ? or help. List commands for current mode. All of the minimum command-line abbreviations are capitalised in the help listing.

53. exit. Tidy up and close Yoshimi down.

19 LV2 Plug-in Support

Yoshimi now runs as an LV2 plugin.

Supported features:

1. Sample-accurate midi timing.
2. State save/restore support via LV2_State_Interface.
3. Working UI support via LV2_External_UI_Widget.
4. Programs interface support via LV2_Programs_Interface.
5. Multi channel audio output. 'outl' and 'outr' have LV2 index 2 and 3. All individual ports numbers start at 4.

Planned feature: Controls automation support. This will be a part of a common controls interface.

Download and build the source code found at the *Yoshimi* site [17], and one will find a file named `LV2_Plugin/yoshimi_lv2.so`

Yoshimi's LV2 implementation is frequently tested using the latest versions of *Ardour*, *Muse*, and *Qtractor* as LV2 hosts. Like *Yoshimi*, these are also in continuous development. So far we've not been able to get anywhere with *Carla*; if someone is familiar with it, we'd be interested in what results they get.

At some point we hope to document the process of setting up and using the *Yoshimi* LV2 plugin.

20 Yoshimi Man Page

The *Yoshimi* man page is actually the output of the `yoshimi --help` command, which prints out the command-line that are discussed in this section.

Yoshimi 1.3.6, a derivative of ZynAddSubFX - Copyright 2002-2009 Nasca Octavian Paul and others, Copyright 2009-2011 Alan Calvert, Copyright 20012-2013 Jeremy Jongepier and others, Copyright 20014-2015 Will Godfrey and others.

-a --alsa-midi [=device]

Use ALSA MIDI input. From the command line, as well as autoconnecting the main L & R outputs to JACK, with ALSA MIDI one can now auto-connect to a known source.

```
./yoshimi -K --alsa-midi="Virtual Keyboard"
```

ALSA can often manage with just the client name. This command is case sensitive, and quite fussy about spaces, etc., so it's wise to use quotes for the source name, even if they don't seem to be needed.

-A --alsa-audio [=device]

Use ALSA audio output.

-b --buffersize=size

Set ALSA internal audio buffer size.

-c --show-console

Show the console on startup.

-D --define-root

Define the path to a new bank root. *Yoshimi* will then immediately scan this path for new banks, but won't make the root (or any of its banks) current. The final directory doesn't in fact have to be 'banks' but traditionally *Yoshimi* has always done this. Also, when running from the command line there is now access to many of the system, root, bank, etc. settings. See section [18 "The Yoshimi Command Line Interface" on page 202](#).

-i --no-gui

Do not show the GUI. See section [18 "The Yoshimi Command Line Interface" on page 202](#) for more information about this mode of operation. Note that the command-line and the GUI can be available simultaneously. Also note that this switch allows *Yoshimi* to run on a dumb terminal or virtual console.

-j --jack-midi [=device]

Use JACK MIDI input. From the command line, as well as autoconnecting the main L & R outputs to JACK, with JACK MIDI one can now auto-connect to a known source.

```
./yoshimi -K --jack-midi="jack-keyboard:midi_out"
```

JACK needs the port as well as the name. This command is case sensitive, and quite fussy about spaces, etc., so it's wise to use quotes for the source name, even if they don't seem to be needed.

-J --jack-audio [=server]

Use JACK audio output. Connect to the given JACK server if given.

-k --autostart-jack

Auto-start the JACK server. Note that this can cause some odd behavior on some systems, so be aware of that possibility.

-K --auto-connect

Auto-connect JACK audio. Note that, if the auto-connect feature has been specified in the user-interface, and saved to the *Yoshimi* configuration file, there is then no way to disable this feature from the command-line, at this time.

```
-l --load=file
Load a .xmz file.

-L --load-instrument=file
Load an .xiz file

-N --name-tag=tag
Add tag to client-name.

-o --oscilsize=size
Set ADDSynth oscillator size (OscilSize).

-R --samplerate=rate
Set ALSA audio sample rate.

-S --state[=file]
Load saved state from file, where the file defaults to $HOME/.config/yoshimi/yoshimi.state

-u --jack-session-file[=file]
Load the named JACK session file.

-U --jack-session-uuid[=uuid]
Load the named JACK session by UUID.

-? --help
Give this help list.

--usage P
Provide a short usage message.

-V --version
Print program version.

Mandatory or optional arguments to long options are also mandatory or optional for any corresponding
short options.

From the command line, as well as autoconnecting the main L & R outputs to JACK, with either JACK
or ALSA MIDI one can now auto-connect to a known source.

ALSA can often manage with just the client name, but JACK needs the port as well. These commands
are case sensitive, and quite fussy about spaces etc. so it's wise to use quotes for the source name, even
if they don't seem to be needed.
```

21 Building Yoshimi

This section describes building and debugging *Yoshimi*. Building *Yoshimi* requires getting the source code, making sure all of the necessary dependencies are installed, and using CMake to set up the build.

The source-code is located at its main location ([17]) or its alternate location ([18]).

Like *ZynAddSubFX*, *Yoshimi* uses CMake as its build system [23]. CMake is a preprocessor that can generate project build setups for Visual Studio, UNIX make, and Xcode.

21.1 Yoshimi Source Code

Get the source code version you want from SourceForge (<http://sourceforge.net/projects/yoshimi/files/1.3/>). Download the desired tar-ball and unpack it in your work area.

Since SourceForge has had some issues, the *Yoshimi* team has wisely hosted the source code at another site as well, <https://github.com/abrolag/yoshimi>. One can grab the whole git repository there using the following command in your work area:

```
$ git clone https://github.com/abrolag/yoshimi.git
```

21.2 Yoshimi Dependencies

As of recent versions of *Yoshimi* 1.3.9, building *Yoshimi* requires C++11. For GNU builds, this requires `gcc 4.7` and above.

To save some wasted time, make sure the *development versions* of the following packages have been installed using your Linux distribution's package manager:

- `pkg-config`
- `libz`
- `fftw3f`
- `mxml`
- `ALSA` (`libasound`)
- `JACK`
- `Boost`
- `fontconfig`
- `libcairo`
- `FLTK`
- `lv2`

These package names are from *Debian Jessie*:

- `automake`
- `build-essential`
- `cmake-curses-gui`
- `dssi-dev`
- `fluid`
- `libboost-dev`
- `libcairo2-dev`
- `libfftw3-dev`
- `libfltk1.3-dev`
- `libglu1-mesa-dev`
- `libjack-jackd2-dev`
- `libjpeg-dev`
- `libmxml-dev`
- `libncurses5-dev` (new dependency)
- `libreadline-dev` (new dependency)
- `libxft-dev`
- `libxinerama-dev`
- `libxml2-dev`
- `xutils-dev`

- `zlib1g-dev`

LV2 plugin adds one more dependency:

`lv2-dev` with minimum version $\geq 1.0.0$.

Other distros may have slightly different names or version numbers, and may even have these installed by default. If in doubt, try looking for just the main part of the name, but with the `-dev` extension where appropriate.

21.3 Build It

The following instructions are for an in-source build. An in-source build is simpler if you just want to build and install *Yoshimi*.

We will also show how to set up for an out-source-build, which keeps the build products out of the way.

The location of `CMakeList.txt` does not appear to be standard, so these instructions differ in details from the build instructions of *ZynAddSubFX*. Basically, the build is based in the project's `src` directory, instead of its root directory.

1. Enter the source directory where the code was unpacked.
2. Generate the project build-files:

```
$ cd src
$ cmake ..
$ cmake .
```

3. Build the code and install it (as root):

```
$ make
# make install
```

Here is how to make an out-of-source debug. Despite what `cmake` documentation (and Googling) says, using a command like the following *does not work* unless you have `ccmake` installed.

```
$ cmake -DCMAKE_BUILD_TYPE=Debug ..
$ ccmake
```

In Debian Linux, install the `cmake-curses-gui` package to get access to `ccmake`. Or use the shorter `cmake -DBuildForDebug=on ..` command below.

1. Enter the source directory where the code was unpacked.
2. Create a "Debug" or "Release" directory for an out-of-source build:

```
$ cd src
$ mkdir Debug
```

3. Generate the project build-files in the `Debug` directory.

```
$ cd Debug
$ cmake -DBuildForDebug=on ..
$ make
```

The output file, and executable name `yoshimi` is now ready to run (and be debugged).

Here is a debugging use case we used in *Yoshimi 1.3.5.1* and slightly earlier versions. Here is how to verify the bug:

1. Run the following command:

```
$ yoshimi -a -A
```

2. Navigate the following command path: Menu / Instrument / Show Banks
3. Select the **RENAME** button.
4. Select the bank (e.g. Arpeggios).
5. In the file prompt that comes up, click **Cancel**.
6. Observe a "Segmentation fault".

To avoid a lot of debugging, let `valgrind` find the bug for you. Install `valgrind`. Then, in the `src/Debug` directory, run:

```
$ valgrind --log-file=yoshvalgrind.log ./yoshimi -a -A
```

In the log file, one sees that the last good call was in the `Bank :: readOnlyBank()` function. That would be a good place to put a breakpoint.

However, even without `valgrind`, this particular bug is easy to find under the *debugger*. The steps are simple:

```
$ cd src/Debug
$ gdb ./yoshimi
(gdb) r -a -A
```

Then repeat the steps above that trigger the bug. One sees

```
Program received signal SIGSEGV, Segmentation fault.
```

Issue the command "backtrace" at the `(gdb)` prompt. There will be a list of stack frames starting at 0. Frame 1 is in *Yoshimi*, so issue the command "frame 1", a see

```
if (strlen(tmp) > 2) ...
```

`tmp` is a null pointer here; we need to add an initial check for the null pointer there to avoid triggering the crash.

Not worry now, though, the bug has been officially fixed.

21.4 Yoshimi Code Policies

Yes, we actually have *Yoshimi* code policies. Look how many there are! :)

If the version string contains a 4th number this will always be just a bugfix, and will never have features added or changed from the main version. For example:

- yoshimi-1.3.5 Main version.
- yoshimi-1.3.5.1 First bugfix.
- yoshimi-1.3.5.2 Second bugfix. (Surely not!)

We won't accept fixes for spelling errors in the *code*. For a start, from bitter experience it is fatally easy to change two variables to the same name! Also, there's no point, after all they are only a mnemonic for memory addresses etc. 'volume' and 'LFO' could just as well be 'turnyfing' and 'derfingwotwiggles'.

To avoid possible confusion, from now on 'master' will display the last released version number (without bugfix digits) with an 'M' suffix - unless it is a release candidate in which case the suffix will be rc[n]. For example:

- Last release was yoshimi-1.3.5.2
- Master is shown as yoshimi-1.3.5 M

XML files created with this release will have: major version 3 and minor version 5.

If using Fluid to edit GUI files, please close all windows and collapse all menus *before* the last save. I know it's tedious, but it avoids storms of spurious 'changes' that make genuine ones harder to see.

22 Summary

In summary, we can say that you will absolutely love *Yoshimi*. There are some topics that this document does not yet treat:

- Changing the colors and style of the GUI, as seen in some versions of *ZynAddSubFX*. This does not yet seem possible, because the synth part is not truly separate from the GUI, and the *Yoshimi* developers have not found it easy to recode the FLTK GUI.

A car analogy.

A sample player is a drive along a straight, wide, almost new highway with only 2 other cars in sight, on a lightly overcast summer's day in a Ford Fiesta at around 40 MPH.

Yoshimi is a white-knuckle trip over a Swiss mountain pass in a blizzard, at night, facing donkeys, trucks and bandits, while driving an open-frame kit car doing 90 +

In recent times we've been able to dispose of the donkeys, and the bandits are on the run :)

Although we must admit the new Fiesta are actually pretty slick and fast!

23 References

This section provides references for this *Yoshimi* user's manual, as well as some other information.

Although the *Yoshimi* project is based on SourceForge, it also has a mirror on GitHub, and a mailing list on FreeLists.Org. One can subscribe with an e-mail to: yoshimi-request@freelists.org or by visiting: <http://www.freelists.org/list/yoshimi>. To post to the list, email to: yoshimi@freelists.org The archive of the old SourceForge mailing list is found at: <https://www.freelists.org/archive/yoshimi>.

References

- [1] Will J. Godfrey *A discussion of making Bank/Root specifications more regular.* <http://sourceforge.net/p/yoshimi/mailman/message/33200765/> 2014.
- [2] Chris Ahlstrom *A Yoshimi User's Manual* <https://github.com/ahlstromcj/yoshimi-doc/> 2015.
- [3] Chris Ahlstrom *A Yoshimi Cookbook* <https://github.com/ahlstromcj/yoshimi-cookbook/> 2015.
- [4] Cormi *Cormi Collection* <https://www.freesound.org/people/cormi/> His cormi57.wordpress.com site has a lot of other nice sound material, as well. 2015.
- [5] Straulino *A collection of instruments* <http://www.straulino.ch/zynaddsubfx/> http://www.straulino.ch/zynaddsubfx/Drums_DS_v2012-12-08.zip http://www.straulino.ch/zynaddsubfx/ZynAddSubFX_Natural_Drum_Kit_Demo_v2012-06-22.ogg
- [6] "folderol" *A collection of instruments* <http://www.kara-moon.com/forum/index.php?topic=762.0>
- [7] Will Godfrey *Will Godfrey's Music* <http://www.musically.me.uk> See the "Bits 'n Stuff" link especially.
- [8] Will J. Godfrey *A discussion of licensing issues with Youshimi and ZynAddSubFX components, and FLTK library versions.* <http://sourceforge.net/p/yoshimi/mailman/yoshimi-devel/> 2015.
- [9] caonoize *ZynAddSubFX by paulnasca: Downloads, Banks, Patches, etc.* http://www.kvraudio.com/product/zynaddsubfx_by_paulnasca/downloads 2015.
- [10] mmxgn *Instruments made with zynaddsubfx/yoshimi* <https://github.com/mmxgn/instruments-zyn> 2011.
- [11] Rakarrack team *The download site for the Rakarrack software effects engine.* <http://rakarrack.sourceforge.net/> 2015.
- [12] LinuxMusicians newsgroup *Ring Modulation in ZynAddSubFX* <http://linuxmusicians.com/viewtopic.php?f=1&t=8178> 2012.
- [13] Manuel Op de Coul jcoul@huygens-fokker.org; *The Scala Musical Tuning Application.* <http://www.huygens-fokker.org/scala/> Scala is a powerful software tool for experimentation with musical tunings, such as just intonation scales, equal and historical temperaments, microtonal and macrotonal scales, and non-Western scales. 2014.
- [14] Sharphall *How to create drum sounds in ZynAddSubFX or Yoshimi, Part 1* http://sharphall.org/docs/zynaddsubfx_yoshimi_drumTutorial.php Never got continued, unfortunately.
- [15] Gordon Reid *Synth Secrets: Creative Synthesis* <http://www.soundonsound.com/sos/allsynthsecrets.htm> 1999-2004.
- [16] Graham *A small musical website* <http://x31eq.com> and specifically <http://x31eq.com/zasf>
- [17] Yoshimi team abrolag@users.sourceforge.net *The download site for the Yoshimi software synthesizer.* <http://yoshimi.sourceforge.net/> 2015.

- [18] Yoshimi team *The alternate location for the Yoshimi source-code.* <https://github.com/abrolag/yoshiminow>. 2015.
- [19] Yoshimi team. *Yoshimi user/developer mailing list* <http://www.freelists.org/list/yoshimi> 2015.
- [20] Yoshimi team. *Yoshimi user/developer mailing list archive* <http://www.freelists.org/archive/yoshimi> 2015.
- [21] Mark McCurry, Paul Nasca (ZynAddSubFX team) *The download site for the ZynAddSubFX software synthesizer.* <http://zynaddsubfx.sourceforge.net/> 2015.
- [22] Paul Nasca? *The download site for the ZynAddSubFX banks, instruments, parameters, and demos* <http://zynaddsubfx.sourceforge.net/doc/instruments/> 2009.
- [23] ZynAddSubFX team. *Building ZynAddSubFX* http://zynaddsubfx.sourceforge.net/Doc/#_appendix_b_building_zynaddsubfx 2009.
- [24] AMSynth team. *Provides a number of OGG demos of ZynAddSubFX sounds. It also includes the author's own "Vanilla" bank, and links to additional patch collections and demonstration videos.* <http://www.amsynth.com/zynaddsubfx.html>
- [25] Mark McCurry, Paul Nasca *ZynAddSubFX online manual.* <http://zynaddsubfx.sourceforge.net/Doc> 2015.
- [26] Paul Nasca *Original ZynAddSubFX manual, ODT format.* http://linux.autostatic.com/docs/zynaddsubfx_manual-v0.1.odt 2011.
- [27] Paul Nasca *Original ZynAddSubFX manual, PDF format.* http://linux.autostatic.com/docs/zynaddsubfx_manual-v0.1.pdf 2011.
- [28] Paul Nasca, Mark Murray *The download package for the ZynAddSubFX source-code* <http://downloads.sourceforge.net/project/zynaddsubfx/zynaddsubfx/2.5.0/zynaddsubfx-2.5.0.tar.gz>
- [29] Jeremy ("autostatic") *ZynAddSubFX Manual, good overall of most Zyn settings and knobs* http://wiki.linuxaudio.org/wiki/zynaddsubfx_manual 2011.

Index

-alsa-audio[=device], 212
-alsa-midi[=device], 212
-auto-connect, 212
-autostart-jack, 212
-buffersize=size, 212
-define-root, 212
-help, 213
-jack-audio[=server], 212
-jack-midi[=device], 212
-jack-session-file[=file], 213
-jack-session-uuid[=uuid], 213
-load-instrument=file, 213
-load=file, 213
-name-tag=tag, 213
-no-gui, 212
-oscilsize=size, 213
-samplerate=rate, 213
-show-console, 212
-state[=file], 213
-usage, 213
-version, 213
-?, 213
-A, 212
-D, 212
-J, 212
-K, 212
-L, 213
-N, 213
-R, 213
-S, 213
-U, 213
-V, 213
-a, 212
-b, 212
-c, 212
-i, 212
-j, 212
-k, 212
-l, 213
-o, 213
-u, 213
.., 208
.banks, 30, 34
.config, 30, 31
.history, 30, 33
.instance(n), 30, 33
.state, 30, 32
.windows, 30, 34
.xiz, 30, 32
.xmz, 30, 31
.xpz, 30, 33
.xsz, 30, 32
.xvy, 30
/, 208
? or help, 211
16/32/64 Parts, 79
440Hz, 153, 179

A, 94
A Freq, 71
A MIDI, 71
A Note, 71
A.dt, 93, 97, 98, 179
A.M, 118
A.R, 89, 91
A.S, 118
A.val, 97, 179
A.value, 98
add bank [s], 208
Add point, 96
Add preset directory..., 69
add root [s], 208
Add root directory..., 67
Add to Favorites, 61
ADDsynth, 142
addsynth
 coarse detune, 148
 detune type, 147
 detune value, 147
 filter env, 146
 filter lfo, 146
 filter params, 146
 freq slider, 147
 frequency env, 147
 frequency lfo, 147
 group, 146
 H.rnd, 159
 H.rnd knob, 159
 mag type, 159
 octave, 147

oscillator graph, 159
 pan, 145
 punch strength, 146
 punch stretch, 146
 punch time, 146
 punch vel sens, 146
 random pan, 145
 relative bw, 147
 reset pan, 146
 rnd, 159
 Stereo, 146
 vel sens, 145
 voice parameters, 148
 volume, 145
 waveform graph, 159
AddSynth Oscillator Size, 44
Adpt.Harm., 174
Adpt.Harm. baseF, 175
Adpt.Harm. pow, 175
Adpt.Harm. Slider, 175
ADsynth, 183
 alienwah
 delay, 121
 depth, 120
 dry/wet, 120
 feedback, 121
 l/r, 121
 lfo frequency, 120
 lfo randomness, 120
 lfo shape, 120
 phase, 120
 phase diff, 120
 preset, 120
 subtract, 121
 volume, 120
ALSA
 audio device, 51
 MIDI Source, 51
 sample rate, 51
 Set as preferred audio, 51
 Set as preferred MIDI, 51
Alsa Audio Device, 51
Alsa Midi Source, 51
 amp, 100
AMPLITUDE, 176
Amplitude Env, 178
Amplitude Env, Stock + Enable, 150
Amplitude LFO, Stock + Enable, 150
AmpMode, 164
AmpMultiplier, 164
Analog, 131
 anti-auto-clutter, 58
Apply, 170
 asterisk, 45
 attack, 92
 Author and Copyright, 142
 Autoconnect audio, 49
 automation
 16/32/64 parts, 79
 controls, 79
 NRPNs, 79
 part audio, 79
 part control, 79
 vector control, 79
 A—hyperpage, 71
B, 128
B.F.Mod, 171
B.Width Scale, 178
BandWidth, 166, 178
Bandwidth, 109
 bandwidth
 attack time, 179
 attack value, 179
 enable, 179
 forced release, 179
 release time, 179
 release value, 179
 stretch, 179
Bandwidth Env, 178
Bandwidth Scale, 166
Bank Change, 53
Bank Matrix, 65
Bank Names, 57
Bank Root Change, 53
Banks, 58
 banks, 34
 current bank, 65
 instrument, 65
 matrix, 65
 base, 165
Base Channel, 40
Base F, 170
Base Func. Spectrum Graph, 170
Base Func. Waveform Graph, 170
BaseType, 163

Block, 201
 bottom panel
 instrument edit, 136
 instrument enable, 137
 instrument name, 136
 key limit, 137
 key shift, 137
 M, 137
 m, 137
 maximum note, 137
 MIDI channel, 136
 minimum note, 137
 mode, 137
 pan, 137
 pan reset, 137
 part maximum, 135
 part number, 135
 portamento enable, 137
 R, 137
 sound meter, 138
 system effect sends, 138
 velocity offset, 137
 velocity sensing, 137
 volume, 137
 breath control, 13
 bugs
 ADDsynth voice delay tooltip, 149
 compressed XML preview, 62
 in document, 16
 menu hot keys don't work, 37
 mod oscillator name misspelled, 152
 BW, 134
 BWdepth, 140
 BwDepth, 139
 bypass, 134
 Bypass Global F, 150
 C, 86, 89, 91, 94, 111, 134, 156, 175, 176
 C.f, 100
 C.f. (knob), 85
 C.freq, 83
 Category, 82
 CC, 200
 CC monitor, 54
 cent, 20
 Center, 71
 center, 71
 center frequency, 83
 cents, 166
 CFdepth, 140
 Chan, 200
 Change, 154
 Change ID, 68
 Channel, 105
 chorus
 delay, 123
 feedback, 123
 l/r phase, 123
 l/r routing, 123
 lfo depth, 123
 lfo freq, 123
 lfo randomness, 123
 lfo type, 123
 subtract, 123
 Clear, 86, 175, 201
 clipboard
 copy, 102
 copy type, 101
 list, 101, 103
 paste, 102, 103
 paste type, 103
 Clipboard list, 101, 103
 Close, 60, 86, 96, 106, 108, 134, 140, 143, 175, 177
 close scales, 73
 Close Unsaved, 43
 Close Window, 156, 184
 Close, Scales Dialog, 73
 Clr, 171
 cmd
 ..., 208
 /, 208
 add bank, 208
 add root, 208
 exit, 211
 help, 211
 list banks, 208
 list effects, 209
 list history, 209
 list instruments, 209
 list parts, 209
 list roots, 209
 list setup, 209
 list vector, 209
 load instrument, 209
 load vector, 209
 remove bank, 208

remove root, 208
reset, 211
save instrument, 209
save patchset, 209
save setup, 209
save vector, 209
set activate, 209
set alsa audio, 209
set alsa midi, 209
set available, 209
set bank, 209
set ccbank, 209
set ccroot, 209
set extend, 209
set insert effects, 209
set jack midi, 210
set jack server, 210
set part channel, 210
set part destination, 210
set part program, 210
set preferred audio, 210
set preferred midi, 210
set program, 210
set reports, 210
set root, 210
set shift, 210
set system effects, 210
set vector, 211
set vector cc, 210
set vector control, 211
set vector features, 210
set vector program, 211
set volume, 211
stop, 211
to top level, 208
up one level, 208
Coarse Det, 179
Coarse det, 148, 154
command level, 197, 202
Comment, 72
comment, 72
Comments, 142
config, 31
control
 reset, 19
Control Function, 201
control point, 95
Controller, 41, 108
controllers
 bandwidth, 109
 bandwidth depth, 139
 close, 140
 exp bandwidth controller, 139
 expression, 109, 139
 expression mod wheel, 139
 filter cutoff depth, 139
 filter frequency, 109
 filter q, 109
 filter Q depth, 139
 fm amplitude, 139
 fm gain, 109
 mod wheel depth, 139
 modulation wheel, 109
 panning, 109
 panning depth, 139
 pitch wheel range, 139
 portamento, 109
 portamento depth, 141
 portamento proportional, 140
 portamento rate, 141
 portamento receive, 140
 portamento threshold, 140
 portamento threshold type, 140
 portamento time, 140
 portamento time, down/up, 140
 reset all, 140
 resonance BW depth, 140
 resonance CF depth, 140
 resonant bandwidth, 109
 resonant center frequency, 109
 sustain, 109
 sustain pedal enable, 140
 volume, 109
 volume enable, 140
 volume range, 139
Copy to Clipboard, 102
Copy to Preset, 101
Create Directory, 62
current
 root, 67
current bank, 65
Current Voice, 156
cutoff frequency, 83
Cval, 108
D.dt, 93, 98

D.val, 98
 D/W, 118, 120, 131, 133
 Damp, 127, 134
 dB, 86
 decay, 92
 default
 asterisk, 45
 Delay, 87, 89, 91, 121, 123, 127, 149
 DELETE, 59
 Delete point, 96
 Depth, 87, 89, 91, 130
 Detune, 103, 147, 153, 157, 179
 Detune Type, 147, 153, 179
 Detune Value, 157
 Direct part audio, 79
 Directory Bar, 62
 dist, 131
 distortion
 drive, 125
 hpfilter, 125
 level, 125
 lpfilter, 125
 negate, 125
 stereo, 125
 type, 125
 Dpth, 120, 123
 Drive, 125
 Drum mode, 184
 dynfilter
 a.inv, 118
 a.m., 118
 a.s., 118
 dry/wet, 118
 filter, 118
 lfo depth, 118
 lfo freq, 118
 lfo randomness, 118
 lfo stdf, 118
 lfo type, 118
 pan, 118
 preset, 117
 volume, 118
 E, 94, 95
 E/R, 134
 echo
 crossover, 127
 damp, 127
 delay, 127
 feedback, 127
 l/r delay, 127
 Edit, 106, 136
 edit
 addsynth, 142
 author/copyright, 142
 category, 142
 close, 143
 comments, 142
 effects, 143
 humanise, 143
 kit, 143
 padsynth, 143
 rnd det, 143
 subsynth, 142
 Effect Name, 111
 Effect Number, 111
 Effects, 143
 effects
 copy dialog, 111
 insertion tab, 113
 name, 111
 number, 111
 panel, 112
 paste dialog, 112
 reports, 113
 send to, 111
 system tab, 111
 to, 114
 Effects Panel, 112
 EffType, 134
 Enable, 85, 90, 97, 150, 183
 Enable Bank Root Change, 53
 Enable CLI, 48
 Enable Extended Program Change, 53
 Enable GUI, 48
 Enable Microtonal, 71
 Enable part, 105
 Enable Part On Program Change, 53
 Enable Program Change, 53
 Enabled, 137, 179, 181
 envelope
 add point, 96
 attack, 92
 attack time, 93, 97, 98
 attack value, 97, 98
 close dialog, 96

decay, 92
 decay time, 93, 98
 decay value, 98
 delete point, 96
 editor, 95
 enable, 97
 forced release, 94, 96–98
 freemode, 96
 freemode enable, 94
 linear, 94, 96
 linearity, 98
 release, 92
 release time, 93, 97, 98
 release value, 97
 stretch, 93, 96–98
 sustain, 92, 96
 sustain value, 93

eq
 band, 128
 filter freq, 128
 filter gain, 128
 filter q, 128
 filter type, 128
 gain, 128
 stages, 128

Eq.T, 153, 179
exit, 211
Exp BW, 139
Exp MWh, 139
Export, 176
Expr, 139
Expression, 109
 extended program, 23, 56
Extended Program Change, 54
External Mod, 151

F.R, 89, 91
Favorites, 61
Fb, 121, 123, 127, 131
Feature 1, 41
Feature 2, 41
Feature 3, 41
Feature 4, 42
file
 banks, 34
 config, 31
 history, 33
 instance, 33

instrument, 32
 patch set, 31
 preset, 33
 scale, 32
 state, 32
 windows, 34

File Systems, 62
Filename, 62
FILTER, 176
Filter, 118, 173
filter
 analog, 82
 category, 82
 cutoff, 80
 formant, 82
 frequency tracking amount, 83
 gain, 83
 order, 81
Q, 80
 resonance, 80
 stages, 81, 83
 state variable, 82
StVarF, 82
 type, 80, 82
 velocity sensing function, 83

Filter Env, 146, 181
Filter Env, Stock + Enable, 150
Filter Freq, 109
Filter LFO, 146
Filter LFO, Stock + Enable, 150
Filter p, 173
Filter Params, 146, 181
Filter Params, Stock, 150
Filter Q, 109
Filter Stages, 181
Filter Type, 82
Filter Wheel 1, 173
Filter Wheel 2, 173
First Note, 73
FltCut, 139
FltQ, 139
FM, 151
FM Gain, 109
FMamp, 139
ForceH, 167, 180
Formant, 100
Formants, 99
 formants

amplitude, 100
 cf, 100
 frequency, 100
 number, 100
 number of, 99
 octaves, 100
 Q, 100
 reversed, 100
 seq position, 100
 seq size, 100
 seq stretch, 100
 slowness, 99
 vowel clearness, 99
 vowel number, 100
 vowel position, 100
 Fr.Sl, 99
 frame, 20
 frcR, 94, 96–98, 179
 FreeMode, 94, 96
 Freq, 89, 90, 118, 120, 123, 128, 131
 freq, 100
 freq.tr, 83
 FreqMlt, 163
 FREQUENCY, 176
 Frequency, 87
 Frequency Env, 147, 179
 Frequency Env, Stock + Enable, 154
 Frequency LFO, 147
 Frequency LFO, Stock + Enable, 154
 frequency modulator, 151
 FREQUENCY Slider, 179
 FREQUENCY slider, 147, 153
 frequency tracking amount, 83
 Full/Upper/Lower, 163
 FX No, 134
 FX.r, 183
 Gain, 128
 gain, 83
 Graph Window, 85
 group randomness, 159
 H.rnd, 159
 H.rnd knob, 159
 Harmonic Content Window, 165
 Harmonic Shift, 174
 Harmonic Shift preH, 174
 Harmonic Shift R, 174
 Harmonics Amplitude, 174
 Harmonics Bandwidth, 174
 Harmonics Plot, 167
 Harmonics Scrollbar, 174
 Hide Non Fatal Errors, 48
 Hide Voice List, 158
 history, 33
 HPF, 125, 134
 humanise, 143
 Humanise (Rnd. Det.), 143
 hyper, 131
 I.del, 134
 I.delfb, 134
 Ignore Reset all CCs, 54
 Import .kbm file, 73
 Import .SCL file, 72
 Import .scl file, 73
 insertion effect
 -1, 114
 -2, 114
 disable, 114
 master out, 114
 Insertion Effects Tab, 113
 instance, 33
 Instrument, 65
 instrument, 20, 32
 Instrument and Bank Matrix, 58
 Instrument List, 62
 Instrument Name, 136, 183
 instruments
 bank matrix, 58
 bank names, 57
 banks, 58
 Close, 60
 DELETE, 59
 RENAME, 59
 roots, 58
 SAVE, 59
 SELECT, 58
 show engines, 60
 SWAP, 60
 Internal Buffer Size, 45
 InterpPk, 85
 Inv., 118
 Invert Keys, 71
 JACK

autoconnect audio, 49
MIDI source, 49
server name, 49
set as preferred audio, 49
set as preferred MIDI, 49
Jack Midi Source, 49
Jack Server, 49

kbm file, 73
Key Limit, 137
Key Shift, 103, 137
key shift, 72
keys, 71
KHz, 86
kit
 addsynth, 183
 close, 184
 drum mode, 184
 enable, 183
 fx.r, 183
 M, 183
 m, 183
 M., 183
 maximum key, 183
 minimum key, 183
 mode, 184
 mode crossfade, 184
 mode multi, 184
 mode off, 184
 mode single, 184
 name, 183
 padsynth, 183
 R, 183
 row number, 183
 subsynth, 183
Kit Edit, 143
knobs, 77
 coarse control, 78
 fine control, 78
 fine control, scroll, 78
 home position, 78
 left-drag, 78
 middle-drag, 78
 right-click, 78
 right-drag, 78
 scroll-wheel, 78
 super-fine, middle, 78
 super-fine, scroll, 78

L, 94, 96, 98
L/R, 121, 123, 131
Last Note, 73
Level, 125
LFO, 131
 amount, 89
 amplitude randomness, 89
 continuous mode, 88, 89
 delay, 87, 89
 depth, 87, 89
 frequency, 87, 89
 frequency randomness, 89
 function, 87
 function type, 90
 randomness, 88
 shape, 87
 start phase, 87
 starting phase, 89
 stretch, 88, 89
 type, 87, 90
lfo
 continuous, 91
 copy, 91
 delay, 91
 depth, 91
 enable, 90
 frequency, 90
 paste, 91
 random amplitude, 91
 random frequency, 91
 start phase, 91
 stretch, 91
 type, 91
LFO Type, 118
LFO type, 120, 123
LfoD, 118
Limit, 201
list banks [n], 208
list effects [n], 209
list history [s], 209
list instruments [n], 209
list parts, 209
list roots, 209
list setup, 209
list vector [n], 209
Load, 201
Load External
 create new directory, 62

directory bar, 62
favorites, 61
filename, 62
instrument list, 62
ok/cancel, 62
preview checkbox, 62
preview pane, 62
show, 61
show hidden files, 62
load instrument [s], 209
load patchset [s], 209
load vector [s], 209
Log incoming CCs, 54
Log Load times, 48
Log XML headers, 48
LPF, 125, 134
LRc, 127
LRdl, 127

M, 137, 183
m, 137, 183
Mag. Type, 181
Mag.Type, 159, 169
Main, 106
Main Settings
 buffer size, 45
 Hide Non-Fatal Errors, 48
 Log XML headers, 48
 oscillator size, 44
 PADsynth Interpolation, 45
 Send Reports Destination, 46
 Show Splash Screen, 48
 Virtual Keyboard Layout, 45
 XML compression level, 46
Make current, 67
Make default presets, 70
Manage Favorites, 62
Map, 74
Map Size, 74
mapping, 71
Max dB (wheel), 85
Max.k, 183
Maximum Note, 137
Microtonal, 71
Middle Note, 73
Midi, 136
Midi Channel, 107
MIDI Learn
 Block, 201
 CC, 200
 Chan, 200
 Clear, 201
 Control Function, 201
 Limit, 201
 Load, 201
 Min/Max, 200
 Mute, 200
 Recent, 201
 Save, 201
 MIDI learn, 47
 MIDI preferences
 bank change, 53
 bank root change, 53
 enable bank root change, 53
 enable extended program change, 53
 enable part change, 53
 enable program change, 53
 extended change, 54
 Ignore Reset all CCs, 54
 Log incoming CCs, 54
 Min.k, 183
 Min/Max, 200
 Minimum Note, 137
 Minus, 150
 Mod, 173
 Mod AMPLITUDE, 151
 Mod FREQUENCY, 152
 Mod Oscillator, 152
 Mod. Wheel, 109
 Mod. Wheel 1, 173
 Mod. Wheel 2, 173
 Mod. Wheel 3, 173
 Mode, 137, 184
 modulator
 amplitude, 151
 external, 151
 frequency, 151, 152
 morph, 151
 oscillator, 152
 pitch, 151
 pulse, 151
 ring, 151
 type, 151
 ModWh, 139
 MORPH, 151
 morph modulator, 151

mouse
 right-click, 77, 78

Mute, 200

Name, 71

Neg, 125

Neg Input, 100

new
 breath control, 13
 in document, 16
 MIDI Learn, 37
 right-click, 77
 vectors, 37

No, 183

No. (1 to 8), 157

no.oct, 165

Notes per Octave, 72

NRPNs, 79

nts./oct, 72

Oct, 85, 100

Octave, 107, 147, 153, 179
of, 135

OK/Cancel, 62

ON, 73

On, 149

Open current, 67

Options, 40

oscillator
 external, 151
 internal, 151

Oscillator Spectrum Graph, 159, 169

Oscillator Waveform Graph, 159, 169

Overtones Position, 180

OvertonesPosition, 167

P, 86, 91, 94, 112, 134, 156, 175, 176, 213

P.Stc, 146

P.Str, 146

P.t, 146

P.Vel, 146

PADsynth, 143, 183

padsynth
 amp mode, 164
 amp mult, 164
 amplitude section, 176
 apply button, 170
 bandwidth, 166
 bandwidth reading, 166

bandwidth scale, 166

base function, 170

base function spectrum, 170

base function waveform, 170

bf mod, 171

close, 177

copy, 176

export, 176

forceh, 167

freq mult, 163

harm editor clr, 171

harm editor filter, 173

harm editor filter p, 173

harm editor filter wheel, 173

harm editor mod, 173

harm editor mod wheel, 173

harm editor spadj, 173

harm editor spadj wheel, 174

harm editor use-as-base, 171

harm editor wsh, 171

harm editor wsh value, 171

harm editor wsh wheel, 172

harmonic base, 165

harmonic content, 165

harmonic fup, 163

harmonic no. of octaves, 165

harmonic par1, 164

harmonic par2, 164

harmonic profile, 165

harmonic sample size, 165

harmonic samples per oct, 165

harmonic sfreq, 163

harmonic size, 163

harmonic stretch, 163

harmonic type, 163

harmonic width, 163

harmonics, 174

harmonics amplitude, 174

harmonics bandwidth, 174

harmonics basef, 175

harmonics clear, 175

harmonics close, 175

harmonics copy, 175

harmonics paste, 175

harmonics plot, 167

harmonics pow, 175

harmonics scrollbar, 174

harmonics shift, 174

harmonics shift preh, 174
 harmonics shift r, 174
 harmonics sine, 175
 harmonics slider, 175
 mag type, 169
 oscillator graph, 169
 overtones, 167
 par value, 171
 par wheel, 171
 par1, 167
 par2, 167
 paste, 176
 spectrum mode, 166
 waveform graph, 169
 wheel 1, 171
 wheel 2, 171
 wheel 3, 171
 PADsynth interpolation, 45
 Pan, 118, 131, 133, 137, 145, 150, 157, 178
 Pan (reset), 137
 Pan randomness indicator, 150
 Pan reset (red button), 150
 PanDpth, 139
 Panel, 103, 104
 Panning, 109
 Panning Knob, 105
 Par. Value, 171
 Par. Wheel, 171
 Par1, 164, 167, 180
 Par2, 164, 167, 180
 Part, 135
 part, 21
 Part 1, 41
 Part 2, 41
 Part control, 79
 Part name, 105
 Part Section, 1 to 16, 105
 Part Summary, 105
 parts
 1x16, 106
 2x8, 106
 change layout, 106
 channel, 105
 close, 106
 destination, 106
 edit, 106
 enable, 105
 meter, 105
 name, 105
 panning, 105
 solo, 106
 volume, 105
 Parts Layout, 106
 Paste from Clipboard, 103
 Paste from Preset, 103
 patch, 21
 patch set, 21, 31
 patchset, 21
 Phase, 120, 131, 154
 Phase Invert, 156
 Phase Randomness, 156
 phase randomness, 159
 phaser
 analog, 131
 depth, 130
 dist, 131
 dry/wet, 131
 feedback, 131
 freq, 131
 hyper, 131
 l/r, 131
 lfo type, 131
 pan, 131
 phase, 131
 preset, 130
 randomness, 131
 stages, 131
 stereo phase diff, 131
 Subtract, 131
 PITCH, 151
 pitch modulator, 151
 PM, 151
 Portamento, 109, 137
 Preset, 117, 120, 130, 133
 preset, 21, 33, 78
 copy, 101, 102
 dialog, 101
 file, 101
 list, 101
 paste, 102, 103
 preset files
 .ADnoteParameters.xpz, 102
 Preset list, 69
 Preview, 62
 Preview pane, 62
 Profile of One Harmonic, 165

program, 21
 Proprt, 140
 Propt, 140
 Prot.1st, 85
 Prp.Depth, 141
 Prp.Rate, 141
 pulse modulator, 151
 Pwh, 107
 PWheelB.Rng, 139
 Q, 83, 100, 128
 qwer.. Oct, 107, 108
 R, 107, 137, 149, 157, 183
 R.dt, 93, 97, 98, 179
 R.S, 133
 R.val, 97, 179
 Rand, 145, 178
 randomness

- group, 159
- phase, 159

 Rcv, 140
 Recent, 201
 Recent States, 76
 RelBW, 147
 release, 92
 remove bank [s], 208
 Remove preset directory..., 70
 remove root [s], 208
 Remove root directory..., 67
 RENAME, 59
 Reports, 113
 reports

- left-click, 47
- middle-click, 47
- right-click, 47

 Res. bw, 109
 Res. c. freq, 109
 reset, 211

- control, 19

 Reset (panning), 146, 178
 Reset all controllers, 140
 Reset, Detune, 103
 resonance

- cf, 85
- clear, 86
- close, 86
- copy, 86

 db, 86
 Enable, 85
 first harmonic, 85
 graph, 85
 interpolate peaks, 85
 khz, 86
 max db, 85
 octaves, 85
 paste, 86
 randomize, 86
 smooth, 86
 resonance level, 83
 Retune, 72
 retune, 72
 reverb

- bandwidth, 134
- close, 134
- copy, 134
- damp, 134
- dry/wet, 133
- e/r, 134
- eff type, 134
- fx bypass, 134
- fx no., 134
- hpif, 134
- initial delay, 134
- initial delay feedback, 134
- lpf, 134
- pan, 133
- paste, 134
- preset, 133
- room size, 133
- send to, 134
- time, 134
- type, 133

 right-click, 78
 RING, 151
 ring modulator, 151
 Rnd, 118, 120, 123, 131
 rnd, 159
 Rnd Grp, 146
 RND1, 86
 RND2, 86
 RND3, 86
 Root Paths

- add directory, 67
- change ID, 68
- make current, 67

open current, 67
 remove directory, 67
 Roots, 58, 65
 root directories, 65
 S, 210
 S.Pos, 100
 S.val, 93
 Sample Size, 165
 Samplerate, 51
 SAVE, 59
 Save, 201
 Save and Close, 43
 save instrument [s], 209
 save patchset [s], 209
 save setup, 209
 save vector [s], 209
 saving settings, 34
 scale, 32
 scale file, 72
 scales
 first note, 73
 last note, 73
 map, 74
 map size, 74
 middle note, 73
 on, 73
 scl file, 73
 SELECT, 58
 Send reports to, 46
 Send To, 134
 Send to, 111
 Seq Size, 100
 set - preset [n], 210
 set activate [n], 209
 set alsa audio [s], 209
 set alsa midi [s], 209
 Set as preferred audio, 49, 51
 Set as preferred MIDI, 49, 51
 set available [n], 209
 set bank [n], 209
 set ccbank [n], 209
 set ccroot [n], 209
 set extend [n], 209
 set insert effects [n], 209
 set jack midi [s], 210
 set jack server [s], 210
 set part [n1] channel [n2], 210
 set part [n1] destination [n2], 210
 set part [n1] program [n2], 210
 set preferred audio [s], 210
 set preferred midi [s], 210
 set program [n], 210
 set reports [n], 210
 set root [n], 210
 set shift [n], 210
 set system effects [n], 210
 set vector [n1] x/y cc [n2], 210
 set vector [n1] x/y control [n2] [n3], 211
 set vector [n1] x/y features [n2], 210
 set vector [n1] x/y program [l/r] [n2], 211
 set vector [n] [off], 211
 set volume [n], 211
 Settings
 Close Unsaved, 43
 Save and Close, 43
 SFreq, 163
 Shift, 72
 Show, 61
 Show hidden files, 62
 Show Splash Screen, 48
 Show synth engines, 60
 Show Voice Parameters, 148
 Sine, 175
 Size, 163
 sliders, 78
 right-click, 78
 Smooth, 86
 smp/oct, 165
 Solo, 106
 solo
 column, 106
 loop, 106
 row, 106
 Sound, 154
 Sound Meter, 138
 Sp.adj, 173
 Sp.adj. Wheel, 174
 Spectrum Mode, 166
 St, 83, 125, 128
 St.df, 118, 120, 123, 131
 Stages, 131
 Start, 89, 91, 181
 Start Phase, 87
 Start With Default State, 48
 State

Load, 75
 Recent, 76
 Save, 76
 state, 32
 State Load, 75
 State Save, 76
 Stereo, 146, 181
 Stereo Spread, 156
 Stop, 103
 stop, 211
 Str, 89, 91, 93, 163
 Stretch, 96–98, 179
 Strtch, 100
 StVarF, 82
 subsubsec:clipboard
 copy, 101
 SUBsynth, 142, 183
 subsynth
 amplitude pan, 178
 amplitude random pan, 178
 amplitude reset pan, 178
 amplitude vel sense, 178
 amplitude volume, 178
 bandwidth, 178
 bandwidth envelope, 178
 bandwidth scale, 178
 filter enable, 181
 filter env, 181
 filter mag type, 181
 filter params, 181
 filter stages, 181
 filter start type, 181
 filter stereo, 181
 freq 440hz, 179
 freq detune, 179
 freq detune coarse, 179
 freq detune type, 179
 freq env, 179
 freq eq t, 179
 freq octave, 179
 freq slider, 179
 overtone forceh, 180
 overtone par1, 180
 overtone position, 180
 Subtract, 121, 123, 131
 Sust, 96
 Sustain, 109, 140
 sustain, 92
 SWAP, 60
 Switches
 Enable CLI, 48
 Enable GUI, 48
 Log Load times, 48
 Start With Default State, 48
 System Effect Sends 1, 2, 3, and 4, 138
 System Effects Tab, 111
 T, 128
 t.dn/up, 140
 th.type, 140
 threshx100 cnt, 140
 Time, 134
 time, 140
 tip
 preset directory, 69
 tips
 in document, 16
 internal modulator, 152
 padsynth usage, 161
 ring modulator, 152
 vu meter, 138
 To, 114
 todo
 alienwah feedback, 121
 coarse detune units, 154
 global filter, 150
 in document, 16
 reverb nrpn values, 134
 Rnd Grp, 146
 SES123, 138
 voice delay units, 149
 top panel
 detune, 103
 detune reset, 103
 key shift, 103
 overall volume, 103
 parts panel, 103
 stop all sound, 103
 virtual keyboard, 103
 tuning, 72
 Tunings, 72
 Type, 90, 91, 101, 103, 125, 133, 142
 Type:, 151
 Unison, 155
 unison

freq spread, 155
 Invert, 156
 Ph.rnd, 156
 size, 155
 Stereo, 156
 V.speed, 156
 Vibrato, 156
 Unison Frequency Spread, 155
 Unison Size, 155
 Unison Vibrato, 156
 Use as base, 171
 Use Oscil, 154

 V.Sns, 83
 V.SnsA, 83
 vector
 1 volume, 197
 2 pan, 197
 3 brightness, 197
 4 modulation, 197
 settings file, 193
 base channel, 193
 enable, 210
 features, 197, 210
 morph, 197
 reverse, 210
 Vector control, 79
 Vectors
 base channel, 40
 brightness, 41
 controller, 41
 modulation, 42
 options, 40
 pan, 41
 part 1, 41
 part 2, 41
 volume, 41
 x, 41, 42
 Vel Sens, 145, 150, 178
 Velocity, 107
 Velocity Offset, 137
 Velocity Sens, 137
 velocity sensing amount, 83
 velocity sensing function, 83
 Vib. Depth, 157
 Vibrato Speed, 156
 VirKbd, 103
 Virtual Keyboard Layout, 45

 vkdb
 close, 108
 controller, 108
 controller value, 108
 midi channel, 107
 pitch bend, 107
 qwerty, 107
 qwerty, 107
 reset pitch bend, 107
 velocity, 107
 velocity randomness, 107
 zxcvb, 108
 voice, 22
 delay, 149
 number, 149
 on/off, 149
 resonance, 149
 voice list
 detune, 157
 detune value, 157
 hide, 158
 number, 157
 panning, 157
 resonance, 157
 vibrato depth, 157
 volume, 157
 waveform icon, 157
 Voice Number, 149
 Voice Oscillator, 154
 voice oscillator
 Change, 154
 close, 156
 copy, 156
 current voice, 156
 paste, 156
 phase, 154
 sound, 154
 Unison, 155
 use, 154
 waveform, 154
 voice par amp
 amp env, 150
 amp lfo, 150
 center pan, 150
 invert vol control, 150
 pan, 150
 random pan, 150
 vel sens, 150

volume, 150
voice par filter
 bypass, 150
 enable, 150
 env, 150
 lfo, 150
 parameters, 150
voice parameters
 440 hz, 153
 coarse detune, 154
 detune, 153
 eq type, 153
 fine detune, 153
 freq env, 154
 freq lfo, 154
 freq slider, 153
 octave, 153
 oscillator, 154
Vol, 118, 120, 140, 157
Vol Rng, 139
Volume, 103, 109, 137, 145, 150, 178
Volume Slider, 105
Vowel, 100
Vowel no, 100
VU-meter display, 105
Vw.Cl, 99

Waveform graph, 154
Waveform Icon, 157
Wheel 1, 171
Wheel 2, 171
Wheel 3, 171
Width, 163
windows, 34
Wsh, 171
Wsh Value, 171
Wsh Wheel, 172

X Vector, 41, 42
XML compression level, 46

Yoshimi Presets
 Add Directory, 69
 Make Default, 70
 Preset List, 69
 Remove Directory, 70

ZynAddSubFx controls, 79